



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

# The first three books of Xenophon's Anabasis

Xenophon, James  
Robinson Boise

duct 1295.230,871

C. Cushman

CLASSICAL WORKS.

LATIN BOOKS.

Harvard College  
Library



By Exchange

Historical Indexes, and a Map of  
12mo. 408 pages.

**Cicero's Select Orations.** With  
Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON.  
City of New York. 12mo.

**Cicero de Officiis.** With  
Zump and Bonnell.  
12mo. 194 pages.





C S Crushman  
Auburn  
Main





14  
15  
EducT 1295.230,871

CLASSICAL WORKS.

LATIN BOOKS.

Harvard College  
Library



By Exchange

Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D.  
12mo. 408 pages.

**Cicero's Select Orations.** With Notes for the use of Schools and  
Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the Univer-  
sity of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

**Cicero de Officiis.** With English Notes, mostly translated from  
Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. TEACHER, of Yale College.  
12mo. 194 pages.

**STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.**

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

**Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.** Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGIS. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

**Tacitus's Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

**GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.**


**A First Greek Book\* and Introductory Reader.** By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book," "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

**Acts of the Apostles,** according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

**Arnold's First Greek Book,\*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.\*** 12mo. 297 pages.

— **Second Part to the above.\*** 12mo. 248 pages.

 SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.





C. S. Krishnan  
Auburn  
Main









THE  
FIRST THREE BOOKS  
OF  
XENOPHON'S ANABASIS:  
WITH  
EXPLANATORY NOTES,  
AND  
REFERENCES TO HADLEY'S AND KÜHNER'S GREEK GRAMMARS,  
AND TO GOODWIN'S GREEK MOODS AND TENSES;  
A COPIOUS  
GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY;  
AND  
*KIEPERT'S MAP OF THE ROUTE OF THE TEN THOUSAND.*

BY  
JAMES R. BOISE,  
PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

NEW YORK:  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
549 & 551 BROADWAY.  
1871.

✓ EducT 1295.230.871

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
BY EXCHANGE

JAN 8 1937

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by  
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Southern District of New York.

## P R E F A C E .

---

THIS work has been prepared at the suggestion of several of the most eminent classical teachers in this country. It is intended exclusively for those who are preparing for college. The notes are consequently for the most part elementary ; and are accompanied with numerous questions, and references to the grammars mentioned on the title-page. The references to Kühner are chiefly to the Elementary Grammar. The few references to the Larger Grammar are indicated by the letters L. G. While an attempt has been made to bring to the attention of the learner all the leading principles of Greek Syntax, introducing them as nearly as possible in the order of the various topics as presented in the best grammars, particular attention has been paid to the tenses and moods, to the structure of hypothetical sentences, and to the particles, especially to the use of the negatives. Above all, it has been the

aim of the Editor to accustom the learner to the constant use of his grammar ; and it is believed that no teacher can do his pupil a greater service than by holding him to a strict account of all the grammatical principles to which reference is made in the notes on his daily lessons. The thoroughness of the learner in this respect will depend in a great degree on the fidelity and strictness of the teacher.

The text of this edition is substantially that of Hertlein (2d ed. 1854, Weidmannsche Buchhandlung), with a very few variations adopted from L. Dindorf (2d ed. Oxford, 1855). The omission of the breathings over  $\rho\rho$ , and the use of small instead of capital letters at the beginning of sentences in the midst of paragraphs, is in conformity with the usage adopted in the greater part of the most critical editions of Greek authors recently published in Europe. Whatever the Editor's personal preferences may have been on this point, he did not feel at liberty to depart from the usage of nearly all the best editions of the *Anabasis* to which he has had access.

In the notes and vocabulary, some variations may be found in the accentuation of such expressions as  $\tau\acute{\epsilon} \dots \tau\acute{\epsilon}$ , or  $\tau\grave{\epsilon} \dots \tau\epsilon$ , or  $\tau\acute{\epsilon} \dots \tau\acute{\epsilon}$ , or even  $\tau\epsilon \dots \tau\epsilon$ ;  $\kappa\alpha\grave{\iota} \dots \kappa\alpha\acute{\iota}$ , or  $\kappa\alpha\grave{\iota} \dots \kappa\alpha\grave{\iota}$ , or  $\kappa\alpha\acute{\iota} \dots \kappa\alpha\acute{\iota}$ , and the like,

all of which forms are found in the most critical grammars now in general use, and for each of which, a reason may be given. The first of the above forms (adopted by Kühner and Krüger in their editions of the *Anabasis*) will generally be found in this work.

In addition to the helps formerly used, and acknowledged in the Preface of my first edition of the *Anabasis* (1856), I have now been able to avail myself of the excellent edition of the first three books of the *Anabasis* by Vollbrecht (Leipsic, 1857). Particular acknowledgments are due to Prof. S. H. Taylor, LL. D., of Andover, Mass., for the valuable assistance derived from his work, entitled *Method of Classical Study*, which contains the first chapter of the *Anabasis* with critical notes and questions (a work which every classical teacher in the country should not only have in his library, but carefully study); also to Mr. James M. Whiton, of New Haven, Ct., who, in his *Companion-Book to Hadley's Greek Grammar*, has included the eighth chapter of the first book of the *Anabasis* with critical notes. Both these works have been most carefully examined, and many valuable suggestions have been received from them.

The vocabulary at the end of the volume is the result of much labor, and will be found, it is hoped, an

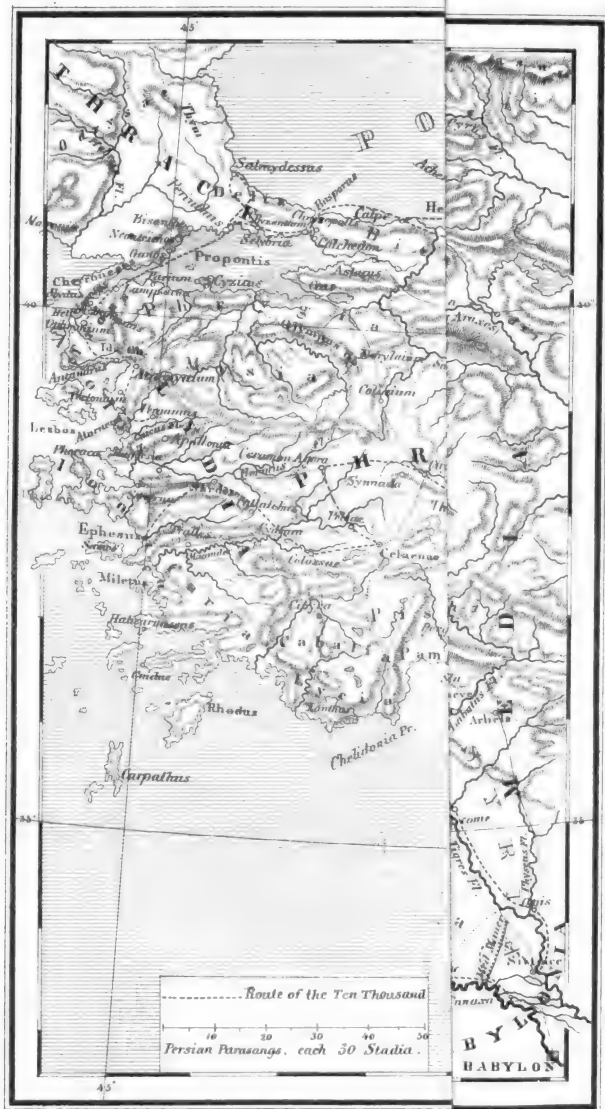


important aid to the learner. Should any teacher or student discover any omissions of words used in the first three books of the *Anabasis*, I should feel under great obligations to him if he would have the kindness to call my attention to them. In the preparation of the vocabulary, the following works have been chiefly used :—the well-known *Lexicon Xenophonteum*, by Sturz ; a *Lexicon of the Anabasis*, by C. G. Krüger (Berlin, 1849) ; another by K. Matthiæ (Leipsic, 1852) ; and another by F. C. Theisz (Leipsic, 1858).

ANN ARBOR, Mich., *October, 1862.*



MAP SHOWING THE PERT.



## ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ

### ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ.

#### BOOK I.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, 1  
πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος.  
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ  
βίου, ἐβούλετο τῷ παιδὶ ἀμφοτέρῳ παρεῖναι. ὁ μὲν 2  
οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ μετα-  
πέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε,  
καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων, ὅσοι εἰς  
Καστωλοῦ πεδῖον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦ-  
ρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
δὲ ἔχων ὀπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν  
Ξένιαν Παρράσιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος, καὶ 3  
κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρης  
διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, ὡς ἐπιβου-  
λεύοι αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται τε καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον  
ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀπο-  
πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κιν- 4  
δυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθεὶς, βουλευέται, ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι  
ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ', ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει  
αὐτ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ  
Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρ-  
ταξέρξην. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως 5  
πρὸς αὐτόν, πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο, ὥστε

αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ  
 ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ  
 5 εἶσαν καὶ εὐνοικῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν  
 δύναμιν ἡθροίζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος,  
 ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα. ὧδε οὖν  
 ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὅποσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς  
 πόλεσι, παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἐκάστοις λαμβά-  
 νειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτί-  
 στους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι.  
 καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ  
 ἀρχαῖον, ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δ' ἀφεστήκεσαν  
 7 πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλήν Μιλήτου. ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ  
 Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βοιλευο-  
 μένους, ἀποστήναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέ-  
 κτεινε, τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς  
 φεύγοντας, συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον  
 καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατὰ-  
 γειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις  
 8 ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα  
 πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὦν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς  
 πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ  
 μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τῆς  
 μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλῆς οὐκ ἡσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει  
 δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα  
 δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων. καὶ  
 γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασι-  
 λεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνης ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.  
 9 ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ  
 τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος  
 Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος  
 ἡγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικοὺς.  
 ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τού-  
 των τῶν χρημάτων, καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώ-  
 μενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι, καὶ



ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλ-  
 λοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλη-  
 σποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκούσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφό-  
 μενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ 13  
 ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὦν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος  
 ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον,  
 καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν  
 μισθόν, ὡς οὕτω περιγευόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ  
 μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι  
 πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευή-  
 ται. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλλᾷ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ  
 τρεπόμενον στράτευμα. Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίων 11  
 ξένον ὄντα αὐτῷ ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλεί-  
 στους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς εἰς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρα-  
 τεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ  
 ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ  
 Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέ-  
 λευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς  
 πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τῶν Μιλη-  
 σίων. καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν 2  
 πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν  
 παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τού-  
 τους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐνταῦθα  
 στράτευμα· καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι  
 ἦκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ  
 συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν  
 ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα, καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ  
 προεστῆκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἦκειν παραγ-  
 γέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄνδρας πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν  
 τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς 3  
 Μίλητον πολιορκούντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε  
 σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεῦεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς

καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ προσθεν παύσασθαι, πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπέιθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα  
 3 παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις, ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· Πρόξενος δὲ παρὴν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον  
 4 στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευήν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα, ἱππέας ἔχων ὡς  
 5 πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κύρος δὲ ἔχων οὐς εἴρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο, ἐπὶ τὸν Μαϊάνδρον ποταμόν. τοῦτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὶν ἐξευγμένη  
 6 πλοίοις ἐπτά. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμὸν ἕνα, παρασάγγας ὀκτώ, εἰς Κολατσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἐπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλός, ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας  
 7 καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. ἐντεύθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν, εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας, ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρηνεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείτου ρεῖ ὁ Μαϊάνδρος ποταμός·

αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ  
 διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασι- 5  
 λέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς  
 τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ  
 οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον·  
 τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὐρὸς ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πο-  
 δῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν,  
 νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμά-  
 σαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ, ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποτα-  
 μὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς 9  
 Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκο-  
 δομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν  
 ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα·  
 καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος, φυγὰς, ἔχων  
 ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾶκας ὀκτακοσίους  
 καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σωσίας  
 παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους καὶ  
 Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐν-  
 ταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες  
 ὀπλῖται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ  
 τοὺς δισχιλίους. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο, 10  
 παρασάγγας δέκα, εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐν-  
 ταῦθ' ἔμεινε ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς  
 τὰ Λύκαϊα ἔθυσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν  
 στλεγγίδες χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος.  
 ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας δώδεκα,  
 εἰς Κεραμῶν ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς  
 τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, 11  
 παρασάγγας τριάκοντα, εἰς Καῦστρου πεδῖον, πόλιν  
 οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς  
 στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλεόν ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν,  
 καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλ-  
 πίδας λέγων διῆγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν

- 12 πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συνενέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως παρὰ Κύρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κύρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο
- 13 δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κύρον τῇ Κιλίσῃ. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας δέκα, εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην· ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦσαι οἶνφ κεράσας
- 14 αὐτήν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας δέκα, εἰς Τυριαῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ. βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδεῖξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
- 15 καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δὲ ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων. εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ
- 16 μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κύρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ παρήλυνον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμα μάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾷ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμ-
- 17 μένας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπήεσαν. ἐκ δὲ τοῦ του θᾶπτον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου

δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς,  
 τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς καὶ ἄλλοις καὶ ἡ τε 8  
 Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐκ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγο-  
 ρᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες  
 σὺν γέλῳ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα  
 ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύ-  
 ματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἤσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδὼν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει 10  
 σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν, εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς  
 Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας.  
 ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε,  
 παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε  
 διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν. ἐντεῦ- 20  
 θεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει  
 τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν, καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ στρατιώτας  
 οὗς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων  
 ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας, παρα-  
 σάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε, πρὸς Δάαν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην,  
 μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς·  
 ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσῃ Μεγαφέρῃν,  
 φοινικιστὴν βασιλείου, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων  
 δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ. ἐντεῦθεν 21  
 ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ  
 ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξिटὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν  
 στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Σύνεννες  
 εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· δι' ὃ  
 ἔμεινε ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἦκεν ἄγ-  
 γελος λέγων, ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη Σύνεννες τὰ ἄκρα,  
 ἐπεὶ ἤσθητο, ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλι-  
 κίᾳ ἦν εἰσω τῶν ὁρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἤκουε περι-  
 πλεύσας ὑπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμὼν ἔχοντα τὰς  
 Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη 22  
 ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηνάς,  
 οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινε εἰς

πεδίου μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντο  
 δαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων. πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμοι  
 καὶ μελίην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει.  
 ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιέχει ὄχυρόν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ ἐκ  
 23 θάλαττης εἰς θάλατταν. καταβάς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ  
 πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς τέτταρας, παρασάγγας πέντε  
 καὶ εἴκοσιν, εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην  
 καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασιλεία  
 τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσης δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ  
 24 ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. ταύτην  
 τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικούντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς  
 χωρίον ὄχυρόν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχον-  
 τες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκούντες  
 25 ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσοῖς. Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος  
 γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέρας εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφί-  
 κετο. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὁρῶν τῶν εἰς τὸ πεδίου  
 δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ  
 μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλι-  
 κων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας, καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν  
 τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους  
 26 ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ'  
 ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπα-  
 σαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι,  
 καὶ τὰ βασιλεία τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κύρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσῆ-  
 λασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν μετεπέμπετο τὸν Σύννεσιν πρὸς  
 ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενὶ πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ  
 εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἵεναι ἤθελε,  
 27 πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστει εἴλαβε. μετὰ  
 δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις μὲν  
 ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κύρος  
 δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα, ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵπ-  
 πον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια  
 καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν  
 χώραν μηκέτι ἀρπάζεσθαι, τὰ δὲ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδρά-  
 ποδα, ἣν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

Ἐνγαῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκο- 3  
 σιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἵεναι τοῦ πρόσω·  
 ὑπώπτευν γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἵεναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ  
 οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτον δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς  
 αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἵεναι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε ἔβαλ-  
 λον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προΐεναι·  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε τὸ μὴ κατα- 2  
 πετρωθῆναι· ὕστερον δ', ἐπεὶ ἔγνω, ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται  
 βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιω-  
 τῶν· καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολλὸν χρόνον ἐστῶς·  
 οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἴτα ἔλεξε  
 τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θανμάζετε, ὅτι χαλε- 3  
 πῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ Κῦρος  
 ξένος ἐγένετο, καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε  
 ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ  
 λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοί, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ καθη-  
 δυπάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν 4  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος  
 ἐτιμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς  
 ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικούντας  
 Ἑλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν  
 ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα, εἴ τι δέοιτο, ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν  
 ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βού- 5  
 λεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα  
 τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευδάμενον  
 μεθ' ὑμῶν ἵεναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα,  
 αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ, τι ἂν δέῃ πεί-  
 σομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς, ὥς ἐγὼ Ἑλληνας ἀγα-  
 γὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους προδοὺς τοὺς Ἑλληνας τὴν  
 τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ 6  
 οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι οὐδὲ ἔπεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψο-  
 μαι καὶ ὅ, τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ  
 εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν  
 ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος, ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, ὑμῶν δὲ

- ἔρημος ὣν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς εἶναι οἶμαι οὐτ' ἂν φίλοι  
 ὠφελῆσαι οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὥς ἐμοῦ οὖν  
 ἰόντος ὅποι ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς, οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.
- 7 ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται, οἳ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες, ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ  
 βασιλέα πορεύεσθαι, ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ  
 Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ  
 τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ.
- 8 Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος μετεπέμ-  
 πετο τὸν Κλεάρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, λάθρα  
 δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρ-  
 ρεῖν, ὥς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον· μετα-  
 πέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι.
- 9 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς 3' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας  
 καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βου-  
 λόμενον ἔλεξε τοιάδε. "Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ  
 Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ  
 ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνους· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνους ἔτι στρα-  
 τιῶται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος ἔτι
- 10 ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ'  
 ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω  
 ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον, αἰσχυνόμενος, ὅτι σύνοιδα  
 ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιώς  
 μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὣν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆ-
- 11 σθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθενύδειν  
 οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ, τι χρὴ  
 ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ, σκεπτέον  
 μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενούμεν, εἴ τε  
 ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ  
 ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε
- 12 στρατηγού οὔτε ιδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ  
 πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος φίλος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾦ, χαλεπώτατος  
 δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾦ. ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν  
 καὶ ἵππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν, ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε



καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρῳ δοκοῦμέν μοι  
αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι· ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ, τι τις γινώσκει  
ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. ἐκ δὲ τούτου 13  
ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέγοντες ἃ ἐγίνω-  
σκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες,  
οἷα εἶη ἡ ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν  
καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἰς δὲ δὴ εἶπε, προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν 14  
ὥς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, στρατηγούς  
μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὥς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται  
Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἀγοράζεσθαι· ἡ  
δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι· καὶ συ-  
σκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κύρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὥς  
ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν  
Κύρον, ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει· ἐὰν δὲ  
μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμ-  
ψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληφόμενους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ  
φθάσωσι μήτε Κύρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες,  
ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες.  
οὗτος μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τούτον Κλέαρχος  
εἶπε τοσοῦτον. Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην 15  
τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνο-  
ρῶ, δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὥς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ δυν  
ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι  
καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα  
ἀνθρώπων· μετὰ τούτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν 16  
τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ  
πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ  
ὥς εὖηθες εἶη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου, ᾧ λυμαι-  
νόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύ-  
σομεν ᾧ ἂν Κύρος διδῶ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν  
κελεύειν Κύρον προκαταλαμβάνειν; ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοῖν 17  
αὐτῷ εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἢ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς  
αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ  
ἡγεμόνι ᾧ δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐχ

- οἷόν τε ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν, βουλομένην δ' αἰ ἄκοντος ἀπὸ τοῦ  
Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν.
- 18 ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι  
ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κύρον οὔτινες ἐπιτήδειοι σὺν  
Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκείνων, τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρήσθαι·  
καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ πρᾶξις ἢ παραπλησία οἷα περ καὶ πρό-  
σθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς, καὶ μὴ
- 19 κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων· ἐὰν  
δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται καὶ ἐπι-  
πονωτέρα καὶ ἐπικινδυνωτέρα, ἀξιούν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς  
ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φίλῳ ἀφίεναι· οὕτω γὰρ  
καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἐποίμεθα  
καὶ ἀπιώντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅ, τι δ' ἂν πρὸς  
ταῦτα λέγῃ, ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας
- 20 πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι. ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας  
ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν, οἱ ἡρώτων Κύρου  
τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἀκούοι  
Ἀβροκόμαν, ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα, ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ  
εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τούτῳ οὖν  
ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κὰν μὲν ἢ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη  
χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἣν δὲ φεύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς
- 21 ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἵρετοὶ  
ἀναγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν  
ἦν, ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι.  
προσαιοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κύρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιό-  
λιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ  
τρία ἡμιδαρεικά τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ  
βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἔν γε τῷ  
φανερῷ.
- † Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο, παρασάγγας  
δέκα, ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία  
πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα, παρασάγγας  
πέντε, ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ τὸ εὖρος στάδιον.  
ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο, παρασάγγας πεντε-

καίδεκα, εἰς Ἴσσοῦς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πολιν, ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρήσαν αἱ 2 ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτῶν Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἐτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, ὅτι Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν. παρῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ 3 τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμptos ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἐπτακοσίους ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρ' Ἀβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κύρον, τετρακόσιοι ὀπλῖται, καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα, παρα- 4 σάγγας πέντε, ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τεῖχη· καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας Σύνεννες εἶχε καὶ Κιλικίων φυλακή· τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσον δὲ ρεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέθρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βίβη· ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τεῖχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθήκοντα, ὑπερθεν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἡλίβατοι· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς 5 τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύλαι. ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κύρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἰσὼ καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασάμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους παρέλθοιεν, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κύρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺ στρατεύμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κύρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήλυνεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἓνα, παρασάγγας 6

πέντε, εἰς Μυρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπέριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὀλκάδες πολλαί. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν  
 7 ἡμέρας ἑπτά· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκάς, στρατηγός, καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθέμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὥς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν, φιλοτιμηθέντες, ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας, ὥς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα, εἶα Κύρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διήλθε λόγος, ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κύρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν εὗχοντο ὥς δολλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ'  
 8 ὥκτειρον, εἰ ἀλώσوينτο. Κύρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν· Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθωσαν, ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον. ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς, ὥς ἐγώ, ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ τις, χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες, ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήφονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ  
 9 ἀρετῆς. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας, παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν, ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρον, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστερὰς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι, ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν, Παρυ-

σάτιδος ἦσαν, εἰς ζώνην δεδομένοι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει 10  
 σταθμοὺς πέντε, παρασάγγας τριάκοντα, ἐπὶ τὰς πη-  
 γὰς τοῦ Δαράδακος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου.  
 ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Βελέσυνος βασιλεια τοῦ Συρίας  
 ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων  
 πάντα, ὅσα ὦραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε  
 καὶ τὰ βασιλεια κατέκαυσεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει στα- 11  
 θμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα, ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐ-  
 φράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων.  
 καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψα-  
 κος ὀνόματι. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ  
 Κῦρος μεταπεμφάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλή-  
 νων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν  
 εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς  
 στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπεῖθειν ἔπεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ποιή- 12  
 σαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶ-  
 ται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς  
 πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι,  
 εἰ μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα δίδῃ, ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς προ-  
 τέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ  
 Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦν-  
 τος τοῦ πατρὸς Κύρου. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ 13  
 ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν  
 πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὰν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἤκωσι, καὶ  
 τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῇ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
 εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ  
 οὕτως ἐπείσθη. Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι, τί ποιή-  
 σουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔφονται Κύρῳ  
 ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων  
 καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. Ἄνδρες, εἰάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κιν- 14  
 δυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτι-  
 μήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω  
 ποιῆσαι; νῦν δέϊται Κῦρος ἔπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν

- Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι, ὃ, τι οἱ ἄλλοι  
 15 Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ψηφί-  
 σωνται ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἵτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῖ  
 διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν  
 εἴσεται Κύρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἷ τις καὶ  
 ἄλλος· ἦν δ' ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἅπιμεν μὲν  
 ἅπαντες τοῦμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις  
 πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχα-  
 γίας, καὶ ἄλλου οὔτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλου  
 16 τεύξεσθε Κύρου. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ  
 διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κύρος δ'  
 ἐπεὶ ἤσθητο διαβεβηκότας, ἤσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύ-  
 ματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν. Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη  
 ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ  
 17 μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κύρον νομίζετε. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρα-  
 τιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις ὄντες εὐχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυ-  
 χῆσαι· Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγα-  
 λοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ  
 καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν· καὶ τῶν διαβαι-  
 νόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν  
 18 μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον,  
 ὅτι οὐπόποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ,  
 εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις· ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμης προῶν  
 κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κύρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον  
 εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρῳ ὡς  
 19 βασιλεύουσιν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας  
 σταθμοὺς ἐννέα, παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα, καὶ ἀφι-  
 κνύονται πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαι  
 κῶμαι πολλαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμει-  
 ναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.  
 20 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφρά-  
 τιν ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους πέντε,  
 παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ  
 τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίου ἅπαν ὁμαλόν. ὥσπερ

θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλήρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνὴν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη, ὥσπερ ἀρώματα· δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνὴν. θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλείστοι μὲν 2 ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλοὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες. ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θᾶττον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταῦτόν ἐποιοῦν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς θηρῶν διαδεχόμενοι τοῖς ἵπποις. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλώτερα δέ. στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες 2 τῶν ἵππεων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπεσπᾶτο φεύγουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν, αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ ἰστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχύ, ὥσπερ πέρδικες, καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν 4 ἡδιστα ἦν. πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνουῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή· περιερρεῖτο δ' αὕτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρεῖς καὶ δέκα, 5 παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα, τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικούντες ὄνους ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἤγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι 6 οὐκ ἦν, εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἑπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιω

- βολιον Ἀττικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίωντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο.
- 7 ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλανυν, ὁπότε ἡ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἡ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις, καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πύγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συν-
- 8 ἐκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεύσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ρίψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροὺς κάνδυσ ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς, ἔντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρानοὺς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούτους τε τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θάττον ἢ ὥς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους
- 9 ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας. τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἕνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσῳ μὲν θάττον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαιότερον, τοσούτῳ πλέον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στρατεύμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ἡ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὕσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενῆς, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων
- 10 τὸν πόλεμον ἐποιεῖτο. πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη. ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαῖς διαβαίνοντες ᾧδε. διφθέρας, ἃς εἶχον σκεπάσματα, ἐπίμπλασαν



χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνήγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὥς μὴ  
 ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον  
 καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου  
 πεπονημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος καὶ σῖτον μελίνης·  
 τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλείστον. ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ : 1  
 τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν  
 τοῦ Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μέ-  
 νωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ  
 στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχα-  
 λέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ 12  
 αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ πο-  
 ταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει  
 ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος  
 σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κύρος δὲ οὐπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ'  
 ἔτι προσήλαυνε· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα  
 σχίζων τις ὥς εἶδε τὸν Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἴησι τῇ  
 ἀξίῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ 13  
 καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. ὁ δὲ κατα-  
 φεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγ-  
 γέλλει εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας αὐτοῦ  
 ἐκέλευσε μῆναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας,  
 αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας καὶ τοὺς ἵππεῖς, οἳ ἦσαν  
 αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα,  
 γούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θρᾷκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μέ-  
 νωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα,  
 καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦν-  
 τες τῷ πρῶγματι. ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος, ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος 14  
 προσιὼν καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένη τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, εὐθὺς  
 οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ  
 ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχάλε-  
 παινεν, ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι  
 πράως λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ  
 μέσου ἐξίστασθαι. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐπῆει καὶ Κύρος καὶ 15  
 ἐπύθετο τὸ πρῶγμα· εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλὰ εἰς

τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν ἦκει  
 16 ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Ἐκλέαρχε καὶ  
 Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε  
 ὃ, τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γὰρ τινα ἀλλήλοισι μάχην συνάψετε,  
 νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόφεσθαι  
 καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν  
 ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι  
 πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων.  
 17 ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ  
 παυσάμενοι ἀμφοτέροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα.

6 Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνια ἵππων καὶ  
 κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων ἵπ-  
 πων. οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἰ τι ἄλλο  
 χρησίμον ἦν. Ὀρόντης δέ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, γένοι τε  
 προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς  
 ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν  
 2 πολεμήσας, καταλλαγεὶς δέ. οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ  
 αὐτῷ δολὴ ἵππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακαίοντας  
 ἵππέας ἢ κατακάνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς  
 αὐτῶν ἔλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ καλεῖν ἐπιόντας, καὶ  
 ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ  
 Κύρου στράτευμα βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ  
 ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευσεν  
 αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων.

3 ὁ δ' Ὀρόντης, νομίσας ἐτοιμούς εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἵπ-  
 πέας, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα, ὅτι ἤξοι ἔχων  
 ἵππεῖς ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς  
 ἑαυτοῦ ἵππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχε-  
 σθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας  
 ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δι-  
 δωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ᾔετο. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδω-  
 1 σιν. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κύρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρον-  
 την, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Περσῶν τοὺς  
 ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτὰ, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων

στρατηγούς ἐκέλευεν ὀπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέ-  
σθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα  
ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτας. Κλέαρ· 5  
χον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ  
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλ-  
λήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξήλθεν, ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν  
κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντου ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν.  
ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἀρχεῖν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. Παρεκάλεσα 6  
ὕμᾱς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὃ, τι  
δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο  
πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντου τουτουί. τοῦτον γὰρ πρῶτον  
μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ  
ταχθείς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος  
ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ  
ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ  
τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου· παύσασθαι καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον  
καὶ ἔδωκα, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὃ, τι σε 7  
ἡδίκησα ; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἡρώτα,  
Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ  
ἀδικούμενος ἀποστάς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν  
ἐμὴν χώραν ὃ, τι ἐδύνω ; ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντης. Οὐκοῦν,  
ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότ' αὖ ἔγνως τὴν σεαυτοῦ δύναμιν,  
ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τε  
σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι  
καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὁμολόγει ὁ Ὀρόντης.  
Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον 8  
ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας ; εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ  
Ορόντου ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς ἡρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν,  
Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι ; Ἡ γὰρ  
ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντης. ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἡρώτησεν  
ὁ Κῦρος, Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος,  
ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός ; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ  
γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἂν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. πρὸς 9  
ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα

- μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην δ, τι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλευώ ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέη τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολή ἢ ἡμῖν τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι.
- 10 τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς φίλους τούτους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόντην ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες, καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δὲ ἐξήγον αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες, ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσῆχθη τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόντην οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε, οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· εἵκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.
- 7 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω ἥξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχομένον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνυμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλευέτο τε, πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο, καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει θάρρων
- 3 νων τοιάδε. Ὡς ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπῳ ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες,

ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἣς κέκτησθε καὶ ὑπὲρ ἣς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ  
 εὐδαιμονίζω. εὐ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἐλοίμην  
 ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίων.  
 ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς  
 εἰδὼς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺ καὶ κραυγῇ  
 πολλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ ἄλλα καὶ  
 αἰσχύνεσθαι μοι δοκῶ, οἷους ἡμῖν γνῶσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ  
 χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων καὶ  
 εὐτόλμων γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλό-  
 μενον ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν,  
 πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντι-  
 τῶν οἴκοι. ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρῶν, φυγὰς Σάμιος,  
 πιστὸς δὲ Κύρῳ, εἶπε, Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κύρε, λέγουσί τινες,  
 ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνῇ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιοῦτῳ εἶναι τοῦ  
 κινδύνου προσιόντος· ἂν δὲ εὐ γένηται τι, οὐ μεμνήσθαι  
 σέ φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ', εἰ μεμνῶ τε καὶ βούλοιο  
 δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνῇ. ἀκούσας ταῦτα  
 ἔλεξεν ὁ Κύρος, 'Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ ἀρχὴ  
 ἡ πατρώα πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὗ διὰ καῦμα οὐ  
 δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον μέχρι οὗ διὰ  
 χερμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα σατραπεύουσιν  
 οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν,  
 ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆ-  
 σαι· ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα, μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὃ, τι δῶ  
 ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὐ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω  
 ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον  
 ἐκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοὶ  
 τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξηγγελ-  
 λον. εἰσῆσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἳ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν  
 ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιούντες εἰδέναι, τί σφισιν  
 ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιπλὰς ἀπάντων τὴν  
 γνωμὴν ἀπέπεμπε. παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες,  
 ὅσοι περ διελέγοντο, μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅπισθεν ἑαυτῶν  
 τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ὠδέ πως

- ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἶει γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν ; Νῆ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ
- 10 ἀμαχεῖ ταύτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπὶς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες
- 11 καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἵππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δὲ
- 12 πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα· Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέρας πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων.
- 13 ταῦτα δὲ ἡγγελλόν πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομόλησαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταῦτα ἡγγελλόν. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ
- 14 Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα, παρασάγγας τρεῖς, συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ὧστο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυαὶ
- 15 πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὀργυαὶ τρεῖς. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους. [ἔνθα δὴ εἰσιν αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ρέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγὰ· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἐκάστη παρα

σάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν.] ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐ- 16  
φράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς  
τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ τὴν  
τάφρον βασιλεὺς μέγας ποιεῖ ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ  
πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὲ τὴν 17  
πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρήλθε καὶ ἐγέν-  
οντο εἰσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ  
ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν  
καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος 18  
Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμβρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν  
αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκεί-  
νης τῆς ἡμέρας πρότερον θνόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ, ὅτι  
βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν,  
Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς  
ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσης, ὑπισχνουμαί σοι δέκα  
τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ  
παρήλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ 19  
ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν,  
ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνώσκειν τοῦ μά-  
χεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελη-  
μένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθή- 20  
μενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων  
πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπο-  
ρεύετο καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ  
ἀμαξῶν ἤγοντο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

Καὶ ἥδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσιν καὶ πλη- 8  
σίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα  
Πατηγίας, ἀνὴρ Πέρσης, τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν,  
προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ,  
καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρικῶς  
καὶ ἑλληνικῶς, ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ  
προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα 2  
δὴ πολλὸς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλ-  
ληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσις ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι.

- 3 Καὶ Κύρος τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνέδου καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν
- 4 ἑκαστον. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τούτου, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ εὐωνυμον
- 5 κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγῶνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο
- 6 βαρβαρικόν. Κύρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἐξάκοσιοι ὀπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλην Κύρου. Κύρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν
- 7 τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν. οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον
- 8 δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ ἵππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἡνίκα δὲ δεῖλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ οὐ συχνῷ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολύ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ αἱ λόγχαι καὶ
- 9 αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων. Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλῖται σὺν ποδήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν, Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἵππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται· πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἑκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο·
- 10 πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρεπανα



ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δί-  
 φροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὄτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν.  
 ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα  
 καὶ διακόψοντα. ὁ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν, ὅτε καλέσας 11  
 παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἕλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβά-  
 ρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγὴ ἀλλὰ  
 σιγὴ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχὴ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσ-  
 ῆσαν. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν 12  
 Πίγρητι τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ  
 Κλέαρχῳ ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν  
 πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἴη· κὰν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶ-  
 μεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποιήται. ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ 13  
 μέσον στίφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ [Ἑλλη-  
 νικοῦ] εὐωνύμου βασιλέα· τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν  
 βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου  
 εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν· ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν  
 ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρα, φοβού-  
 μενος μὴ κυκλωθεὶς ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο  
 ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ 14  
 καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προΐει,  
 τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο  
 ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ  
 πάννυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεάτο ἐκατέρωσε  
 ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους.  
 ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, 15  
 ὑπελάσας ὡς συναντῆσαι ἤρετο, εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι·  
 ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν, ὅτι καὶ  
 τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλὰ. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων 16  
 Δορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο,  
 τίς ὁ Δορύβος εἴη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν, ὅτι τὸ σύν-  
 θημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε, τίς  
 παραγγέλλει, καὶ ἤρετο, ὅ, τι εἴη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ'  
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος 17  
 ἀκούσας, Ἀλλὰ δέχομαι τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω.

- ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλαυνε· καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τῷ φάλαγγι ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, ἡνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ
- 18 προήρχοντο ἀντίοι ἵεναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὥς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγαντο πάντες, οἷον περ τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον λέγουσι δέ τινες, ὥς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα
- 19 ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν
- 20 τάξει ἔπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη [ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ] ἐκπλαγεῖς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις
- 21 ἐλέγετο. Κύρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὥς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὥς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἐξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελείτο, ὃ, τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς. καὶ γὰρ ᾗδει αὐτόν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι
- 22 τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἡγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἣν ἢ ἡ σχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἐν ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στρατεύμα.
- 23 καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὁμῶς ἕξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμαχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῖς τεταγμένοις ἐμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὥς εἰς κύκλωσιν.

ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὀπισθεν γενομενος κατακόψῃ 24  
 τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς  
 ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ  
 εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι  
 λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσῃ τὸν ἄρ-  
 χοντα αὐτῶν. ὥς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται 2  
 καὶ οἱ Κῦρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες,  
 πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν  
 οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὦν καθορᾷ 26  
 βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στῆφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ  
 ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν, Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ, ἵετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν  
 καὶ παῖει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ  
 θώρακος, ὥς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός, καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς  
 τὸ τραῦμά φησι. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλ- 27  
 τῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι  
 καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκα-  
 τέρου, ὅποσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον  
 Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς  
 τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτῶ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο  
 ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν 28  
 σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε  
 Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ.  
 καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ βασιλέα κελεύσαι τινα ἐπισφάξαι 29  
 αὐτὸν Κῦρον, οἱ δ' ἑαυτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον  
 τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν, καὶ στρεπτὸν δὲ  
 ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια καὶ τᾶλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περ-  
 σῶν· ἐτετίμητο γὰρ ὑπὸ Κῦρου δι' εὐνοίαν τε καὶ  
 πιστότητα.

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὦν Περ- 9  
 σῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον γενομένων βασιλι-  
 κώτατος τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὥς παρὰ πάντων  
 ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κῦρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι.  
 πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν, ὅτ' ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν 2  
 τῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, πάντων πάντα

- 3 κράτιστος ἐνομίζετο. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περ-  
σῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις παιδεύονται· ἔνθα  
πολλὴν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἂν τις, αἰσχρὸν δ'  
4 οὐδὲν οὐτ' ἀκούσαι οὐτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες  
καὶ τοὺς τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ  
ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθύς παῖδες ὄντες μαν-  
5 θάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. ἔνθα Κῦρος αἰδη-  
μονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν ἐδόκει εἶναι,  
τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων  
μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς  
ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι· ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς  
τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλο-  
6 μαθέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ  
ἡλικίᾳ ἔπρεπε, καὶ φιλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θη-  
ρία μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος. καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐπι-  
φερομένην οὐκ ἔτρεσεν, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν κατεσπάσθη  
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν, ὧν καὶ τὰς ὠτειλάς  
φανερὰς εἶχε, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε· καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέν-  
7 τοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης Λυδίας τε  
καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας, στρατηγὸς  
δὲ καὶ πάντων ἀπεδείχθη, οἷς καθήκει εἰς Καστωλοῦ  
πεδῖον ἀθροίζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι  
περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιοτο καὶ εἴ τῳ συν-  
8 θοῖτο καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδὲν ψεύδεσθαι. καὶ  
γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι,  
ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες· καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπει-  
σαμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς  
9 παθεῖν. τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι  
αἱ πόλεις ἐκούσαι Κῦρον εἶλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους  
πλὴν Μιλησίων· οὗτοι δέ, ὅτι οὐκ ἠθελε τοὺς φεύ-  
10 γοντας προέσθαι, ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ  
ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε προοῖτο, ἐπεὶ  
ἄπαξ φίλος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μέλους

γένοιτο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν. φανερός δ' ἦν καὶ 11  
 εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν πειρώ-  
 μενος· καὶ εὐχὴν δέ τινες αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον, ὥς εὐχοίτο  
 τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν, ἔστω νικῶν καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ τοὺς  
 κακῶς ποιοῦντας ἀλεξόμενος. καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλείστοι 12  
 δὴ αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν καὶ  
 χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα προσέσθαι.  
 οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἂν τις εἴποι, ὥς τοὺς κακούργους 13  
 καὶ ἀδίκους εἶα καταγελαῖν, ἀλλ' ἀφειδέστατα πάντων  
 ἐτιμωρεῖτο. πολλάκις δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς στειβο-  
 μένας ὁδοὺς καὶ ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στε-  
 οομένους ἀνθρώπους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο  
 καὶ Ἑλληνι καὶ βαρβάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι ἀδεῶς πο-  
 ρεύεσθαι ὅποι τις ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὃ, τι προχωροίη.  
 τοὺς γε μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ὠμολόγητο δια- 14  
 φερόντως τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος  
 πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατευόμενος οὖν καὶ  
 αὐτὸς εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας οὓς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυ-  
 νεύειν, τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἧς κατεστρέφετο  
 χώρας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλη δώροις ἐτίμα· ὥστε φαί- 15  
 νεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀγαθοὺς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ  
 κακοὺς δούλους τούτων ἀξιοῦν εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλή  
 ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν θελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις  
 οἶοιτο Κύρον αἰσθήσεσθαι. εἰς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην εἰ 16  
 τις αὐτῷ φανερός γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενος,  
 περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλουσιωτέρους ποιεῖν  
 τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερδούντων. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα 17  
 τε πολλὰ δικαίως αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ στρατεύματι  
 ἀληθινῷ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ  
 οὐ χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνους ἐπλευσαν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ  
 ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι Κύρῳ καλῶς πειθαργεῖν  
 ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. ἀλλὰ μὴν εἴ τις γέ τι αὐτῷ 18  
 προστάξαντι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσειεν, οὐδενὶ πώποτε ἀχά-  
 ριστον εἶασε τὴν προθυμίαν. τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ

- ὑπηρεῖται παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι  
 19 εἰ δέ τινα ὀρώη δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου  
 καὶ κατασκευάζοντά τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ προσόδους  
 ποιοῦντα, οὐδένα ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ πλείω  
 προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως  
 ἐκτῶντο καὶ ὃ ἐπέπατο αὐτὸς τις ἤκιστα Κύρον ἔκρυπτεν·  
 οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν τοῖς φανερώς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο,  
 ἀλλὰ πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων  
 20 χρήμασι. φίλους γε μὴν ὅσους ποιήσαιτο καὶ εὖνους  
 γνοίη ὄντας καὶ ἱκανοὺς κρίνειε συνεργοὺς εἶναι ὃ, τι  
 τυγχάνοι βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς  
 21 πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θεραπεύειν. καὶ γὰρ  
 αὐτὸ τοῦτο, οὐπὲρ αὐτὸς ἔνεκα φίλων ᾤετο δεῖσθαι,  
 ὥς συνεργοὺς ἔχοι, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς  
 φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τούτου ὅτου ἕκαστον αἰσθά-  
 22 νοίτο ἐπιθυμοῦντα. δῶρα δὲ πλείστα μὲν οἶμαι εἰς  
 γε ὧν ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων  
 δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους  
 ἑκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὀρώη ἕκαστον δεό-  
 23 μενον. καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ κόσμον πέμποι τις  
 ἢ ὥς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ ὥς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ περὶ  
 τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν, ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα  
 οὐκ ἂν δύναίτο τούτοις πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι, φίλους δὲ  
 καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζοι.  
 24 καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα  
 οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδὴ γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ  
 τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων καὶ τῷ προθυμείσθαι  
 χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι.  
 25 Κύρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις, ὅποτε  
 πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου  
 τούτου ἡδίωνι οἴνῳ ἐπιτύχοι· τοῦτον οὖν σοὶ ἔπεμψε  
 καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τοῦτον ἐκπιεῖν σὺν οἷς μάλιστα  
 26 φιλεῖς. πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ  
 ἄρτων ἡμίσεια καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν κελεύων

τὸν φέροντα· Τούτοις ἦσθη Κύρος· βούλεται οὖν καὶ  
 σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος πάννυ 27  
 εἴη, αὐτὸς δ' ἐδύνατο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολ-  
 λούς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαπέμ-  
 πων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα  
 ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν, ὥς μὴ 28  
 πεινῶντες τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγωσιν. εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε  
 πορεύοιτο καὶ πλείστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν  
 τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὥς δηλοῖη οὓς τιμᾶ.  
 ὥστε ἔγωγε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλείονων  
 πεφιλησθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων. τεκμήριον 29  
 δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν Κύρου δούλου ὄντος  
 οὐδεὶς ἀπῆει πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας ἐπεχείρησε·  
 καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὃν ᾤετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ αὐτὸν εὔρε  
 Κύρῳ φιλαίτερον ἢ ἑαυτῷ· παρὰ δὲ βασιλέως πολλοὶ  
 πρὸς Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμιοι ἀλλήλοις ἐγέ-  
 νοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώ-  
 μενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρῳ ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιωτέρας  
 ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. 30  
 μετὰ δὲ τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου αὐτῷ γενόμενον,  
 ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν ὀρθῶς ἐδύνατο  
 τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους καὶ βεβαίους. ἀποθνήσκοντος 31  
 γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ παρ' αὐτὸν φίλοι καὶ συντρά-  
 πεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλὴν Ἀριαίου·  
 οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ  
 ἵππικοῦ ἄρχων· ὥς δ' ἦσθητο Κύρον πεπτωκότα,  
 ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν, οὗ ἡγεῖτο.

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ Κύρου ἀποτέμενεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ 10  
 ἡ δεξιὰ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων εἰσ-  
 πίπτει εἰς τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ  
 Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐ-  
 τῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμόν, ἔνθεν ὥρμητο·  
 ἑπτάρης δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ.  
 βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τά τε ἄλλα πολλὰ 2

- διαρπάζουσι καὶ τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν Κύρου παλλακίδα  
 3 τὴν σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι λαμβάνει. ἡ δὲ  
 Μιλησία ἡ νεωτέρα ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα  
 ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς  
 σκευοφόροις ὄπλα ἔχοντες, καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς  
 μὲν τῶν ἀρπαζόντων ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν  
 ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην ἔσωσαν  
 καὶ ἄλλα ὅποσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρω-  
 4 ποι ἐγένοντο πάντα ἔσωσαν. ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλή-  
 λων βασιλεὺς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια,  
 οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς ὡς πάντας νικῶντες,  
 5 οἱ δ' ἀρπάζοντες ὡς ἤδη πάντες νικῶντες. ἐπεὶ δ'  
 ἦσθοντο οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες, ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρα-  
 τεύματι ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις εἶη, βασιλεὺς δ' αὖ ἤκουσε  
 Τισσαφέρνους, ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶν τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς  
 καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἴχονται διώκοντες, ἐνταῦθα δὴ  
 βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται,  
 ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας πλησιαί-  
 6 τatos γὰρ ἦν, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ  
 στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες. ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς δῆλος  
 ἦν προσιὼν πάλιν, ὡς ἐδόκει, ὀπισθεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλ-  
 ληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτῃ προσιόντος  
 καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτῃ μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν, ἦ δὲ  
 παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρατος, ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπήγα-  
 γεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
 αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ Τισσαφέρην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ.  
 ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν,  
 ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
 πελταστάς· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκαυε μὲν οὐδένα, δια-  
 στάντες δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς·  
 Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ  
 5 ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι. ὁ δ' οὖν Τισσαφέρνης ὡς  
 μείον ἔχων ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει, εἰς  
 δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκεῖ



συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν συνταξάμενοι  
 ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐωνυμον τῶν Ἑλ- 9  
 λήνων κέρας, ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς  
 τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς κατα-  
 κόψειαν· καὶ ἔδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ  
 ποιήσασθαι ὀπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα 10  
 ἐβουλευόντο καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ  
 αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φύλαγγα, ὥσπερ  
 τὸ πρῶτον μαχοῦμενος συνῆει. ὥς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλ-  
 ληνες ἐγγὺς τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὐθις  
 παιανίσαντες ἐπῆρσαν πολὺ ἔτι προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ  
 πρόσθεν. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἔδέχοντο, ἀλλ' ἐκ 11  
 πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι  
 κώμης τινός· ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· ὑπὲρ 12  
 γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ  
 ἄμφι βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἵππέων ὁ  
 λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γινώσκειν.  
 καὶ τὸ βασιλῆιον σημεῖον ὁρᾶν ἔφασαν, αἰτόν τινα  
 χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτης [ἐπὶ ξύλου] ἀνατεταμένον. ἐπεὶ 13  
 δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ  
 τὸν λόφον οἱ ἵππεις· οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι ἀλλ' ἄλλοι  
 ἄλλοθεν· ἐψιλοῦτο δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἵππέων· τέλος δὲ  
 καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβί- 14  
 βαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ αὐτὸν στήσας τὸ  
 στράτευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον  
 ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ  
 λόφου τί ἐστὶν ἀπαγγεῖλαι. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε 15  
 καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει, ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. σχε-  
 δὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἔδυετο. ἐνταῦθα δ' 16  
 ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἀνεπαύοντο·  
 καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον, ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο  
 οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρείη· οὐ γὰρ ᾔδεσαν  
 αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἵκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ  
 καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέναι· καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβου- 17

λεύοντο, εἰ αὐτοῦ μέιναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιυντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνούνται ἀμφὶ δόρπηστον ἐπὶ 18 τὰς σκηνάς. ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας, μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κύρος, ἵνα, εἴ ποτε σφοδρὰ τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι ἔνδεια, διαδοίῃ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν· ἦσαν δ' αὐταὶ τετρακόσιαι, ὡς ἐλέγοντο, ἅμαξαι· καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ 19 σὺν βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλύσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω διεγέγοντο.

## BOOK II.

- 1 Ὡς μὲν οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κύρος ἐτελεύτησε καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκοιμήθησαν οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ 2 Κύρον ζῆν, ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν λόγῳ δεδῆλωται. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον, ὅτι Κύρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σηματούντα, ὅ, τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς συσκευασμένοις ἃ εἶχον καὶ ἐξοπλισμένοις προΐεναι εἰς τὸ 3 πρόσθεν, ἕως Κύρῳ συμμίξειαν. ἤδη δὲ ἐν ὁρμῇ ὄντων ἅμα ἠλίφ' ἀνίσχοντι ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων, γεγωνὸς ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κύρος μὲν τέθνηκεν, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἶη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρ

θάρων ὅθεν τῇ προτεραίᾳ ὥρμηντο, καὶ λέγοι ὅτι ταύ-  
 την μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περιμένειεν ἂν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν  
 ἦκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἀπιέναι φαίη ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθεν περ  
 ἦλθε. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι 4  
 "Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι βαρέως ἔφερον. Κλέαρχος δὲ  
 τάδε εἶπεν. 'Ἄλλ' ὥφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· ἐπεὶ δὲ τετε-  
 λεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ, ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε  
 βασιλέα, καί, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται, καὶ εἰ  
 μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐπαγ-  
 γελλόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ, ἂν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, εἰς τὸν θρόνον  
 τὸν βασιλείου καθιεῖν αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ μάχῃ νικούντων  
 καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστί. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέ- 5  
 λους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα καὶ Μέ-  
 νωνα τὸν Θετταλόν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτοὺς Μένων ἐβούλετο·  
 ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀριαίου. οἱ μὲν ὄχοντο, 6  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ περιέμενε. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο  
 σίτον ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν ὑποζυγίων, κόπτοντες τοὺς  
 βοῦς καὶ ὄνους· ξύλοις δ' ἐχρῶντο, μικρὸν προϊόντες  
 ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος οὐ ἡ μάχῃ ἐγένετο, τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς  
 πολλοῖς οὖσιν, οὓς ἠνάγκαζον οἱ "Ἕλληνες ἐκβάλλειν  
 τοὺς αὐτομολούντας παρὰ βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς γέρροις  
 καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίναις ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις· πολλὰ  
 δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἦσαν φέρεσθαι ἔρημοι· οἷς  
 πᾶσι χρώμενοι κρέα ἐψοντες ἡσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέ- 7  
 ραν. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ πλήθουσιν ἀγορὰν καὶ ἔρ-  
 χονται παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες, οἱ  
 μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι· ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος εἰς "Ἕλληνα,  
 ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὦν καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων·  
 καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο ἐπιστήμων εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ  
 τάξεις τε καὶ ὅπλομαχίαν. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ 8  
 καλέσαντες τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν,  
 ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς "Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχά-  
 νει καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ ὄπλα ἰόντας  
 ἐπὶ τὰς βασιλέως θύρας εὐρίσκεισθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται

- 9 ἀγαθόν. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες· οἱ δὲ  
 "Ἕλληνες βαρέως μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὁμῶς δὲ Κλέαρχος  
 τοσοῦτον εἶπεν, ὅτι οὐ τῶν νικῶντων εἷη τὰ ὄπλα  
 παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατη-  
 γοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὃ, τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄρι-  
 στον ἔχετε· ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα ἤξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις  
 αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερὰ ἐξηρημένα·  
 10 ἔτυχε γὰρ θνύμενος. ἔνθα δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ  
 μὲν ὁ Ἀρκὰς πρεσβύτατος ὢν, ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀπο-  
 θάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὄπλα παραδοίησαν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θη-  
 βαῖος, Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ, ἔφη, ὦ Φαλῖνε, Ξαυμάζω, πότερα  
 ὡς κρατῶν βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ὡς διὰ φιλίαν  
 δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὡς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν  
 καὶ οὐ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα ; εἰ δὲ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν,  
 λεγέτω, τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἐὰν αὐτῷ ταῦτα  
 11 χαρίσωνται. πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλῖνος εἶπε, Βασιλεὺς νικᾶν  
 ἡγεῖται, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε. τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἔστιν  
 ὅστις τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀντιποιεῖται ; νομίζει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυ-  
 τοῦ εἶναι, ἔχων ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα καὶ ποταμῶν  
 ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ πλήθους ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνά-  
 μενος ἀγαγεῖν, ὅσον οὐδ', εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν, δύναισθε ἂν  
 12 ἀποκτεῖναι. μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν,  
 ὦ Φαλῖνε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὀρᾷς, ἡμῖν οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἀγαθὸν  
 ἄλλο εἰ μὴ ὄπλα καὶ ἀρετή. ὄπλα μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες  
 οἴομεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παραδόντες δ' ἂν  
 ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωμάτων στερηθῆναι. μὴ οὐ οἶου τὰ  
 μόνα ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν  
 τούτοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχοῦμεθα.  
 13 ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλῖνος ἐγέλασε καὶ εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ  
 φιλοσόφῳ μὲν ἔοικας, ὦ νεανίσκε, καὶ λέγεις οὐκ ἀχά-  
 ριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ἀνόητος ὢν, εἰ οἶε τὴν ὑμετέραι  
 14 ἀρετὴν περιγενέσθαι ἂν τῆς βασιλέως δυνάμεως. ἄλ-  
 λους δέ τινες ἔφασαν λέγειν ὑπομαλακίζομένους, ὡς  
 καὶ Κύρῳ πιστοὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι

γένοιτο, εἰ βούλοιτο φίλος γενέσθαι· καὶ εἴτε ἄλλο  
 τι θέλοι χρήσθαι, εἴτ' ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον στρατεύειν, συγ-  
 καταστρέψαιντ' ἂν αὐτῷ. ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε, 15  
 καὶ ἠρώτησεν, εἰ ἤδη ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ  
 ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν, Οὗτοι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα  
 λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπὲ τί λέγεις. ὁ δ' εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ σε, 16  
 ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος ἐώρακα, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάν-  
 τες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἑλλήν ἐῖ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες,  
 ὅσους σὺ ὀράς. ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι συμ-  
 βουλευόμεθά σοι, τί χρή ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ 17  
 οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὅ, τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλ-  
 λιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὅ σοι τιμὴν οἴσει εἰς τὸν  
 ἔπειτα χρόνον ἀναλεγομενον, ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμ-  
 φθὲῖς παρὰ βασιλέως κελεύσων τοὺς Ἑλλήνας τὰ  
 ὄπλα παραδοῦναι ξυμβουλευομένοις ξυμβούλευσεν αὐ-  
 τοῖς τάδε. οἶσθα δέ, ὅτι ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλ-  
 λάδι ἅ ἂν συμβουλεύσης. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα 18  
 ὑπήγετο, βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως  
 πρεσβεύοντα ξυμβουλευσαι μὴ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα,  
 ὅπως εὐέλπιδες μᾶλλον εἶεν οἱ Ἑλληνες. Φαλῖνος δὲ  
 ὑποστρέψας παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ, εἰ μὲν 19  
 τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις ὑμῖν ἐστι σωθῆναι πολε-  
 μούντας βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ  
 ὄπλα· εἰ δέ τοι μηδεμία σωτηρίας ἐστὶν ἐλπίς ἄκοντος  
 βασιλέως, συμβουλεύω σώζεσθαι ὑμῖν ὅπη δυνατόν.  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ 20  
 σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς  
 οἴομεθα, εἰ μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους εἶναι, πλείονος  
 ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ παραδόντες  
 ἄλλῳ, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἄμεινον ἂν πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες  
 τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ἄλλῳ παραδόντες. ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε, 21  
 Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε ὑμῖν  
 εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεὺς, ὅτι μένουσι μὲν αὐτοῦ σπον-  
 δαὶ εἴησαν, προΐουσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιούσι πόλεμος. εἶπατε

οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου, πότερα μενεΐτε καὶ σπονδαὶ εἰσι  
 22 ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπαγγελῶ. Κλέαρχος  
 δ' ἔλεξεν, Ἀπάγγελλε τοίνυν καὶ περὶ τούτου, ὅτι καὶ  
 ἡμῖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἅπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ. Τί οὖν ταῦτά  
 ἐστίν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ἀπεκρίνατο Κλέαρχος, Ἦν  
 μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ προϊούσι πόλε-  
 23 μος. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτησε, Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγ-  
 γελῶ; Κλέαρχος δὲ ταῦτά πάλιν ἀπεκρίνατο, Σπονδαί  
 μὲν μένουσιν, ἀπιούσι δὲ ἢ προϊούσι πόλεμος. ὅ, τι  
 δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.

- 2 Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ ὥχετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ  
 παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦκον, Προκλῆς καὶ Χειρίσοφος. Μένων  
 δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμενε παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ. οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον, ὅτι  
 πολλοὺς φαίη Ἀριαῖος εἶναι Πέρσας ἑαυτοῦ βελτίους,  
 οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ  
 βούλεσθε συναπιέναι, ἥκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός·  
 2 εἰ δὲ μή, αὐτὸς πρῶτ' ἀπιέναι φησίν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος  
 εἶπεν, Ἀλλ' οὕτω χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν ἤκωμεν, ὥσπερ  
 λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε ὅποιον ἂν τι ὑμῖν οἴησθε  
 μάλιστα συμφέρειν. ὅ, τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ τούτοις  
 3 εἶπε. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντος συγκαλέσας  
 τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἐμοί,  
 ὦ ἄνδρες, θυομένῳ ἵεναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ  
 ἱερά. καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ νῦν  
 πυνθάνομαι, ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης  
 ποταμός ἐστι ναυσίπορος, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα ἄνευ  
 πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν. οὐ μὲν  
 δὴ αὐτοῦ γε μένειν οἶόν τε· τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν  
 ἔχειν· ἵεναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους πάννυ καλὰ  
 4 ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερά ἦν. ὧδε οὖν χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δει-  
 πνεῖν ὅ, τι τις ἔχει· ἐπειδὰν δὲ σημήνῃ τῷ κέρατι ὡς  
 ἀναπαύεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον,  
 ἀνατίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ ἔπεσθε  
 τῷ ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια ἔχοντες πρὸς τοῦ

ποταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ ὄπλα ἔξω. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρα- 5  
 τηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπῆλθον καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτω. καὶ τὸ  
 λοιπὸν ὁ μὲν ἦρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπείθοντο, οὐχ ἐλόμενοι,  
 ἀλλὰ ὀρώντες, ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα,  
 οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν. ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ, ἣν 6  
 ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης, στα-  
 θμοὶ τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριά-  
 κοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξα-  
 κισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι  
 εἰς Βαβυλῶνα στάδιοι ἐξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι. ἐν 7  
 τεύθειν, ἐπεὶ σκότος ἐγένετο, Μιλτοκύθης μὲν ὁ Θραῶξ  
 ἔχων τοὺς τε ἵππείας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταρά-  
 κοντα καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρακῶν ὥς τριακοσίους ἡτο-  
 μόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις 8  
 ἡγεῖτο κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ' εἶποντο. καὶ  
 ἀφικνούνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον σταθμὸν παρὰ Ἀριαίων  
 καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου στρατιὰν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν  
 τάξει δέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ξυνήλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λο-  
 χαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ Ἀριαίων· καὶ ὤμοσαν οἱ  
 τε Ἕλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ κράτι-  
 στοι μήτε προδώσειν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι·  
 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσώμοσαν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι ἀδόλως.  
 ταῦτα δ' ὤμοσαν, σφάξαντες ταῦρον καὶ λύκον καὶ 9  
 κάπρον καὶ κριὸν εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες βάπτου-  
 ντες ξίφος, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι λόγχην. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ 10  
 ἐγένετο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος, Ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπεὶ περ  
 ὁ αὐτὸς ὑμῖν στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπέ, τίνα γνώμην  
 ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας, πότερον ἄπιμεν ἢνπερ ἦλθο-  
 μεν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ ἐννενοηκέναι δοκεῖς ὁδὸν κρείττω.  
 ὁ δ' εἶπεν, Ἦν μὲν ἦλθομεν ἀπιόντες παντελῶς ἂν 11  
 ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἀπολοίμεθα· ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν  
 τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. ἐπτακαίδεκα γὰρ σταθμῶν τῶν ἐγγυ-  
 τάτω οὐδὲ δεῦρο ἰόντες ἐκ τῆς χώρας οὐδὲν εἶχομεν  
 λαμβάνειν· ἔνθα δέ τι ἦν, ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι κατε-

- δαπανήσαμεν. νῦν δ' ἐπιωοῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μακρο-  
 12 τέραν μὲν, τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν. πορευ-  
 τέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα  
 μακροτάτους, ἵνα ὡς πλείστον ἀποσπασθῶμεν τοῖ  
 βασιλικῷ στρατεύματι· ἦν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν  
 ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασι-  
 λεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν. ὀλίγῳ μὲν γὰρ στρατεύματι  
 οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι· πολλὸν δ' ἔχων στόλον οὐ  
 δυνήσεται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι. ἴσως δὲ καὶ τῶν  
 ἐπιτηδείων σπανιεῖ. ταύτην, ἔφη, τὴν γνώμην ἔχω  
 ἔγωγε.
- 13 Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία οὐδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη ἢ  
 ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν· ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλ-  
 λιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο ἐν δεξιᾷ  
 ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον, λογιζόμενοι ἥξειν ἅμα ἡλῖφ δύνοντι  
 εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ  
 14 ἐψεύσθησαν. ἔτι δὲ ἀμφὶ δελήην ἔδοξαν πολεμίους  
 ὁρᾶν ἱππέας· καὶ τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων οἱ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν  
 ταῖς τάξεσιν ὄντες εἰς τὰς τάξεις ἔθεον, καὶ Ἀριαῖος,  
 ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' ἀμάξης πορευόμενος, διότι ἐτέτρωτο,  
 15 καταβὰς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὠπλι-  
 ζοντο ἤκον λέγοντες οἱ προπεμφθέντες σκοποί, ὅτι οὐχ  
 ἱππεῖς εἰσιν ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια νέμονται. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνω-  
 σαν πάντες, ὅτι ἐγγὺς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεὺς·  
 καὶ γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμας οὐ πρόσω.
- 16 Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν· ἥδει  
 γὰρ καὶ ἀπειρηκότας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἀσίτους  
 ὄντας· ἥδη δὲ καὶ ὄψε ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε,  
 φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοῖη φεύγειν, ἀλλ' εὐθύωρον ἄγων  
 ἅμα τῷ ἡλῖφ δυομένῳ εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω κώμας τοὺς  
 πρώτους ἔχων κατεσκήνωσεν, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ  
 τοῦ βασιλικῷ στρατεύματι καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν  
 17 οἰκιῶν ξύλα. οἱ μὲν οὖν πρῶτοι ὁμῶς τρόπῳ τινὶ  
 ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, οἱ δὲ ὕστεροι σκοταῖοι προσιόντες



ὥς ἐτύγγανον ἕκαστοι ἠυλίζοντο, καὶ κραυγὴν πολλὴν ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ 16 ἐγένετο· οὔτε γὰρ ὑποζύγιον ἔτ' οὐδὲν ἐφάνη οὔτε στρατόπεδον οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησιον. ἐξεπλάγη δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔπραττε. προιούσης 19 μέντοι τῆς νυκτὸς ταύτης καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι φόβος ἐμπίπτει, καὶ θόρυβος καὶ δούπος ἦν, οἷον εἰκὸς φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίνεσθαι. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἡλείον, 20 ὃν ἐτύγγανεν ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄριστον τῶν τότε, τοῦτον ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε συγὴν κατακηρύξαντα, ὅτι προαγορεύουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς τὰ ὄπλα μνηύσῃ, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον ἀργυρίου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, ἔγνωσαν οἱ 21 στρατιῶται, ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἶη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. ἅμα δὲ ὀρθρῶ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλέαρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἥπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.

Ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ, 3 τῇδε δῆλον ἦν. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἡλίων ἀνατέλλουσι κήρυκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθον 2 πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτησαν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον οἱ προφύλακες, Κλέαρχος τυχὼν τότε τὰς τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν, ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ 3 κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνὴν, τῶν δὲ ἀόπλων μηδὲνα καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ αὐτὸς τε προῆλθε τοὺς τε εὐοπλοτάτους ἔχων καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔφρασεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις, ἀνηρώτα, 4

- τί βούλονται. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον, ὅτι περὶ σπονδῶν ἤκοιεν, ἄνδρες, οὔτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο, Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν αὐτῷ, ὅτι μάχης δεῖ πρῶτον· ἄριστον γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων περὶ σπονδῶν λέγειν τοῖς Ἕλλησι μὴ πορί-  
 5 σας ἄριστον. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπήλαινον, καὶ ἤκου ταχύ· ὧ καὶ δῆλον ἦν, ὅτι ἐγγύς ποι βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις, ὧ ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δέ, ὅτι εἰκότα δοκοῖεν λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἤκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες, οἱ αὐτούς, ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένων-  
 7 ται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ ἡρώτα, εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι σπένδοιτο τοῖς ἰοῦσι καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἢ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἔσονται σπονδαί. οἱ δέ, Ἀπασιν, ἔφασαν, μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν διαγ-  
 8 γελθῇ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπον, μεταστησάμενος αὐτοὺς ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο· καὶ ἐδόκει τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι ταχύ καὶ καθ' ἡσυχίαν ἐλθεῖν τε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 9 καὶ λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε, Δοκεῖ μὲν κάμοι ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω, ἔστ' ἂν ὀκνήσωσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι, μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι· οἶμαί γε μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον παρέσεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει καιρὸς εἶναι, ἀπήγγελλεν, ὅτι σπένδοιτο,  
 10 καὶ εὐθὺς ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευε πρὸς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο, Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς ποιησόμενος, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὥπισθοφυλάκει. καὶ ἐνετύγχανον τάφροις καὶ αὐλῶσιν ὕδατος πλήρεσιν, ὥς μὴ δύνασθαι διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο διαβάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων, οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον.  
 11 καὶ ἐνταῦθι ἦν Κλέαρχον καταμαθεῖν ὥς ἐπεστάται, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο

τεταγμένων βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον  
 ἔπαισεν ἄν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς προσελάμβανεν εἰς τὸν  
 πηλὸν ἐμβαίνων· ὥστε πᾶσιν αἰσχύνην εἶναι μὴ οὐ  
 συσπoudάζειν. καὶ ἐτάχθησαν μὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ οἱ 12  
 τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες· ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ Κλέαρχον ἑώρων  
 σπουδάζοντα, προσελάμβανον καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι.  
 πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδεν, ὑποπτεύων μὴ 13  
 αἰεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις εἶναι τὰς τάφρους ὕδατος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν  
 ὥρα οἷα τὸ πεδίου ἄρδεν· ἀλλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ προ-  
 φαίνοιτο τοῖς Ἑλλησι δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν, τούτου  
 ἕνεκα βασιλέα ὑπώπτευνεν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίου τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφει-  
 κέναι. πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας, ὅθεν ἀπέ- 14  
 δειξαν οἱ ἡγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐνὴν δὲ  
 σῖτος πολὺς καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων καὶ ὄξος ἐψητὸν ἀπὸ  
 τῶν αὐτῶν. αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων, οἷας 15  
 μὲν ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν, τοῖς οἰκέταις ἀπέ-  
 κειντο, αἱ δὲ τοῖς δεσπόταις ἀποκείμεναι ἦσαν ἀπό-  
 λεκτοί, θανμάσιαι τὸ κάλλος καὶ τὸ μέγεθος, ἡ δὲ ὄψις  
 ἡλέκτρον οὐδὲν διέφερε· τὰς δὲ τινὰς ξηραίνοντες τρα-  
 γήματα ἀπετίθεσαν. καὶ ἦν καὶ παρὰ πότον ἡδὺ μὲν,  
 κεφαλαλγὲς δέ. ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοί- 16  
 νικος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ  
 ἐθαύμασαν τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς.  
 ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο κεφαλαλγὲς. ὁ δὲ φοῖνιξ,  
 ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθείη ὁ ἐγκέφαλος, ὅλος αὐαίνειτο.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου 17  
 βασιλέως ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναι-  
 κὸς ἀδελφὸς καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς· δοῦλοι δὲ πολλοὶ  
 εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' ἑρμηνέως  
 τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, γείτων οἰκῶ τῇ 18  
 Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὑμᾶς εἶδον εἰς πολλὰ κακὰ καὶ ἀμή-  
 χανα ἐμπεπτωκότας, εὖρημα ἐποίησάμην, εἴ πως δυναί-  
 ῃην παρὰ βασιλέως αἰτήσασθαι δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι

- ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν οὐκ ἀχαρίστως  
 μοι ἔχῃεν οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν οὔτε πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλ-  
 19 λάδος. ταῦτα δὲ γνούς ἡτούμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ,  
 ὅτι δικαίως ἂν μοι χαρίζοιτο, ὅτι αὐτῷ Κύρόν τε ἐπι-  
 στρατεύοντα πρῶτος ἡγγεῖλα καὶ βοήθειαν ἔχων ἅμα  
 τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ ἀφικόμην, καὶ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλ-  
 ληνας τεταγμένων οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ διήλασα καὶ  
 συνέμιξα βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ, ἔνθα  
 βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο, ἐπεὶ Κύρον ἀπέκτεινε, καὶ τοὺς ξὺν  
 Κύρῳ βαρβάρους ἐδίωξα σὺν τοῖσδε τοῖς παρούσι νῦν  
 20 μετ' ἐμοῦ, ὅπερ αὐτῷ εἰσι πιστότατοι. καὶ περὶ μὲν  
 τούτων ὑπέσχετό μοι βουλευέσασθαι· ἐρέσθαι δέ με  
 ὑμᾶς ἐκέλευσεν ἐλθόντα, τίνος ἕνεκεν ἐστρατεύσατε ἐπ'  
 αὐτόν. καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν μετρίως ἀποκρίνασθαι,  
 ἵνα μοι εὐπρακτότερον ᾖ, ἐάν τι δύνωμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν  
 21 παρ' αὐτοῦ διαπράξασθαι. πρὸς ταῦτα μεταστάντες  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐβουλευόντο· καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο, Κλέαρχος  
 δ' ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλθομεν ὥς βασιλεῖ πολε-  
 μήσοντες οὐτ' ἐπορευόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ πολλὰς  
 προφάσεις Κύρος εὔρισκεν, ὥς καὶ σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα  
 ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκευάστους λάβοι καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε  
 22 ἀναγάγοι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἤδη αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν ἐν δεινῇ  
 ὄντα, ἡσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι  
 αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ παρέχοντες ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς  
 23 εὖ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κύρος τέθνηκεν, οὔτε βασιλεῖ ἀντι-  
 ποιούμεθα τῆς ἀρχῆς οὐτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα βουλοίμεθ'  
 ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν κακῶς ποιεῖν, οὐδ' αὐτὸν  
 ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν, πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν οἴκαδε, εἰ  
 τις ἡμᾶς μὴ λυποίῃ· ἀδικοῦντα μέντοι πειρασόμεθα  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς καὶ εὖ  
 ποιῶν ὑπάρχῃ, καὶ τούτου εἰς γε δύναμιν οὐχ ἡττησό-  
 24 μεθα εὖ ποιοῦντες. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ  
 Τισσαφέρνης ἔφη, Ταῦτα ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ καὶ  
 ὑμῖν πάλιν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· μέχρι δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἦκω αἰ

σπονδαὶ μενόντων· ἀγορὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν. καὶ 25  
 εἰς μὲν τὴν ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἦκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ "Ελληνες  
 ἐφρόντιζον· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἦκων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι διαπεπρα-  
 γμένος ἦκοι παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι αὐτῷ σῶζειν τοὺς  
 "Ελληνας, καί περ πάνυ πολλῶν ἀντιλεγόντων, ὡς οὐκ  
 ἄξιον εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσα-  
 μένους. τέλος δὲ εἶπε, καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν πιστὰ 26  
 λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν φιλίαν παρέξειν ὑμῖν τὴν  
 χώραν καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν  
 παρέχοντας· ὅπου δ' ἂν μὴ ἢ πρίασθαι, λαμβάνειν  
 ὑμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐάσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὑμᾶς δ' 27  
 αὐτὴν ἡμῖν δεήσει ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι ὡς διὰ φιλίας  
 ἄσινῶς σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ λαμβάνοντας, ὅποταν μὴ ἀγορὰν  
 παρέχωμεν, ἣν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγορὰν, ὠνουμένους ἔξειν  
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς 28  
 ἔδωσαν Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς  
 ἀδελφὸς τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς  
 καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τισ- 29  
 σαφέρνης εἶπε, Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς βασιλέα· ἐπει-  
 δὲν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι, ἥξω συσκευασάμενος ὡς  
 ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ  
 τὴν ἑμαντοῦ ἀρχήν.

Μετὰ ταῦτα περιέμενον Τισσαφέρην οἳ τε "Ελ- 4  
 ληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι  
 ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται  
 πρὸς Ἀριαῖον καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι  
 καὶ πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ Περσῶν τινες, παρεθάρρυνόι  
 τε καὶ δεξιὰς ἔνιοι παρὰ βασιλέως ἔφερον μὴ μνησικα-  
 κήσειν βασιλέα αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπιστρατείας  
 μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς τῶν παρῳχημένων. τοῦτων δὲ 2  
 γιγνομένων ἐνδηλοὶ ἦσαν οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον ἡττον προσ-  
 έχοντες τοῖς "Ελλήσι τὸν νοῦν. ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο  
 τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ  
 προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρα-

- 3 τηγοῖς, Τί μένομεν ; ἡ οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι ἂν περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιοτο, ἵνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις Ἑλλησι φόβος ᾖ ἐπὶ βασιλέα μέγαν στρατεύειν ; καὶ νῦν μὲν ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα· ἐπὰν δὲ πάλιν ἀλίσθῃ αὐτῷ ἡ στρατιά, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν.
- 1 ἴσως δέ που ἡ ἀποσκάπτει τι ἡ ἀποτειχίζει, ὥς ἄπορος ᾖ ἡ ὁδός. οὐ γάρ ποτε ἐκὼν γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀπαγγεῖλαι, ὥς ἡμεῖς τοσοῖδε ὄντες ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ
- 5 καταγελάσαντες ἀπήλθομεν. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέγουσιν, Ἐγὼ ἐνθυμούμαι μὲν καὶ ταῦτα πάντα· ἐννοῶ δ' ὅτι, εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ ἀπιέναι καὶ παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖν. ἔπειτα πρῶτον μὲν ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν οὐδὲ ὅθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὐθις δὲ ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς ἔσται· καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα ποιούντων ἡμῶν εὐθὺς Ἀριαῖος ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς λελείψεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρό-
- 6 σθεν ὄντες πολέμιοι ἡμῖν ἔσονται. ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα ἡμῖν ἔστι διαβατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην οἶδαμεν ὅτι ἀδύνατον διαβῆναι κωλύοντων πολεμίων. οὐ μὲν δή, ἂν μάχεσθαι γε δέη, ἵππεῖς εἰσιν ἡμῖν ξύμμαχοι, τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἵππεῖς εἰσιν οἱ πλείστοι καὶ πλείστου ἄξιοι· ὥστε νικῶντες μὲν τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν ; ἡττωμένων δὲ οὐδένα οἶόν
- 7 τε σωθῆναι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα, ᾧ οὕτω πολλὰ ἔστι τὰ σύμμαχα, εἴπερ προθυμεῖται ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι, οὐκ οἶδα ὅ, τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὁμόσαι καὶ δεξιὰν δοῦναι καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιορκῆσαι καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ πιστὰ ἄπιστα ποιῆσαι Ἑλλησὶ τε καὶ βαρβάροις. τοιαῦτα πολλὰ ἔλεγεν.
- 8 Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ὥς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιὼν καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν· ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ

γάμῳ. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἤδη Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου καὶ 9  
 ἄγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ  
 Ἀριαῖος τὸ Κύρου βαρβαρικὸν ἔχων στράτευμα ἅμα  
 Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντᾳ καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν  
 ἐκείνοις. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ὑφορώντες τούτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ' 10  
 ἑαυτῶν ἐχώρου ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο  
 δὲ ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην καὶ  
 μείον· ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφοτέροι ὥσπερ πολεμίους  
 ἀλλήλους, καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ὑποψίαν παρείχεν. ἐνίστε 11  
 δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα  
 τοιαῦτα ξυλλέγοντες πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις· ὥστε  
 καὶ τοῦτο ἔχθραν παρείχε. διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς στα- 12  
 θμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος,  
 καὶ παρήλθον εἰσω αὐτοῦ. ἦν δὲ ὠκοδομημένον πλίν-  
 θοις ὀπταῖς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις, εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν,  
 ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν· μῆκος δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρα-  
 σαγγῶν· ἀπέχει δὲ Βαβυλῶνος οὐ πολὺ. ἐντεῦθεν 13  
 δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο, παρασάγγας ὀκτώ·  
 καὶ διέβησαν διώρυχας δύο, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ γεφύρας,  
 τὴν δ' ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις ἐπτὰ· αὗται δ' ἦσαν ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ· κατετέτμηντο δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν  
 καὶ τάφροι ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγά-  
 λαι, ἔπειτα δ' ἐλάττους· τέλος δὲ καὶ μικροὶ ὀχετοί,  
 ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς μελίνας· καὶ ἀφικνου-  
 νται ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν· πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν με-  
 γάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος, ἥ ὄνομα Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα  
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ σταδίου πεντεκαίδεκα. οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἕλ- 14  
 ληνες παρ' αὐτὴν ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς παραδείσου μεγάλου  
 καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων, οἱ δὲ βάρ-  
 βαροι διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα· οὐ μέντοι καταφα-  
 νεῖς ἦσαν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ἔτυχον ἐν περιπάτῳ 15  
 ὄντες πρὸ τῶν ὅπλων Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν· καὶ  
 προσελθὼι ἄνθρωπός τις ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας,  
 ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μένωνα δὲ οὐκ

ἐξήτει, καὶ ταῦτα παρ' Ἀριαίου ὦν τοῦ Μένωνος ξένου.  
 16 ἔπει δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν, ὅτι αὐτός εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν  
 ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε. Ἐπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάο-  
 ζος, πιστοὶ ὄντες Κύρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνοι, καὶ κελεύουσι  
 φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπίθωνται τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ βάρ-  
 βαροι· ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα πολὺ ἐν τῷ πλησίον παρα-  
 17 δέισθαι. καὶ ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ  
 πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακὴν, ὥς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λύσαι  
 Τισσαφέρνῃς τῆς νυκτός, ἐὰν δύνῃται, ὥς μὴ διαβῇτε,  
 ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ ἀποληφθῇτε τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώ-  
 18 ρυχος. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν  
 Κλέαρχον καὶ φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος  
 19 ἀκούσας ἐταράχθη σφόδρα καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο. νεανίσκος  
 δέ τις τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας εἶπεν, ὥς οὐκ ἀκόλουθα  
 εἶη τό τε ἐπιθήσεσθαι καὶ λύσειν τὴν γέφυραν. δῆλον  
 γὰρ ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους ἢ νικᾶν δεήσει ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι.  
 ἐὰν μὲν οὖν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν γέφυραν ;  
 οὐδὲ γάρ, ἂν πολλαὶ γέφυραι ὦσιν, ἔχοιμεν ἂν ὅποι  
 20 φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. ἐὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν, λελυ-  
 μένης τῆς γεφύρας οὐχ ἔξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν·  
 οὐδὲ μὴν βοηθῆσαι πολλῶν ὄντων πέραν οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς  
 21 δυνήσεται λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ  
 Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον, πόση τις εἶη  
 χώρα ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ  
 εἶπεν, ὅτι πολλὴ καὶ κῶμαι ἔνισσι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ  
 22 καὶ μεγάλαι. τότε δὴ καὶ ἐγνώσθη, ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι  
 τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑποπέμψαιεν, ὁκνοῦντες μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν μένοιεν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐρύματα  
 ἔχοντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα, ἔνθεν δὲ τὴν διώρυχα,  
 τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς  
 καὶ ἀγαθῆς οὐσης καὶ τῶν ἐργασομένων ἐνόντων, εἴτα  
 δὲ καὶ ἀποστροφή γένοιτο, εἴ τις βούλοιτο βασιλέα  
 23 κακῶς ποιεῖν. μετὰ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· ἐπὶ μέντοι  
 τὴν γέφυραν ὅμως φυλακὴν ἔπεμψαν· καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο



οὐδείς οὐδαμόθεν οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν οὐδείς ἦλθε τῶν πολεμίων, ὥς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον. ἐπειδὴ 21 δ' ἕως ἐγένετο, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως· ἐξήγγελλον γάρ τινες τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους Ἑλλήνων, ὡς διαβαινόντων μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσεσθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ψευδῆ ἦν· διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτοῖς ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων σκοπῶν, εἰ διαβαίνοιεν τὸν ποταμόν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶδεν, ὥχετο ἀπελαύνων.

Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτ- 25 ταρας, παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν, ἐπὶ τὸν Φύσκον ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρον· ἐπὴν δὲ γέφυρα. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὤκειτο πόλις μεγάλη, ἥ ὄνομα Ὀπις· πρὸς ἣν ἀπήντησε τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὁ Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου νόθος ἀδελφὸς ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύμα παρερχομένους τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐθεώρει. ὁ δὲ 26 Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο μὲν εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος. ὅσον δὲ [ἀν] χρόνον τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπιστήσειε, τοσοῦτον ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι' ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος γίνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ στρατεύμα καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἕλλησι δόξαι πάμπλου εἶναι, καὶ τὸν Πέρσην ἐκπεπλήχθαι θεωροῦντα. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ 27 τῆς Μηδίας σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους ἕξ, παρασάγγας τριάκοντα, εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος κώμας τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. ταύτας Τισσαφέρνης Κύρῳ ἐπεγγελῶν διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐπέτρεψε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. ἐνὴν δὲ σῖτος πολὺς καὶ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα 28 χρήματα. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τέτταρας, παρασάγγας εἴκοσι, τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ὤκειτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων ὄνομα

Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον.

- 5 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνούνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ὑποψίαί μὲν ἦσαν, φανερά
- 2 δὲ οὐδεμία ἐφαίνετο ἐπιβουλῇ. ἔδοξεν οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ εἰ πως δύναίτο παῦσαι τὰς ὑποψίας, πρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι· καὶ ἔπεμψέ τινα ἐροῦντα, ὅτι ξυγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ χρήξει.
- 3 ὁ δὲ ἐτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἤκειν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ξυνήλθον, λέγει ὁ Κλεάρχος τάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ἡμῖν ὄρκους γεγεννημένους καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας μὴ ἀδικήσειν ἀλλήλους· φυλαττόμενον δὲ σέ τε ὁρῶ ὡς πολεμίους
- 4 ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν οὐ δύναμαι οὔτε σὲ αἰσθεσθαι πειρώμενον ἡμᾶς κακῶς ποιεῖν, ἐγώ τε σαφῶς οἶδα, ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδ' ἐπινοοῦμεν τοιοῦτον οὐδέν, ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους σοι ἔλθειν, ὅπως, εἰ δυναίμεθα, ἐξέλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν
- 5 ἀπιστίαν. καὶ γὰρ οἶδα ἀνθρώπους ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξ ὑποψίας οἱ φοβηθέντες ἀλλήλους, φθάσαι βουλόμενοι πρὶν παθεῖν, ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας οὔτ' αὐ βουλομένους
- 6 τοιοῦτον οὐδέν. τὰς οὖν τοιαύτας ἀγνωμοσύνας νομίζων συνουσίαις μάλιστα ἂν παύεσθαι, ἥκω καὶ διδάσκειν σε βούλομαι, ὡς σὺ ἡμῖν οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς.
- 7 πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον οἱ θεῶν ἡμᾶς ὄρκοι κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων σύννοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς, τοῦτον ἐγώ οὔποτ' ἂν εὐδαιμονίσαιμι. τὸν γὰρ θεῶν πόλεμον οὐκ οἶδα οὔτ' ἀπὸ ποίου ἂν τάχους φεύγων τις ἀποφύγοι οὔτ' εἰς ποῖον ἂν σκότος ἀποδραίῃ οὔθ' ὅπως ἂν εἰς ἐχυρὸν χωρίον ἀποσταίῃ. πάντα γὰρ πάντα τοῖς θεοῖς ὑποχα
- 8 καὶ πανταχῇ πάντων ἴσον οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι. περὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ὄρκων οὕτω γιγνώσκω, παρ'

οἷς ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλίαν συνθέμενοι κατεθέμεθα· τῶν δ' ἀνθρωπίνων σέ ἐγὼ ἐν τῷ παρόντι νομίζω μέγιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν ἀγαθόν. σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς 9 εὐπορος, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς διαβατός, τῶν τε ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορία· ἄνευ δὲ σοῦ πᾶσα μὲν διὰ σκότους ἢ ὁδός· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς ἐπιστάμεθα· πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς δύσπορος, πᾶς δὲ ὄχλος φοβερός, φοβερώτατον δ' ἐρημία· μεστὴ γὰρ πολλῆς ἀπορίας ἐστίν. εἰ δὲ δὴ καὶ μα- 10 νέντες σε κατακτείναιμεν, ἄλλο τι ἂν ἢ τὸν εὐεργέτην κατακτείναντες πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον ἀγωνιζοίμεθα; ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἶων ἂν ἐλπίδων ἐμαυτὸν στερήσαιο, εἰ σέ τι κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιο ποιεῖν, ταῦτα λέξω. ἐγὼ γὰρ Κῦρον ἐπεθύμησά μοι φίλον 11 γενέσθαι, νομίζων τῶν τότε ἱκανώτατον εἶναι εὖ ποιεῖν ὃν βούλοιο· σέ δὲ νῦν ὁρῶ τὴν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώραν ἔχοντα καὶ τὴν σεαυτοῦ ἀρχὴν σώζοντα, τὴν δὲ βασιλέως δύναμιν, ἣ Κῦρος πολεμία ἐχρήτο, σοὶ ταύτην ξύμμαχον οὖσαν· τούτων δὲ τοιούτων 12 ὄντων τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐρῶ γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα, ἐξ ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας καὶ σέ βουλήσεσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν εἶναι· οἶδα μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν Μυσοὺς λυπηροὺς ὄντας, οὓς 13 νομίζω ἂν σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παρασχεῖν, οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισίδας· ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ τοιαῦτα εἶναι, ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἐνοχλοῦντα αἰετῇ ὑμετέρα εὐδαιμονία. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, οἷς μάλιστα ὑμᾶς νῦν γιγνώσκω τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ ποῖα δυνάμει συμμάχῳ χρησάμενοι μᾶλλον ἂν 14 κολάσαισθε τῆς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ οὔσης. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν γε τοῖς πέριξ οἰκοῦσι σὺ εἰ μὲν βούλοιο τῷ φίλος εἶναι, ὥς μέγιστος ἂν εἴης, εἰ δὲ τίς σε λυποῖ, ὥς δεσπότης ἀναστρέφοιο ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἳ σοὶ οὐκ ἂν τοῦ μισθοῦ ἕνεκα μόνον ὑπηρετοῖμεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος 15 ἧς σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. ἐμοὶ μὲν 15

δὴ ταῦτα πάντα ἐνθυμουμένῳ οὕτω δοκεῖ θάυμαστον εἶναι τὸ σὲ ἡμῖν ἀπιστεῖν, ὥστε καὶ ἡδιστ' ἂν ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα, τίς οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς λέγειν ὥστε σε πείσαι λέγων, ὡς ἡμεῖς σοι ἐπιβουλεύομεν. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν τοσαῦτα εἶπε· Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ὦδε ἀπημείφθη.

- 16 Ἄλλ' ἡδομαι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου φρονίμους λόγους· ταῦτα γὰρ γινώσκων εἴ τι ἐμοὶ κακὸν βουλεύοις, ἅμα ἂν μοι δοκεῖς καὶ σαυτῷ κακόνους εἶναι. ὥς δ' ἂν μάθῃς, ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ὑμεῖς δικαίως οὔτε βασι-
- 17 λεῖ οὗτ' ἐμοὶ ἀπιστοίητε, ἀντάκουσον. εἰ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι, πότερά σοι δοκοῦμεν ἱππέων πλήθους ἀπορεῖν ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὀπλίσεως, ἐν ᾗ ὑμᾶς μὲν βλάπτειν ἱκανοὶ εἴημεν ἂν, ἀντιπιάσχειν δὲ οὐδεὶς κίν-
- 18 δυνος; ἀλλὰ χωρίων ἐπιτηδεῖων ὑμῖν ἐπιτίθεσθαι ἀπορεῖν ἂν σοι δοκοῦμεν; οὐ τοσαῦτα μὲν πεδία ἡμῖν φίλια ὄντα σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ διαπορεύεσθε, τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὑμῖν ὁράτε ὄντα πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν ἔξεστι προκαταλαβοῦσιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν, τοσούτοι δ' εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι ὁπόσοις ἂν ὑμῶν βουλόμεθα μάχεσθαι; εἰσὶ δ' αὐτῶν οὐς οὐδ' ἂν παντάπασι διαβαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς διαπορεύοιμεν.
- 19 εἰ δ' ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττώμεθα, ἀλλὰ τό γέ τοι πῦρ κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ ἐστίν· ὃν ἡμεῖς δυναίμεθ' αἰ κατακαύσαντες λιμὸν ὑμῖν ἀντιτάξαι, ὃ ὑμεῖς οὐδ',
- 20 εἰ πάννυ ἀγαθοὶ εἴητε, μάχεσθαι ἂν δύνασθε. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἔχοντες τοσούτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ ὑμῖν πολεμεῖν, καὶ τούτων μηδένα ἡμῖν ἐπικίνδυνον, ἔπειτα ἐκ τούτων πάντων τούτον ἂν τὸν τρόπον ἐξελοίμεθα ὃς μόνος μὲν πρὸς θεῶν ἀσεβείας, μόνος δὲ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων
- 21 αἰσχρός; παντάπασι δὲ ἀπόρων ἐστὶ καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἀνάγκῃ ἐχομένων, καὶ τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι δι' ἐπιτορκίας τε πρὸς θεοὺς καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους πράττειν τι. οὐχ οὕτως ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε,

οὔτε ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἡλίθιοι ἔσμεν. ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ὑμᾶς 22  
 ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἠλάσμεν; εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι ὁ  
 ἐμὸς ἔρως τούτου αἷτιος τοῦ τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἐμὲ πιστὸν  
 γενέσθαι, καὶ ὃ Κῦρος ἀνέβη ξενικῶ διὰ μισθοδοσίας  
 πιστεύων, τούτῳ ἐμὲ καταβῆναι δι' εὐεργεσίας ἰσχυ-  
 ρόν. ὅσα δέ μοι ὑμεῖς χρήσιμοι ἔσεσθε τὰ μὲν καὶ 23  
 σὺ εἴπας, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἐπὶ  
 τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν βασιλεῖ μόνῳ ἔξεστιν ὀρθὴν ἔχειν,  
 τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ ἴσως ἂν ὑμῶν παρόντων καὶ  
 ἕτερος εὐπετῶς ἔχοι.

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· 24  
 καὶ εἶπεν, Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οὔτινες τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φι-  
 λίαν ὑπαρχόντων πειρῶνται διαβάλλοντες ποιῆσαι  
 πολεμίους ἡμᾶς ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν; Καὶ 25  
 ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ βούλεσθέ μοι οἷ τε  
 στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐλθεῖν, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ λέξω  
 τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὥς σὺ ἐμοὶ ἐπιβουλεύεις καὶ  
 τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ. Ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἄξω 26  
 πάντας, καὶ σοὶ αὖ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω.  
 ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης φιλοφρονοῦν 27  
 μενος τότε μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσε καὶ σύνδει-  
 πνον ἐποίησατο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν  
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον δῆλός τ' ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς οἰώ-  
 μενος διακείσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ ἃ ἔλεγεν ἐκείνος  
 ἀπήγγελλεν, ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ Τισσαφέρνῃ  
 οὓς ἐκέλευσε, καὶ οἱ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων, ὥς προδότας αὐτοὺς καὶ κακόνους τοῖς Ἑλ-  
 λησιν ὄντας τιμωρηθῆναι. ὑπώπτευε δὲ εἶναι τὸν δια- 28  
 βάλλοντα Μένωνα, εἰδὼς αὐτὸν καὶ συγγεγεννημένον  
 Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ  
 ἐπιβουλεύοντα, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα ἅπαν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν  
 λαβὼν φίλος ἦ Τισσαφέρνει. ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ ὁ 29  
 Κλέαρχος ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν  
 γνώμην καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας ἐκποδὼν εἶναι. τῶν

- δὲ στρατιωτῶν ἀντέλεγόν τινες αὐτῷ μὴ ἰέναι πάντα τοὺς λοχαγούς καὶ στρατηγούς μηδὲ πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνηι. 30 φέρνει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς ἰέναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς· συνηκολούθησαν δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι.
- 31 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνηους, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω, Πρόξενος Βοιωτίας, Μένων Θετταλός, Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σωκράτης Ἀχαιός· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἐπὶ θύραις 32 ἔμενον. οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἷ τ' ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἵππέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐλαύνοντες ᾗτινι ἐντυγχάνοιεν Ἕλληνι ἢ δούλῳ 33 ἢ ἐλευθέρῳ πάντας ἔκτεινον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τὴν τε ἵππασίαν αὐτῶν ἐθαύμαζον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὀρώντες καὶ ὃ, τι ἐποιοῦν ἡμφεγνόουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὰ ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενη- 34 μένα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἦξειν 35 αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάοχος καὶ Μιθριδάτης, οἳ ἦσαν Κύρῳ πιστότατοι· ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐρμηνεύς ἔφη καὶ τὸν Τισσαφέρνηον ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν καὶ γινώσκειν· ξυνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν 36 τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς τριακοσίους. οὗτοι ἐπεὶ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, προσελθεῖν ἐκέλευον εἴ τις εἴη τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἢ στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγός, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλῃσι τὰ παρὰ βασι- 37 λέως. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξῆλθον φυλαττόμενοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ Σοφάνετος Στυμφάλιος, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου· Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν ἐν κώμῃ τινὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζόμενος.

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἕστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος τάδε. 38  
 Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ ἐπιorkῶν τε  
 ἐφάνη καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέ-  
 θνηκε, Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ  
 τὴν ἐπιβουλήν, ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ [ὁ]  
 βασιλεὺς τὰ ὄπλα ἀπαιτεῖ· αὐτοῦ γὰρ εἶναί φησιν,  
 ἐπεὶ Κύρου ἦσαν τοῦ ἐκείνου δούλου. πρὸς ταῦτα 39  
 ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχο-  
 μένιος· Ὡς κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι,  
 ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι, οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ'  
 ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὁμόσαντες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους  
 καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομιεῖν, προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει  
 τῷ ἀθεωτάτῳ τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ τοὺς τε ἄνδρας  
 αὐτοὺς οἷς ὤμνυτε ὡς ἀπολωλέκατε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
 ἡμᾶς προδεδωκότες ξὺν τοῖς πολεμοῖς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχε-  
 σθε. ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε, Κλέαρχος γὰρ πρόσθεν ἐπι- 40  
 βουλεύων φανερὸς ἐγένετο Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα,  
 καὶ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν τούτοις. ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενο- 41  
 φῶν τάδε εἶπε. Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν εἰ παρὰ τοὺς  
 ὄρκους ἔλυσεν τὰς σπονδὰς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει· δίκαιον γὰρ  
 ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς ἐπιorkοῦντας· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μέ-  
 νων ἐπεὶ εἰσὶν ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι  
 δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι  
 φίλοι γε ὄντες ἀμφοτέροις πειράσσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ  
 ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα συμβουλεύειν. πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βαρ- 42  
 βαροι πολὺν χρόνον διαλεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις ἀπήλθον  
 οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενοι.

Οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνήχθησαν 6  
 ὡς βασιλέα καὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐτελεύ-  
 τησαν, εἰς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ  
 πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρων αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων δόξας γενέσθαι  
 ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ φιλοπόλεμος ἐσχάτως. καὶ 2  
 γὰρ δὴ ἕως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς  
 τοὺς Ἀθηναίους παρέμενεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο,

- πείσας τὴν αὐτοῦ πόλιν ὡς οἱ Θρᾷκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς  
 Ἕλληνας καὶ διαπραξάμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν  
 ἐφόρων ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμήσων τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χερρονήσου  
 3 καὶ Περίνθου Θραξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ μεταγρόντες πῶς οἱ  
 ἐφοροὶ ἤδη ἔξω ὄντος αὐτοῦ ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν ἐπει-  
 ρῶντο ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείθεται, ἀλλ' ὥχετο  
 4 πλέων εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἐθανατώθη  
 ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ τελῶν ὡς ἀπειθῶν. ἤδη δὲ  
 φυγὰς ὧν ἔρχεται πρὸς Κύρον, καὶ ὁποίοις μὲν λόγοις  
 ἔπεισε Κύρον ἄλλη γέγραπται, δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ Κύρος  
 5 μυρίους δαρεικούς· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥαθυμίᾳ ἐτρά-  
 πετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξας στρα-  
 τευμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ μάχῃ τε ἐνίκησε καὶ  
 ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ ἔφερε καὶ ἤγε τούτους καὶ πολεμῶν  
 διεγένετο μέχρι Κύρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος· τότε  
 6 δὲ ἀπῆλθεν ὡς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ αὐτὸν πολεμήσων. ταῦτα οὖν  
 φιλοπολέμου μοι δοκεῖ ἀνδρὸς ἔργα εἶναι, ὅστις ἐξὸν  
 μὲν εἰρήνην ἔχειν ἄνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης αἰρεῖται  
 πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ ῥαθυμεῖν βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε  
 πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ χρήματα ἔχειν ἀκινδύνως αἰρεῖται  
 πολεμῶν μείονα ταῦτα ποιεῖν· ἐκείνος δὲ ὥσπερ εἰς  
 παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ ἡδονὴν ἠθέλε δαπανᾶν εἰς  
 7 πόλεμον. οὕτω μὲν φιλοπόλεμος ἦν· πολεμικὸς δὲ  
 αὐτὴν αὐτῇ ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὅτι φιλοκίνδυνός τε ἦν καὶ  
 ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐν  
 τοῖς δεινοῖς φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες πανταχοῦ πάντες  
 8 ὡμολόγουν. καὶ ἀρχικὸς δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὡς δυνατόν  
 ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου, οἷον κακεῖνος εἶχεν. ἱκανὸς  
 μὲν γὰρ ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος φροντίζειν ἦν, ὅπως ἔχοι ἢ  
 στρατιὰ αὐτῷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα,  
 ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν, ὡς πειστέον  
 9 εἶη Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι·  
 καὶ γὰρ ὅραν στυγνὸς ἦν καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχύς, ἐκό-  
 λαζέ τε αἰεὶ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ὀργῇ ἐνίοτε, ὡς καὶ αὐτῷ



μεταμέλειν ἔσθ' ὅτε. καὶ γνώμη δ' ἐκόλαζεν· ἀκολά-  
 στου γὰρ στρατεύματος οὐδὲν ἡγεῖτο ὄφελος εἶναι,  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν, ὡς δέοι τὸν στρατιώ- 10  
 την φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους,  
 εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλακὰς φυλάξειν ἢ φίλων ἀφέξεσθαι ἢ  
 ἀπροφασίστως ἰέναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ἐν μὲν 11  
 οὖν τοῖς δεινοῖς ἤθελον αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν σφόδρα καὶ οὐκ  
 ἄλλον ἡροῦντο οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὸ στυγνὸν  
 τότε φαιδρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς προσώποις ἔφασαν φαίνε-  
 σθαι καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐρρωμένον πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
 ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὥστε σωτήριον καὶ οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν ἐφαί-  
 νετο· ὅτε δ' ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιντο καὶ ἐξείη πρὸς 12  
 ἄλλους ἀρχομένους ἀπιέναι, πολλοὶ αὐτὸν ἀπέλειπον·  
 τὸ γὰρ ἐπίχαρι οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ χαλεπὸς ἦν καὶ  
 ὠμός· ὥστε διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ στρατιῶται ὥσπερ  
 παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. καὶ γὰρ οὖν φιλία μὲν καὶ 13  
 εὐνοία ἐπομένους οὐδέποτε εἶχεν· οὔτινες δὲ ἢ ὑπὸ  
 πόλεως τεταγμένοι ἢ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ  
 ἀνάγκῃ κατεχόμενοι παρεῖησαν αὐτῷ, σφόδρα πειθο-  
 μένοις ἐχρήτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο νικᾶν ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς 14  
 πολεμίους, ἤδη μεγάλα ἦν τὰ χρησίμους ποιοῦντα εἰ-  
 τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας· τό τε γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς  
 πολεμίους θαρραλέως ἔχειν παρῆν καὶ τὸ τὴν παρ'  
 ἐκείνου τιμωρίαν φοβεῖσθαι αὐτοὺς εὐτάκτους ἐποίει.  
 τοιοῦτος μὲν δὴ ἄρχων ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων οὐ 15  
 μάλα ἐθέλειν ἐλέγετο. ἦν δὲ ὅτε ἐτελεύτα ἀμφὶ τὰ  
 πεντήκοντα ἔτη.

Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιωτίας εὐθύς μὲν μεῖράκιον ὢν 16  
 ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ἱκανός·  
 καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε Γοργίᾳ ἀργύριον  
 τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ, ἱκανὸς νομί- 17  
 σας ἤδη εἶναι καὶ ἄρχειν καὶ φίλος ὢν τοῖς πρώτοις  
 μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς σὺν  
 Κύρῳ πράξεις· καὶ ᾤετο κτήσεσθαι ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα

- μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ χρήματα πολλά·  
 18 τοσούτων δ' ἐπιθυμῶν σφόδρα ἔνδηλον αὐτῷ καὶ τοῦτε  
 εἶχεν, ὅτι τούτων οὐδὲν ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι μετὰ ἀδι-  
 κίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ ᾧετο δεῖν τρύτων  
 19 τυγχάνειν, ἄνευ δὲ τούτων μή. ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν μὲν  
 καὶ ἀγαθῶν δυνατὸς ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐτ' αἰδῶ τοῖς  
 στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτε φόβον ἱκανὸς ἐμποῖῃσαι,  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡσχύνετο μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιώτας ἢ οἱ  
 ἀρχόμενοι ἐκείνων, καὶ φοβούμενος μᾶλλον ἦν φανερὸς  
 τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἢ οἱ στρατιώται  
 20 τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ. ᾧετο δὲ ἀρκεῖν πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν  
 εἶναι καὶ δοκεῖν τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν  
 δὲ ἀδικοῦντα μὴ ἐπαινεῖν. τοιγαροῦν αὐτῷ οἱ μὲν  
 καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν συνόντων εὖνοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ ἄδι-  
 κοι ἐπεβούλευον ὡς εὐμεταχειρίστῳ ὄντι. ὅτε δὲ ἀπέ-  
 θησκεν ἦν ἐτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα.  
 21 Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθυμῶν μὲν  
 πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ ἄρχειν, ὅπως πλείω  
 λαμβάνοι, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ τιμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείω κερδαίνοι·  
 φίλος τε ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα  
 22 ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίῃ δίκην. ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κατεργάζεσθαι ὧι  
 ἐπιθυμοίῃ συντομωτάτην ᾧετο ὁδὸν εἶναι διὰ τοῦ ἐπι-  
 ορκεῖν τε καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν, τὸ δ' ἀπλοῦι  
 23 καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς ἐνόμιζε τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιθίῳ εἶναι. στέρ-  
 γων δὲ φανερὸς μὲν ἦν οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίῃ φίλος  
 εἶναι, τούτῳ ἔνδηλος ἐγίγνετο ἐπιβουλεύων. καὶ πο-  
 λεμίῳ μὲν οὐδενὸς κατεγέλα, τῶν δὲ συνόντων πάντῳ  
 24 ὡς καταγελῶν αἰετὶ διελέγετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν τῶν πολε-  
 μίων κτήμασιν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ᾧετο  
 εἶναι τὰ τῶν φυλαττομένων λαμβάνειν· τὰ δὲ τῶν φί-  
 λων μόνος ᾧετο εἰδέναι ῥᾶστον ὃν ἀφύλακτα λαμβά-  
 25 νειν. καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους  
 ὡς εὖ ὥπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο, τοῖς δ' ὁσίοις καὶ ἀλή-  
 θειαν ἀσκοῦσιν ὡς ἀνάνδροις ἐπειράτο χρῆσθαι.

ὅσπερ δέ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ θεοσεβείᾳ καὶ ἀληθείᾳ 26  
καὶ δικαιοσύνῃ, οὕτω Μένων ἡγάλλετο τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν  
δύνασθαι, τῷ πλάσασθαι ψευδῆ, τῷ φίλους διαγελᾶν·  
τὸν δὲ μὴ πανοῦργον τῶν ἀπαιδευτῶν αἰεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶ-  
ναι. καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ,  
διαβάλλων τοὺς πρώτους τούτους ᾤετο δεῖν κτήσα-  
σθαι. τὸ δὲ πειθομένους τοὺς στρατιώτας παρέχεσθαι 27  
ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐμνησαντο. τιμᾶσθαι δὲ  
καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι ἡξίου ἐπιδεικνύμενος, ὅτι πλεῖστα  
δύναίτο καὶ ἐθέλοι ἂν ἀδικεῖν. εὐεργεσίαν δὲ κατέ-  
λεγεν, ὅποτε τις αὐτοῦ ἀφίστατο, ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ  
οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν. καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ἀφανῆ ἔξεστι 28  
περὶ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, ἃ δὲ πάντες ἴσασι τὰδ' ἐστί.  
παρὰ Ἀριστίππῳ μὲν ἔτι ὥραϊος ὢν στρατηγεῖν διε-  
πράξατο τῶν ξένων, Ἀριαίῳ δὲ βαρβάρῳ ὄντι, ὅτι  
μειρακίοις καλοῖς ἦδετο, οἰκειότατος ἔτι ὥραϊος ὢν  
ἐγένετο, αὐτὸς δὲ παιδικὰ εἶχε θαρύπαν ἀγένειος ὢν  
γενειῶντα. ἀποθνησκόντων δὲ τῶν συστρατηγῶν, ὅτι 29  
ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν Κύρῳ, ταῦτα πεποιη-  
κὼς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον  
στρατηγῶν τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ  
ὥσπερ ~~ἡ~~ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἀποτμηθέν-  
τες τὰς κεφαλὰς, ὅσπερ ~~ἡ~~ ἄριστος θάνατος δοκεῖ εἶναι,  
ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς ἐνιαυτὸν ὥς πονηρὸς λέγεται τῆς  
τελευτῆς τυχεῖν.

Ἀγίας δὲ ὁ Ἀρκὰς καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ 30  
τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην. τούτων δὲ οὐθ' ὥς ἐν πολέμῳ  
κακῶν οὐδεὶς κατεγέλα οὐτ' εἰς φιλίαν αὐτοὺς ἐμέμ-  
φετο. ἦσθην δὲ ἄμφω ἄμφι τὰ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα  
ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.

## BOOK III.

- 1 "Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα, ἔπειτα Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν, ἐγένετο ἀπιόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν
- 2 λόγῳ δεδήλωται. ἔπειτα δὲ οἳ τε στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι ἀπολώλεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὲ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοοῦμενοι μὲν, ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλῳ δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμια ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξω ἔμελλεν, ἀπεῖχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διεῖργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προὔδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἵππεά οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὐδηλον ἦν, ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν
- 3 οὐδεὶς ἂν λείψει. ταῦτα ἐννοοῦμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν σίτου ἐγευσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἤλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανεν ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεῦδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παιδῶν, οὓς οὐποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακειμένοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.
- 4 Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὦν συνηκολούθει, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο ὅκοθεν ξένος ὦν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φέρειν αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσειν, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρεῖττα

ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν ἀνα- 5  
 γνούς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινούται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθη-  
 ναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτεύσας  
 μή τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως ἐπαίτιον εἴη Κύρῳ φίλον γενέ-  
 σθαι, ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ Κύρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις  
 ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας συμπολεμῆσαι, συμβουλευεῖ τῷ Ξενο-  
 φῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ Θεῷ περὶ  
 τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρητο τὸν Ἀπόλ- 6  
 λω, τίνι ἂν Θεῶν Δύων καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστ' ἂν καὶ  
 ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδόν, ἣν ἐπινοεῖ, καὶ καλῶς πράξας  
 σωθείη. καὶ ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοὺς οἷς ἔδει  
 Δύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε, λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ 7  
 Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἡτιάτο αὐτόν, ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο  
 πρῶτον ἠρώτα, πότερον λῶον εἴη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ  
 μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο,  
 ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθεῖη. ἔπει μέντοι οὕτως ἦρου,  
 ταῦτ', ἔφη, χρὴ ποιεῖν, ὅσα ὁ Θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν· ὁ μὲν 8  
 δὲ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω, θυσάμενος οἷς ἀνεῖλεν ὁ Θεός, ἐξέ-  
 πλει καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Προξένον καὶ Κύ-  
 ρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν, καὶ συνεστάθη  
 Κύρῳ. Προθυμουμένου δὲ τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κύρος 9  
 συμπροϋθυμεῖτο μέναι αὐτόν· εἶπε δὲ ὅτι, ἐπειδὴν  
 τάχιστα ἢ στρατεία λήξῃ, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψειν αὐτόν.  
 ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας. ἐστρατεύετο 10  
 μὲν δὲ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεὶς, οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ  
 ᾔδει τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ὁρμὴν οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν  
 ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἦδη ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἴη  
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκουτες  
 ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου  
 συνηκολούθησαν· ὧν εἰς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ 11  
 ἀπορία ἦν, ἐλνπεῖτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ οὐκ ἐδύ-  
 νατο καθεύδειν· μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ.  
 ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς

- τὴν πατρίαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου λάμπεσθαι πᾶσαν.  
 12 περίφοβος δ' εὐθύς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ τὸ ὄναρ πῇ μὲν  
 ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν πόνοις ὦν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς  
 μέγα ἐκ Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· πῇ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ  
 Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, κύκλω  
 δὲ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι τὸ πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐκ τῆς  
 χώρας ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλείως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν  
 13 ὑπὸ τινων ἀποριῶν. ὁποῖόν τι μέντοι ἐστὶ τὸ τοιοῦ-  
 τον ὄναρ ἰδεῖν ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων μετὰ  
 τὸ ὄναρ. γίνεταί γὰρ τάδε. εὐθύς ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη  
 πρῶτον μὲν ἔννοια αὐτῷ ἐμπίπτει, τί κατὰκειμαι ; ἡ  
 δὲ νύξ προβαίνει· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς τοὺς πολε-  
 μίους ἦξειν. εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμπο-  
 δὼν μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα μὲν τὰ χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδόοντας,  
 πάντα δὲ τὰ δεινότατα παθόντας ὑβριζομένους ἀπο-  
 14 θανεῖν ; ὅπως δ' ἀμυνούμεθα οὐδεὶς παρασκευάζεται  
 οὐδὲ ἐπιμελεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν ἡσυ-  
 χίαν ἄγειν. ἐγὼ οὖν τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως στρατηγὸν  
 προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξειν ; ποίαν δ' ἡλικίαν ἐμαυτῷ  
 ἐλθεῖν ἀναμένω ; οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύτερος ἔσο-  
 15 μαι, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐκ  
 τούτου ἀνίσταται καὶ συγκαλεῖ τοὺς Προξένου πρῶτον  
 λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, ἔλεξεν, Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες  
 λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν δύναμαι, ὥσπερ, οἶμαι, οὐδ'  
 16 ὑμεῖς, οὔτε κατακείσθαι ἔτι, ὀρώων, ἐν οἷσις ἐσμέν. οἱ  
 μὲν γὰρ πολέμιοι δῆλον ὅτι οὐ πρότερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς  
 τὸν πόλεμον ἐξέφηναν πρὶν ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ ἐαν-  
 τῶν παρεσκευασθαι, ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμε-  
 17 λείται, ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. καὶ μὴν εἰ  
 ὑψησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα  
 πείσεσθαι ; ὅς καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου καὶ τοῦ ὁμοπατρίου  
 ἀδελφοῦ καὶ τεθνηκότος ἤδη ἀποτεμῶν τὴν κεφαλὴν  
 καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν· ἡμᾶς δέ, οἷς κηδεμῶν  
 μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστιν, ἐστρατεύσαμεν δὲ ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς

δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως ποιήσοντας καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν; ἄρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ 18 πᾶν ἔλθοι, ὡς ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκισάμενος πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι τοῦ στρατεῦσαί ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν; ἀλλ' ὅπως τοι μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα ποιητέον. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν, ἔστε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν, 19 οὐποτε ἐπανόμην ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτείρων, βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ μακαρίζων, διαθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὄσσην μὲν χώραν καὶ οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη, χρυσὸν δέ, ἐσθήτα δέ· τὰ δ' αὖ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅποτε ἐνθυμολίμην, ὅτι 20 τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν πάντων οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετείη, εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα, ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἥδειν ἔτι ὀλίγους ἔχοντας, ἄλλως δὲ πῶς πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ ὠνούμενους ὄρκους ἥδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος ἐνίστε τὰς σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμην ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκείνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπον- 21 δάς, λελῦσθαι μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων ὕβρις καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα ὑποψία. ἐν μέσῳ γὰρ ἥδη κείται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἄθλα ὁπότεροι ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες ἀμείνονες ὦσιν, ἀγωνοθέται δ' οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν, οἳ σὺν ἡμῖν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἔσονται. οὗτοι μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν· ἡμεῖς 22 δὲ πολλὰ ὀρώντες ἀγαθὰ στεργῶς αὐτῶν ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους. ὥστε ἐξεῖναι μοι δοκεῖ ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα πολὺ σὺν φρόνηματι μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα ἰκανώτερα τούτων 23 καὶ ψύχῃ καὶ θάλπη καὶ πόνους φέρειν· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψυχὰς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας· οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες καὶ τρωτοὶ καὶ θνητοὶ μᾶλλον ἡμῶν, ἣν οἱ θεοί, ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν, νίκην ἡμῖν διδώσιν. ἀλλ' ἴσως γὰρ καὶ 24 ἄλλοι ταῦτ' ἐνθυμοῦνται, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμησαὶ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετήν. φάνητε τῶν λοχα-

γῶν ἄριστοι καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι·  
25 κἀγὼ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἔπ-  
σθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι, εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετέ με ἡγεῖσθαι,  
οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀκμάζειν  
ἡγοῦμαι ἐρύκειν ἀπ' ἐμαντοῦ τὰ κακά.

26 Ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἀκούσαντες  
ταῦτα ἡγεῖσθαι· ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης  
τις ἦν βοιωτιάων τῇ φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν, ὅτι φλυα-  
ροίη ὅστις λέγοι ἄλλως πῶς σωτηρίας ἂν τυχεῖν ἢ  
βασιλέα πείσας, εἰ δύναιτο, καὶ ἅμα ἤρχετο λέγειν

27 τὰς ἀπορίας. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν μεταξὺ ὑπολαβὼν  
ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ὡς θανμασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σύ γε οὐδὲ  
ὁρῶν γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. ἐν ταύτῳ γε  
μέντοι ἦσθα τούτοις, ὅτε βασιλεὺς, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἀπέ-  
θανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε παρα-

28 διδόναι τὰ ὅπλα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ'  
ἐξωπλισμένοι ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ  
ἐποίησε πρέσβεις πέμπων καὶ σπονδὰς αἰτῶν καὶ  
29 παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; ἐπεὶ  
δ' αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὥσπερ δὴ σὺ κελεύεις,

εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὅπλων ἦλθον πιστεύσαντες ταῖς  
σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παϊόμενοι, κεντούμενοι, ὑβρι-  
ζόμενοι οὐδὲ ἀποθανεῖν οἱ τλήμονες δύνανται, καὶ μάλ',  
οἶμαι, ἐρώντες τούτου; ἂν σὺ πάντα κειδῶς τοὺς μὲν  
ἀμύνεσθαι κελεύοντας φλυαρεῖν φῆς, πείθειν δὲ πάλιν

30 κελεύεις ἰόντας; (ἔμοι δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν ἄνθρω-  
πον τούτον μήτε προσέσθαι εἰς ταῦτ' ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς  
ἀφελομένους τε τὴν λοχαγίαν σκευὴ ἀναθέντας ὡς  
τοιούτῳ χρῆσθαι.) οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα κατα-  
σχύνει καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλληνας ὦν τοι-

31 οὗτός ἐστιν. ἐντεῦθεν ὑπολαβὼν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος  
εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει  
οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς Ἑλλάδος παντάπασιν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν  
εἶδον ὥσπερ Λυδὸν ἀμφότερα τὰ ὦτα τετρυπημένον.



καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως. τοῦτον μὲν οὖν ἀπήλασαν· οἱ δὲ 32  
 ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες, ὅπου μὲν στρατηγὸς  
 σῶος εἴη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν, ὁπόθεν δὲ οἰ-  
 χοίτο, τὸν ὑποστρατηγόν, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχαγὸς σῶος  
 εἴη, τὸν λοχαγόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συνήλθον, εἰς τὸ 33  
 πρόσθεν τῶν ὅπλων ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ συν-  
 ελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν.  
 ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, σχεδὸν μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες. ἐνταῦθα 34  
 Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν Προξένου  
 λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ὧδε. Ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρα-  
 τηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὁρῶσι τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε καὶ αὐτοῖς  
 συνελθεῖν καὶ ὑμᾶς παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευσάμεθα  
 εἴ τι δυναίμεθα ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ', ἔφη, καὶ σύ, ὦ  
 Ξενοφῶν, ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς. ἐκ τούτου λέγει τάδε  
 Ξενοφῶν. Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα, 35  
 ὅτι βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν  
 συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβου-  
 λεύουσιν, ὥς, ἢν δύνωνται, ἀπολέσωσιν. ἡμῖν δέ γε,  
 οἶμαι, πάντα ποιητέα ὥς μήποτ' ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις  
 γενώμεθα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον, ἢν δυνώμεθα, ἐκείνοι ἐφ'  
 ἡμῖν. εὖ τοίνυν ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες, 36  
 ὅσοι νῦν συνεληλύθατε, μέγιστον ἔχετε καιρὸν. οἱ γὰρ  
 στρατιῶται οὗτοι πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι, κἂν  
 μὲν ὑμᾶς ὁρῶσιν ἀθύμους, πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται, ἢν  
 δὲ ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ τε παρασκευαζόμενοι φανεροὶ ᾗτε ἐπὶ  
 τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλῆτε, εὖ ἴστε  
 ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ πειράσονται μιμεῖσθαι. ἴσως 37  
 δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων.  
 ὑμεῖς γάρ ἐστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι καὶ λοχα-  
 γοί, καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς  
 τούτων ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε· καὶ νῦν τοίνυν, ἐπεὶ πόλεμός  
 ἐστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλή-  
 θους εἶναι καὶ προβουλεύειν τούτων καὶ προπονεῖν,  
 ἢν που δέη. καὶ νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶομαι ἂν ὑμᾶς 38

- μέγα ὀνῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε ὅπως ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀντικατασταθῶσιν. ἄνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο, ὡς μὲν συνελόντι εἰπεῖν, οὐδαμοῦ, ἐν δὲ δὴ τοῖς πολεμικοῖς παντάπασιν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ εὐταξία σώζειν δοκεῖ, ἡ δὲ ἀταξία
- 39 πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀπολώλεκεν. ἐπειδὴν δὲ καταστήσῃσθε τοὺς ἀρχοντας ὅσους δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας συλλέγητε καὶ παραθαρρύνητε, οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς
- 40 πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ ποιῆσαι. νῦν μὲν γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε, ὡς ἀθύμως μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα, ἀθύμως δὲ πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς· ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ οἶδα ὅ, τι ἂν τις χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς εἴτε νυκτὸς δέοι τι
- 41 εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. ἦν δὲ τις αὐτῶν τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ
- 42 τί ποιήσουσι, πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι ἔσονται. ἐπίστασθε γὰρ δὴ, ὅτι οὔτε πληθὺς ἐστὶν οὔτε ἰσχυρὸς ἡ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ τὰς νίκας ποιοῦσα, ἀλλ' ὁπότεροι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἐρρωμενέστεροι ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἐναντίοι οὐ δέχον
- 43 ται. ἐντεθύμημαι δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι, ὅποσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὗτοι μὲν κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχροῶς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσιν, ὅποσοι δὲ τὸν μὲν θάνατον ἐγνώκασιν πᾶσι κοινὸν εἶναι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις, περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν ἀγωνίζονται, τούτους ὁρῶ μᾶλλον πῶς εἰς τὸ γῆρας ἀφικνουμένους καὶ ἕως
- 44 ἂν ζῶσιν εὐδαιμονέστερον διάγοντας. ἃ καὶ ἡμᾶς δεῖ νῦν καταμαθόντας, ἐν τοιούτῳ γὰρ καιρῷ ἐσμεν, αὐτούς τε ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρα
- 45 καλεῖν. ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον εἶπε Χειρίσοφος, Ἄλλα πρόσθεν μὲν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον σε ἐγίγνωσκον, ὅσον ἤκουον Ἀθηναίων εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις τε καὶ

πράττεις, καὶ βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους εἶναι τοιού-  
 τους· κοινὸν γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ ἀγαθόν. καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ 46  
 μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἰρέισθε οἱ  
 δεόμενοι ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἦκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ  
 στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς αἰρεθέντας ἄγετε· ἔπειτ' ἐκεῖ  
 συγκαλοῦμεν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας. παρέστω δ'  
 ἡμῖν, ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ κῆρυξ. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰ- 47  
 πὼν ἀνέστη, ὡς μὴ μέλλοιτο, ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο τὰ  
 δέοντα. ἐκ τούτου ἡρέθησαν ἄρχοντες ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρ-  
 χου Τιμασίῳ Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ Σωκράτους Ξανθι-  
 κλῆς Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ἀρκάς, ἀντὶ  
 δὲ Μένωνος Φιλῆσιος Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου Ξε-  
 νοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, ἡμέρα τε σχεδὸν ὑπέφαινε καὶ εἰς 2  
 τὸ μέσον ἦκου οἱ ἄρχοντες. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προ-  
 φύλακας καταστήσαντας συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνήλθον, ἀνέστη  
 πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν  
 ὧδε. ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα, 2  
 ὁπότε ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα καὶ  
 λοχαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ  
 Ἀριαῖον, οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες, προδεδώκασιν  
 ἡμᾶς· ὅμως δὲ δεῖ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἀνδρας ἀγαθοὺς 3  
 τε ἐλθεῖν καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι, ὅπως,  
 ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα, καλῶς νικῶντες σωζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μή,  
 ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν, ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε  
 γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἶομαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς  
 τοιαῦτα παθεῖν, οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν.  
 ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. 4  
 Ἀλλ' ὁρᾶτε μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες τὴν βασιλέως ἐπιτοκίαν  
 καὶ ἀσέβειαν, ὁρᾶτε δὲ τὴν Τισσαφέρνους ἀπιστίαν,  
 ὅστις λέγων ὡς γελῶν τε εἶη τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ  
 πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις  
 αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δούς, αὐτὸς ἐξαπα-

- τήσας συνέλαβε τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία ξένιοι  
 ἠδέσθη, ἀλλὰ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος γενόμενος  
 αὐτοῖς τούτοις ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν.
- 5 Ἀριαῖος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι,  
 καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν ἄλ-  
 λήλους, καὶ οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς δείσας οὔτε Κύρου  
 τὸν τεθνηκότα αἰδεσθεῖς, τιμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύ-  
 ρου ζῶντος, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου ἐχθίστους ἀποστὰς
- 6 ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειράται. ἀλλὰ  
 τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσαιντο· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα  
 ὀρῶντας μήποτε ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ  
 μαχομένους ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο, ὅ, τι ἂν  
 δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς, πάσχειν.
- 7 Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ πό-  
 λεμον ὥς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, νομίζων, εἴτε νίκην διδοῖεν  
 οἱ θεοί, τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον τῷ νικᾷν πρέπειν, εἴτε  
 τελευτᾶν δέοι, ὀρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἀξιῶ-  
 σαντα ἐν τούτοις τῆς τελευτῆς τυγχάνειν· τοῦ λόγου
- 8 δὲ ἤρχετο ὧδε. Τὴν μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιτορκίαν τε  
 καὶ ἀπιστίαν λέγει μὲν Κλεάνωρ, ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ  
 ὑμεῖς, οἶμαι. εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλευόμεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ  
 φιλίας ἰέναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν, ὀρῶν-  
 τας καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἱ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς
- 1 ἐνεχείρισαν, οἷα πεπόνθασιν· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα  
 σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὧν τε πεποιήκασι δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι  
 αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἰέναι,  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλὰ ἡμῖν καὶ καλὰ ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ
- 9 σωτηρίας. τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πτάρνυται τις·  
 ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες μιᾷ ὁρμῇ προσε-  
 κύνησαν τὸν θεόν, καὶ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε, Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ  
 ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας ἡμῶν λεγόντων, οἰωνὸς τοῦ  
 Διὸς τοῦ σωτήρος ἐφάνη, εὐξασθαι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ  
 θύσειν σωτήρια ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν χώραν  
 ἀφικώμεθα, συνεπεύξασθαι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς

δύσειν κατὰ δύνᾱμιν. καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταύτ', ἔφη, ἀνα-  
 τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἐκ τούτου  
 εὖξαντο καὶ ἐπαιώνισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς  
 εἶχεν, ἤρχετο πάλιν ὧδε. Ἐτύγχανον λέγων, ὅτι πολ- 10  
 λαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν εἴεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον  
 μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους,  
 οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐπιωρκήκασί τε καὶ τὰς σπονδάς καὶ  
 τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν. οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων εἰκὸς τοῖς  
 μὲν πολεμοῖς ἐναντίους εἶναι τοὺς θεοὺς, ἡμῖν δὲ συμ-  
 μάχους, οἵπερ ἱκανοὶ εἰσι καὶ τοὺς μεγάλους ταχὺ  
 μικροὺς ποιεῖν καὶ τοὺς μικροὺς, κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς ὦσι,  
 σώζειν εὐπετῶς, ὅταν βούλωνται. ἔπειτα δέ, ἀναμνή- 11  
 σω γὰρ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν προγόνων τῶν ἡμετέρων  
 κινδύνους, ἵνα εἰδῆτε, ὡς ἀγαθοῖς τε ὑμῖν προσήκει  
 εἶναι σώζονται τε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ἐκ πάνυ δεινῶν  
 οἱ ἀγαθοί· ἐλθόντων μὲν γὰρ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν  
 αὐτοῖς παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ ὡς ἀφανιούντων αὐθις τὰς  
 Ἀθήνας, ὑποστῆναι αὐτοῖς Ἀθηναῖοι τολμήσαντες  
 ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς, καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὁπό- 12  
 σους ἂν κατακάνοιεν τῶν πολεμίων τοσαύτας χιμαῖρας  
 καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανὰς εὐρεῖν, ἔδο-  
 ξεν αὐτοῖς κατ' ἐνιαυτον πεντακοσίας θύειν, καὶ ἔτι  
 καὶ νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. ἔπειτα ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον ἀγεί- 13  
 ρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιὰν ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα,  
 καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι τοὺς τούτων  
 προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. ὧν ἔστι  
 μὲν τεκμήρια ὁρᾶν τὰ τρόπαια, μέγιστον δὲ μαρτύριον  
 ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων, ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ  
 ἐτράφητε· οὐδὲνα γὰρ ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην, ἀλλὰ τοὺς  
 θεοὺς προσκυνεῖτε. τοιούτων μὲν ἔστε προγόνων. οὐ 14  
 μὲν δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐρῶ, ὡς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς·  
 ἀλλ' οὐπω πολλὰ ἡμέραι ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξάμενοι τού-  
 τοις τοῖς ἐκείνων ἐκγόνοις πολλαπλασίους ὑμῶν αὐτῶν  
 ἐνικᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ περὶ τῆς 15

- Κύρου βασιλείας ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ', ὁπότε περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστί, πολὺν δῆπου ὑμᾶς προσήκει καὶ ἀμείνονας καὶ προθυμοτέρους εἶναι.
- 16 ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους νῦν πρέπει εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν τό τε πλήθος ἀμετρον ὀρώντες ὁμῶς ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ πατρίῳ φρονήματι ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὁπότε καὶ πείραν ἤδη ἔχετε αὐτῶν, ὅτι θέλουσι καὶ πολλὰ πλάσιοι ὄντες μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι ὑμῖν προσήκει
- 17 τούτους φοβεῖσθαι ; μὴδὲ μέντοι τοῦτο μείον δόξητε ἔχειν, εἰ οἱ Κύριοι πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν ταπτόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν. ἔτι γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἡττημένων· ἔφηνγον γοῦν πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς. τοὺς δὲ θέλοντας φυγῆς ἄρχειν πολλὸν κρεῖττον σὺν τοῖς πολεμοῖς ταπτομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμέ-
- 18 τέρᾳ τάξει ὄραν. εἰ δὲ τις αὐτῶν ἀθυμεῖ, ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἱππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμοῖς πολλοὶ πάρεσιν, ἐνθυμήθητε, ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι· ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς πώποτε οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὃ, τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαῖς
- 19 γίνηται. οὐκοῦν τῶν γε ἱππέων πολὺ ἡμεῖς ἐπ' ἀσφαλεστέρου ὁχήματός ἐσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππων κρέμονται, φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπὶ γῆς βεβηκότες πολὺ μὲν ἰσχυρότερον παῖσομεν, ἢν τις προσίῃ, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὅτου ἂν βουλώμεθα τευξόμεθα. ἐνὶ μόνῳ πρόεχουσιν οἱ ἱππεῖς ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν
- 20 ἢ ἡμῖν. εἰ δὲ δὴ τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι ἡμῖν Τισσαφέρνης ἡγήσεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν παρέξει, τοῦτο ἄχθεσθε, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον Τισσαφέρνην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν, ὃς ἐπιβουλευὼν ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστιν, ἢ οὓς ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας λαβόντες ἡγεῖσθαι κελεύωμεν, οἳ εἴσονται, ὅτι, ἢν τι περὶ ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτά-

ρωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἁμαρτάνουσι. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρείττον 21  
 ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἣς οὗτοι παρῆχον, μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἢ αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν, ἥνπερ κρατῶμεν, μέτρῳ χρωμένους, ὁπόσῳ ἂν ἕκαστος βούληται. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν γινώσκετε ὅτι κρείττονα, 22  
 τοὺς δὲ ποταμοὺς ἄπορον νομίζετε εἶναι καὶ μεγάλως ἡγεῖσθε ἔξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε, εἰ ἄρα τοῦτο καὶ μωρότατον πεποιήκασιν οἱ βάρβαροι. πάντες μὲν γὰρ οἱ ποταμοί, ἦν καὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν ἄποροι ὦσι, προϊοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίνονται οὐδὲ τὸ γόνυ βρέχοντες. εἰ δὲ μήθ' οἱ ποταμοὶ διήσουσιν, 23  
 ἡγεμών τε μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανεῖται, οὐδ' ὥς ἡμῖν γε ἄθυμητόν. ἐπιστάμεθα γὰρ Μυσοῦς, οὗς οὐκ ἂν ἡμῶν φαίημεν βελτίους εἶναι, οἱ βασιλέως ἄκοντος ἐν τῇ βασιλέως χώρα πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ μεγάλας πόλεις οἰκοῦσιν, ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὡσαύτως, Λυκάονας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις τὰ ἐρμυνὰ καταλαβόντες τὴν τούτων χώραν καρποῦνται. καὶ ἡμᾶς 24  
 δ' ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε χρῆναι μήπω φανεροὺς εἶναι οἴκαδε ὠρμημένους, ἀλλὰ κατασκευάζεσθαι ὡς αὐτοῦ που οἰκήσουσας. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι καὶ Μυσοῖς βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς μὲν ἡγεμόνας ἂν δοίη, πολλοὺς δ' ἂν ὁμήρους τοῦ ἀδόλως ἐκπέμψειν, καὶ ὁδοποιήσειέ γ' ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν τεθρίπποις βούλιντο ἀπιέναι. καὶ ἡμῖν γ' ἂν οἶδ' ὅτι τρεῖς ἄσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς μένειν παρασκευαζομένους. ἀλλὰ γὰρ δέδοικα, μή, 25  
 ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ἀργοὶ ζῆν καὶ ἐν ἀφθόνοις βιοτεύειν καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλας γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις ὁμιλεῖν, μή, ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι, ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι εἰκὸς καὶ 26  
 δίκαιον εἶναι πρῶτον εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι καὶ ἐπιδείξαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς τοὺς νῦν

οἵκοι ἀκλήρους πολιτεύοντας ἐνθάδε κομισαμένους πλου-  
 σίους ὁρᾶν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, πάντα ταῦτα τὰγαθὰ  
 27 δῆλον ὅτι τῶν κρατούντων ἐστί. τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν,  
 πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε ὥς ἀσφαλέστατα καί, εἰ μάχε-  
 σθαι δέοι, ὥς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα. πρῶτον μὲν τοί-  
 νυν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας, ἃς ἔχομεν,  
 ἵνα μὴ τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῇ, ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα  
 ὅπη ἂν τῇ στρατιᾷ συμφέρῃ· ἔπειτα καὶ τὰς σκηναὺς  
 συγκατακαῦσαι. αὗται γὰρ αὖ ὄχλον μὲν παρέχουσιν  
 ἄγειν, συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ'  
 28 εἰς τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων  
 σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν, πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου  
 ἕνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν, ἵνα ὥς πλείστοι μὲν  
 ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὦσιν, ὥς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφο-  
 ρῶσι. κρατουμένων μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι πάντα  
 ἀλλότρια· ἦν δὲ κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ  
 29 σκευοφόρους ἡμετέρους νομίζειν. λοιπὸν μοι εἰπεῖν  
 ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς  
 πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς  
 ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγούς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον,  
 νομίζοντες ὄντων μὲν τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ ἡμῶν πειθο-  
 μένων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς περηνγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ,  
 λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἀναρχία ἂν καὶ ἀταξία  
 30 ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσθαι. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς  
 ἄρχοντας ἐπιμελεστέρους γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρό-  
 σθεν, πολὺ δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πει-  
 31 θομένους μᾶλλον τοῖς ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν. ἦν δέ  
 τις ἀπειθῇ, ἦν ψηφίσθησθε τὸν αἰὶ ὑμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα  
 σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν, οὕτως οἱ πολέμιοι πλείστον  
 ἐψευσμένοι ἔσονται· τῇδε γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μυρίους ὄψον-  
 ται ἀνθ' ἑνὸς Κλεάρχους τοὺς οὐδ' ἐνὶ ἐπιτρέψοντας  
 32 κακῷ εἶναι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα· ἴσως  
 γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι αὐτίκα παρέσονται· ὅτῳ οὖν ταῦτα  
 δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικυρωσάτω ὥς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργῳ



περαίνηται. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτῃ, τολμέτω  
καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν· πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίας  
δεόμεθα.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν, 'Αλλ' εἰ μὲν τινος 33  
ἄλλου δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα  
ἐξέσται ποιεῖν· ἃ δὲ νῦν εἶρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα  
ψηφίσασθαι ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνα-  
τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἀναστὰς δὲ 34  
πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν, "Ὡ ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε ὧν προσδεῖν  
δοκεῖ μοι. δῆλον ὅτι πορεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὅπου ἔξο-  
μεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἀκούω δὲ κώμας εἶναι καλὰς οὐ  
πλεῖον εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας· οὐκ ἂν οὖν θαν- 35  
μάζοιμι, εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες τοὺς  
μὲν παριόντας διώκουσί τε καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἣν δύνωνται,  
τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν, εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν ἀπιού-  
σιν ἐπακολουθοῖεν. ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πο- 36  
ρεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους τῶν ἄλλων, ἵνα τὰ  
σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ ᾖ. εἰ  
οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθείῃ, τίνα χρή ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου  
καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν καὶ τίνας ἐπὶ τῶν πλευρῶν  
ἐκατέρων εἶναι, τίνας δ' ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν, οὐκ ἂν, ὁπότε  
οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν, βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δεοί, ἀλλὰ χρά-  
μεθ' ἂν εὐθὺς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλος τις 37  
βέλτιον ὁρᾷ, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν  
ἡγεῖσθω, ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιός ἐστι· τῶν δὲ πλευ-  
ρῶν ἐκατέρων δύο τῶν πρεσβυτάτων στρατηγῶ ἐπιμε-  
λείσθω· ὀπισθοφυλακῶμεν δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτατοι, ἐγώ  
τε καὶ Τιμασίων, τὸ νῦν εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι 38  
ταύτης τῆς τάξεως, βουλευσόμεθα ὅ, τι ἂν αἰεὶ κράτιστον  
δοκῇ εἶναι. εἰ δέ τις ἄλλο ὁρᾷ βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ πύθεις ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπεν, "Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατει-  
νάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη, 39  
ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ ὅστις τε ὑμῶν  
τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς

εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν· ὅστις τὰ  
 ζῆν ἐπιθυμῇ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων  
 τὸ κατακαίνειν, τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν  
 ἐστί· καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμῇ, κρατεῖν πει-  
 ράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν σώζει  
 καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν.

- 3 Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες κατέ-  
 καιον τὰς ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιττῶν  
 ὅτου μὲν δέοιτό τις μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα  
 εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν. ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἡριστοποι-  
 οῦντο. ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθρι-  
 δάτης σὺν ἱππεῦσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος
- 2 τοὺς στρατηγούς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ὧδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄν-  
 δρες Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρῳ πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστα-  
 σθε, καὶ νῦν ὑμῖν εὖνους· καὶ ἐνθάδε εἰμὶ σὺν πολλῷ  
 φόβῳ διάγων· εἰ οὖν ὁρώην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βου-  
 λεομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας  
 πάντας ἔχων· λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με, τί ἐν νῶ ἔχετε,  
 ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνουν καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν
- 3 τὸν στόλον ποιεῖσθαι. βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς  
 ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε Χειρίσοφος·  
 Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μὲν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, διαπο-  
 ρεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἀσινέστατα· ἦν  
 δέ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀποκωλύῃ, διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ
- 4 ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα. ἐκ τούτου ἐπειρᾶτο Μιθρι-  
 δάτης διδάσκειν, ὡς ἄπορον εἶη βασιλέως ἄκοντος σω-  
 θῆναι. ἐνθα δὴ ἐγγινώσκετο, ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτos εἶη·  
 καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων παρηκολούθει
- 5 πίστεως ἕνεκα. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἔδoκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς  
 βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα ποιήσασθαι τὸν πόλεμον ἀκήρυ-  
 κτον εἶναι, ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ εἶεν· διέφθειρον γὰρ  
 προσιόντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ ἓνα γε λοχαγὸν διέ-  
 φθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα, καὶ ὄχετο ἀπὼν νυκτὸς  
 σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς ἑκοσι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ διαβαντες τὸν Ζα- 6  
πάταν ποταμὸν ἐπορευοντο τεταγμένοι, τὰ ὑποζύγια  
καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προελη-  
λυθότων αὐτῶν ἐπιφαίνεται πάλιν ὁ Μιθριδάτης ἱπ-  
πέας ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας  
ὡς τετρακοσίους μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους. καὶ 7  
προσῆει μὲν ὡς φίλος ὢν πρὸς τοὺς "Ελληνας, ἐπεὶ  
δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο, ἔξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ  
ἱππεῖς καὶ πεζοί, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. οἱ  
δὲ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν κακῶς,  
ἀντεποιοῦν δ' οὐδέν· οἳ τε γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν  
Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων  
κατεκέκλειντο, οἳ τε ἀκοντισταὶ βραχύτερα ἡκόντιζον  
ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν σφενδονητῶν. ἐκ τούτου Ξενο- 8  
φῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν τε ὀπλι-  
τῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν οἱ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθο-  
φυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατελάμβανον τῶν  
πολεμίων. οὔτε γὰρ ἱππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς "Ελλησιν οὔτε 9  
οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο  
καταλαμβάνειν ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ· πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἷον  
τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν. οἱ δὲ 10  
βάρβαροι ἱππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς  
τοῦπισθεν τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, ὅπόσον δὲ προ-  
διώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν  
μαχομένους ἔδει. ὥστε τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης διήλθον οὐ 11  
πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δειλῆς ἀφίκοντο  
εἰς τὰς κώμας. ἔνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ Χειρί-  
σοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα  
ἠτιῶντο, ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτὸς τε  
ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο  
βλάπτειν. ἀκούσας δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς 12  
ἠτιῶντο καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μαρτυροίη. ἀλλ'  
ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἠναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν  
τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας, ἀντιποιεῖν δὲ οὐ

- 13 δυναμένους. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδιώκομεν, ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, ὑμεῖς  
λέγετε· κακῶς μὲν γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδυνάμεθα  
14 τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀνεχωροῦμεν δὲ πάνυ χαλεπῶς. τοῖς  
οὖν θεοῖς χάρις, ὅτι οὐ σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ, ἀλλὰ σὺν  
ὀλίγοις ἦλθον, ὥστε βλάψαι μὲν μὴ μέγала, δηλῶσαι  
15 δὲ ὧν δεόμεθα. νῦν γὰρ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι τοξεύουσι  
καὶ σφενδονῶσιν ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρήτες ἀντιτοξεύειν  
δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες ἐξικνεῖσθαι.  
ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν, πολὺ μὲν οὐχ οἷόν τε χωρίον  
ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος διώκειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ οὐδ' εἰ  
ταχὺς εἴη πεζὸς πεζὸν ἂν διώκων καταλάβοι ἐκ τόξου  
16 ῥύματος. ἡμεῖς οὖν εἰ μέλλομεν τούτους εἶργειν ὥστε  
μὴ δύνασθαι βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, σφενδονη-  
τῶν τε τὴν ταχίστην δεῖ καὶ ἱππέων. ἀκούω δ' εἶναι  
ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίους, ὧν τοὺς πολλοὺς  
φασιν ἐπίστασθαι σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ  
17 διπλάσιον φέρεσθαι τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν. ἐκεί-  
ναι γὰρ διὰ τὸ χειροπληθέσι τοῖς λίθοις σφενδονᾶν  
ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνοῦνται, οἱ δὲ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ταῖς μολυ-  
18 βδίσι ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι. ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκε-  
ψώμεθα τίνες πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ τούτῳ μὲν  
δῶμεν αὐτῶν ἀργύριον, τῷ δὲ ἄλλας πλέκειν ἐθέλοντι  
ἄλλο ἀργύριον τελῶμεν, καὶ τῷ σφενδονᾶν ἐντετα-  
γμένῳ ἐθέλοντι ἄλλην τιὰ ἀτέλειαν εὐρίσκωμεν, ἵσως  
19 τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. ὁρῶ δὲ καὶ  
ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, τοὺς μὲν τινὰς παρ'  
ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῷ Κλεάρχῳ καταλελειμμένους, πολλοὺς  
δὲ καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. ἂν οὖν  
τούτους πάντας ἐκλέξαντες σκευοφόρα μὲν ἀντιδῶμεν,  
τοὺς δὲ ἵππους εἰς ἱππέας κατασκευάσωμεν, ἵσως καὶ  
20 οὗτοί τι τοὺς φεύγοντας ἀνιάσουσιν. ἔδοξε ταῦτα.  
καὶ ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονῆται μὲν εἰς διακοσίους  
ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐδοκιμάσθησαν τῇ ὑστε-  
ραίᾳ εἰς πεντήκοντα, καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς

ἐπορίσθησαν, καὶ ἵππαρχος δὲ ἐπεστάθη Λυκίος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύ- 4  
οντο πρωιαίτερον ἀναστάντες· χαράδραν γὰρ αὐτοὺς  
ἔδει διαβῆναι, ἐφ' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς  
διαβαίνουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι. διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς 2  
πάλιν φαίνεται ὁ Μιθριδάτης, ἔχων ἱππέας χιλίους,  
τοξότας δὲ καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τέτρακισχιλίους· το-  
σούτους γὰρ ἤτησε Τισσαφέρην καὶ ἔλαβεν, ὑποσχό-  
μενος, ἂν τούτους λάβῃ, παραδώσειν αὐτῷ τοὺς Ἑλ-  
ληνας, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ  
ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε  
ποιῆσαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπέιχον 3  
τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτῶ σταδίου, διέβαινε καὶ ὁ  
Μιθριδάτης ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελτο δὲ τῶν  
τε πελταστῶν οὓς ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ  
τοῖς ἱππεύσιν εἴρητο θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφεσφομένης  
ικανῆς δυνάμεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθριδάτης κατεilhφει 4  
καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα ἐξικνούντο, ἐσήμηνε  
τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθὺς ἔθεον ὁμόσε οἷς  
εἴρητο καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἤλαυνον· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ'  
ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς 5  
βαρβάροις τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν ἱπ-  
πέων ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ζωοὶ ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα.  
τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἤκί-  
σαντο, ὡς ὅτι φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶη ὄρᾶν.  
καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ 6  
Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας  
ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τύγρητα ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα πόλις 7  
ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισσα· ᾠκούν  
δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἦν αὐτῆς  
τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν· τοῦ  
δὲ κύκλου ἡ περίοδος δύο παρασάγγαι· ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ  
πλίνθοις κεραμέναις· κρηπὶς δ' ὑπὴν λιθίνῃ τὸ ὕψος

- 8 εἴκοσι ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς ὁ Περσῶν, ὅτε παρα Μήδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι, πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε μέχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως
- 9 ἔάλω. παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν πυραμὶς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἑνὸς πλέθρου, τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλη-
- 10 σίων κωμῶν ἀποσπεφυγότες. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἕνα, παρασάγγας ἕξ, πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα πρὸς [τῇ] πόλει κείμενον· ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτὴν ποτε ᾠκουν. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς λίθου ξεστοῦ κογχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος πεντή-
- 11 κοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπρωκοδόμητο πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἡ περίοδος ἕξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα ἐλέγετο Μῆδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως καταφυγεῖν, ὅτε ἀπώλεσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν
- 12 ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ ἐλεῖν οὔτε βίᾳ· Ζεὺς δ' ἐμβροντήτους ποιεῖ τοὺς ἐνοικούντας, καὶ οὕτως ἔάλω.
- 13 Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἕνα, παρασάγγας τέτταρας. εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνη, οὓς τε αὐτὸς ἱππέας ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ τὴν Ὀρόντου δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος καὶ οὓς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους καὶ οὓς ὁ βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ, ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμ-
- 14 πολυ ἐφάνη. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν τάξεων εἶχεν ὀπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβάλλειν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρήγγειλε καὶ τοξεύειν.
- 15 ἐπεὶ δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ [Σκύθαι] τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν ἀν-

δρός, οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνν προὔθυμεῖτο ῥάδιον ἦν, καὶ ὁ  
 Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει καὶ αἱ  
 ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ 16  
 μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι ἐσίοντο οἱ  
 βάρβαροι [τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει]· μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ  
 Ῥόδιοι τῶν τε Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν πλείστων  
 τοξοτῶν. μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τὰ τόξα τὰ Περσικά ἐστιν· 17  
 ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν ὅποσα ἀλίσκοιτο τῶν τοξευμάτων  
 τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων  
 τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες μακράν.  
 εὐρίσκετο δὲ καὶ νεῦρα πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ μό-  
 λυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας. καὶ ταύτῃ 18  
 μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 κώμαις ἐπιτυχόντες, ἀπῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι μείον ἔχον-  
 τες ἐν τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει· τὴν δ' ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν  
 ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολλὺς  
 σίτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο διὰ  
 τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἶπετο ἀκροβολιζόμενος.  
 ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον 19  
 πονηρὰ τάξις εἴη πολεμίων ἐπομένων. ἀνάγκη γάρ  
 ἐστίν, ἦν μὲν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου ἢ  
 ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ γεφύ-  
 ρας, ἐκθλίβεσθαι τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονή-  
 ρως ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους ἅμα δὲ καὶ ταραττομένους·  
 ὥστε δυσχρήστους εἶναι ἀνάγκη ἀτάκτους ὄντας. ὅταν 20  
 δ' αὖ διασχῇ τὰ κέρατα, ἀνάγκη διασπᾶσθαι τοὺς τότε  
 ἐκθλιβομένους καὶ κενὸν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μέσον τῶν κερά-  
 των, καὶ ἀθυμεῖν τοὺς ταῦτα πᾶσχοντας τῶν πολεμίων  
 ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι γέφυραν διαβαίνειν ἢ ἄλλην  
 τινὰ διάβασιν, ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος βουλόμενος φθάσαι  
 πρῶτος· καὶ εὐεπίθետον ἦν ἐνταῦθα τοῖς πολεμίοις.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαντο ἐξ 21  
 λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησαν  
 καὶ ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχας.

- οὕτω δὲ πορευόμενοι οἱ λοχαγοί, ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτοι  
 τὰ κέρατα, ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι, ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς  
 22 κέρασι, τότε δὲ παρήγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων. ὁπότε  
 δὲ διάσχοιεν αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν  
 ἐξεπίμπλασαν, εἰ μὲν στενότερον εἴη τὸ διέχον, κατὰ  
 λόχους, εἰ δὲ πλατύτερον, κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς, εἰ δὲ  
 πάνυ πλατὺ, κατ' ἐνωμοτίας· ὥστε αἰὲ ἐκπλεων εἶναι  
 23 τὸ μέσον. εἰ δὲ καὶ διαβαίνειν τινὰ δέοι διάβασιν ἢ  
 γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ μέρει οἱ λοχαγοὶ  
 διέβαινον· καὶ εἴ που δέοι τι τῆς φάλαγγος, ἐπιπαρή-  
 σαν οὗτοι. τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς  
 24 τέτταρας. ἡνίκα δὲ τὸν πέμπτον ἐπορεύοντο εἶδον  
 βασιλείον τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ κώμας πολλὰς, τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν  
 πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ γηλόφων ὑψηλῶν γυγνομέ-  
 νην, οἱ καθῆκον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους, ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν κώμη. καὶ  
 εἶδον μὲν τοὺς γηλόφους ἄσμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκός,  
 25 γῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἱππέων· ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ  
 τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον γηλόφον καὶ  
 κατέβαινον ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα ἐπι-  
 γίγνονται οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ πρα-  
 26 νὲς ἔβαλλον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων, καὶ  
 πολλοὺς κατετίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 γυμνῆτων καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὀπλων·  
 ὥστε παντάπασι ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἄχρηστοι ἦσαν  
 ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται.  
 27 ἐπεὶ δὲ πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν,  
 σχολῇ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀφικνοῦνται ὀπλῖται ὄντες,  
 28 οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. πάλιν δὲ ὁπότε ἀπί-  
 οειν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα, ταῦτα ἔπασχον, καὶ  
 ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου ταῦτα ἐγίνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρα-  
 29 τιώτας, πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου  
 ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι  
 ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετί-



θεντο οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοικότες, μὴ ἀποτμηθεῖσαν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτῶν γένοιτο οἱ πολέμιοι. οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ 30 μὲν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες, ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας καὶ ἰατροὺς κατέστησαν ὁκτώ· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι. ἐνταῦθα 31 ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετρωμένων ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ εἶχον, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, κριθὰς ἵπποις συμβεβλημένας πολλὰς. ταῦτα δὲ συνενηνεγμένα ἦν τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐ- 32 τοὺς Τισσαφέρνης σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἡ ἀνάγκη κατασκηῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι, οἱ τετρωμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ τῶν φερόντων τὰ ὄπλα δεξάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκή- 33 νησαν καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν κώμην προσιόντες, πολὺ περιῆσαν οἱ "Ελληνες· πολὺ γὰρ διέφερεν ἐκ χώρας ὀρμωμένους ἀλέξασθαι ἢ πορευομένους ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δεῖλη, ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς 34 πολεμίοις· οὐποτε γὰρ μείον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ "Ελληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβούμενοι, μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ "Ελληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς. ποιηρὸν γὰρ νυκτὸς ἐστὶ στράτευμα Περσικόν. οἳ τε 35 γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἕνεκα, εἰ λυθείησαν, ἂν τέ τις θόρυβος γένηται, δεῖ ἐπισάξαι τὸν ἵππον Πέρση ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλινῶσαι δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ νύκτωρ καὶ θορύβου ὄντος. τούτου ἕνεκα πόρρω ἀπεσκήνουν τῶν "Ελλήνων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἱ "Ελλη- 30 νες βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους, ἐκήρυξε τοῖς "Ελλησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκουόντων τῶν πολεμίων.

καὶ χρόνον μὲν τινα ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ βάρβαροι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὄψῃ ἐγίνετο, ἀπήεσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λυσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ κατὰγεσθαι ἐπὶ 37 τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη ἐώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναξέζαντες καὶ διήλθον ὅσον ἐξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων, ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἢ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παρίεναι, ἀκρωνυχίαν ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πε- 38 δίον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἑώρα Χειρίσοφος προκατελλημμένην τὴν ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ 39 πρόσθεν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς μὲν πελταστὰς οὐκ ἤγεν· ἐπιφαινόμενον γὰρ ἑώρα Τισσαφέρην καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἡρώτα, Τί καλεῖς; ὁ δὲ λέγει αὐτῷ, Ἐξεστὶν ὁρᾶν· προκατελληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως λόφος, καὶ οὐκ ἔστι 40 παρελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ τούτους ἀποκόψομεν. ἀλλὰ τί οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς πελταστὰς; ὁ δὲ λέγει, ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἀλλὰ μὴν ὥρα γ', ἔφη, βουλευέσθαι, πῶς τις 41 τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπελᾷ ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου. ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τοῦ ὄρους τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατεύματος οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ λέγει, Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· ἦν γὰρ τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οὐ δυνήσονται μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ 42 τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. Ἀλλὰ δίδωμί σοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ὁπότερον βούλει ἐλέσθαι. εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν, αἰρεῖται πορεύεσθαι.

κελεύει δὲ οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας·  
μακρὸν γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς λαβεῖν. καὶ ὁ Χειρί- 43  
σοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος πελταστάς·  
ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον τοῦ πλαισίου. συνέπεσθαι  
δ' ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους οὓς αὐτὸς εἶχε  
τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου. ἐντεῦ- 44  
θεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τοῦ  
λόφου πολέμιοι ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ἐπὶ τὸ  
ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὥρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ  
ἄκρον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ μὲν κραυγὴ ἦν τοῦ Ἑλλη- 45  
νικοῦ στρατεύματος διακελενομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, πολλὴ  
δὲ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν διακε-  
λενομένων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου 46  
παρεκελεύετο, Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε  
ἀμιλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας,  
νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεῖ τὴν λοιπὴν πορευσό-  
μεθα. Σωτηρίδης δὲ ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, 47  
ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν· σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχῇ, ἐγὼ  
δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων. καὶ ὃς ἀκού- 48  
σας ταῦτα καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὠθεῖται αὐ-  
τὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως, καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος ὡς  
ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγγχανε δὲ καὶ  
Δώρακα ἔχων τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστε ἐπιέζετο. καὶ τοῖς  
μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο, τοῖς δὲ ὀπισθεν  
παριέναι μόλις ἐπομένους. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται 49  
παίουσι καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηρίδην,  
ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ  
δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν,  
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε  
πεζῇ. καὶ φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς  
πολεμίους.

Ἐνθα δὲ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον ἢ 5  
ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ  
ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ἄλλην

- ὁδὸν ὥχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι κῶμαι πολλαὶ πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τύγρητα ποταμόν. 2 ἥνικα δ' ἦν δεΐλη, ἑξαπίνης οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιφαίνονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινας τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἀρπαγὴν· καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατελήφθησαν.
- 3 ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ καλεῖν ἐπεχείρησαν τὰς κώμας. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἡθύμυσάν τινες, ἐννοοῦμενοι, μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ καλοῖεν, οὐκ 4 ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀπήγεσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς τάξεις, ἥνικα ἀπὸ τῆς βοηθείας ἀπήντησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγεν, Ὁρᾶτε, ὦ ἄνδρες 5 Ἕλληνες, ὑφίεντας τὴν χώραν ἤδη ἡμετέραν εἶναι; ἃ γάρ, ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο, διεπράττοντο, μὴ καλεῖν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ καλοῦσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν. ἀλλ' ἐάν που καταλίπωσί γε αὐτοῖς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, 6 ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα πορευομένους. ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμέτερας. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν, Οὐκ οὐνεγε δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἔφη, καίωμεν, καὶ οὕτω θάπτον παύσονται.
- 7 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἀπήλθον, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνήλθον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ ἀπορία ἦν. ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑπερύψηλα, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος τὸ βάθος ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν πειρωμένοις 8 τοῦ βάθους. ἀπορουμένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθὼν τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὧν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε.

ἐρωτώμενος δὲ οὗτου δέοιτο, Ἀσκῶν, ἔφη, δισχιλίων 9  
 δεήσομαι· πολλὰ δ' ὁρῶ ταῦτα πρόβατα καὶ αἰγας  
 καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ ἀποδαρέντα καὶ φυσηθέντα ῥα-  
 δίως ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν. δεήσομαι δὲ καὶ τῶν 10  
 δεσμῶν οἷς χρήσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις ζεύξας  
 τοὺς ἄσκους πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὁρμίσας ἕκαστον ἄσκον  
 λίθους ἀρτήσας καὶ ἀφείς ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ,  
 διαγαγὼν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν δήσας, ἐπιβαλὼ ὕλην καὶ  
 γῆν ἐπιφορήσω· ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα 11  
 μάλα εἴσεσθε· πᾶς γὰρ ἄσκος δύο ἄνδρας ἔξει τοῦ μὴ  
 καταδύναι· ὥστε δὲ μὴ ὀλισθάνειν ἢ ὕλη καὶ ἢ γῆ  
 σχήσει. ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τὸ μὲν ἐν- 12  
 θύμημα χαρίεν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον·  
 ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κωλύοντες πέραν πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς, οἱ εὐθύς  
 τοῖς πρώτοις οὐδὲν ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τούτων ποιεῖν. ἐν- 13  
 ταῦθα τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν ἐπανεχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν  
 [ῆ] πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους κόμας, κατα-  
 καύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξήεσαν· ὥστε οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσή-  
 λαυνον, ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θανμάζειν, ὅποι  
 ποτὲ τρέφονται οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῶ ἔχουσιν.  
 ἐνταῦθα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια 14  
 ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πάλιν συνήλθον,  
 καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν κύκλῳ  
 πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἴη. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον, ὅτι τὰ 15  
 μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἴη καὶ Μη-  
 δίαν, δι' ἧσπερ ἦκοιεν, ἡ δὲ πρὸς ἑὼ ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ  
 Ἑκβάτανα φέροι, ἔνθα θερίζειν καὶ ἑαρίζειν λέγεται  
 βασιλεύς, ἡ δὲ διαβάντι τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν  
 ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἡ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὁρέων καὶ  
 πρὸς ἄρκτον τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι.  
 τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς 16  
 εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν  
 ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν δώδεκα μυριάδας·  
 τούτων δὲ οὐδένα ἀπονοστήσαι διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν.

ὁπότε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ  
 σπείσαιντο, καὶ ἐπιμιγνύναι σφῶν τε πρὸς ἐκείνους  
 17 καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρα-  
 τηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν χωρὶς τοὺς ἑκασταχόσε φάσκοντας  
 εἰδέναι, οὐδὲν δῆλον ποιήσαντες, ὅποι πορεύεσθαι  
 ἔμελλον. ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι  
 διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς Καρδούχους ἐμβαλεῖν· τούτους γὰρ  
 διελθόντας ἔφασαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἥξειν, ἧς Ὀρόντας  
 ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος. ἐντεῦθεν δ' εὖπορον  
 18 ἔφασαν εἶναι, ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι. ἐπὶ τού-  
 τοις ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως, ὀπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίῃ τῆς ὥρας, τὴν  
 πορείαν ποιοῖντο· τὴν γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὁρέων ἔδε-  
 δοίκεσαν μὴ προκαταληφθεῖν· καὶ παρήγγειλαν, ἐπειδὴ  
 δειπνήσαιεν, συνεσκευασμένους πάντας ἀναπαύεσθαι,  
 καὶ ἔπεσθαι, ἥνικ' ἂν τις παραγγέλλῃ.

---

## NOTES.

## EXPLANATION OF THE PRINCIPAL ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE NOTES AND IN THE VOCABULARY.

---

abs. = absolute.  
 appos. = apposition.  
 art. = article.  
 Att. = Attic.  
 cf. = Latin confer, compare, see.  
 cogn. = cognate.  
 comm. = common, *or* commonly.  
 compos. = composition.  
 const. = construction.  
 correl. = correlative.  
 dif. = difference.  
 Dind. = Dindorf.  
 dist. = distinguish.  
 Eng. = English.  
 esp. = especially.  
 f. *or* fut. = future.  
 ff. = and the following.  
 fr. = from.  
 freq. = frequent, *or* frequently.  
 g. *or* gen. = genitive.  
 G. = Goodwin (Moods & Tenses).  
 genr. = general, *or* generally.  
 H. = Hadley (Gr. Gram.).  
 Hert. = Hertlein.  
 imp. = imperfect.

K. *or* Küh. = Kühner (Gr. Gram.).  
 Krüg. = Krüger.  
 κτέ. = καὶ τὰ ἑτέρα = etc.  
 Lat. = Latin.  
 Lex. = Lexicon (= the vocabulary).  
 L. G. = Larger Grammar.  
 lit. = literal, *or* literally.  
 Matt. = Matthiæ.  
 meton. = metonymy.  
 obj. = object.  
 opp. = cposed, *or* opposite.  
 perh. = perhaps.  
 posit. = position.  
 priv. = privative.  
 r. = root.  
 reg. = regular.  
 rel. *or* relat. = relative.  
 sc. = scilicet = namely, understand.  
 subj. = subject.  
 syncop. = syncopated.  
 v. = verb.  
 Voll. = Vollbrecht (*see* Preface).  
 w. = with.  
 wh. = which.

The remaining abbreviations are thought to be so common and obvious as not to require an explanation.



## NOTES.

### BOOK FIRST.

\**Ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης*, —the *Anabasis* proper: that is, the march upward to the vicinity of Babylon, including an account of the battle of Cunaxa.

### CHAP. I.

The occasion and manner of raising the army.

§1. *Δαρείου ... γίνονται*, lit. *there are born of Darius*, etc. Const. of *Δαρείου*? H. 572. d. K. §158. 1. — *γίνονται*: historical pres. H. 699. K. §152. 4. Stem of *γίνονται* and changes? H. 332. K. §123. — *παῖδες*: irregularity in accent? Others like it? H. 160. c. K. §33. Exceptions. — *νεώτερος*: why *-ώτερος*? H. 221. a. K. §50. 1. (a.) — *ἡσθένει*: deriv.? Why imperf.? H. 701. K. §152 ff. G. §11. — *ὑπώπτει*: deriv.? — *ἐβούλετο*: what three verbs often take *η* as syllabic augment? H. 308. Rem. a. K. §85. Rem. 1. Have they ever this augment in the *Anab.*? No. — *τώ*: was the dual always used in speaking of two? H. 517. K. §147. Rem. 3.

§2. Use of *μέν*? see Lex. — *παρὼν ἐτύγχανε*: see Lex. *τυγχάνω*. For the construction and meaning of the supplementary particip. see H. 796. ff. K. §175. 3. Stem of *τυγχάνω* and changes? H. 437. 8 and 329. ff. K. §121. (b.) — *μεταπέμπεται*, *sends for*, the mid. suggesting the idea *to come to himself* (H. 687. ff. K. §150. 3); hence the const. *ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς*. — *ἐποίησε* and *ἀπέδειξε*: translate by plupf. H. 706. K. §152. Rem. 6. — *καὶ στρατηγὸν δέ*: a transition from a relative to an independent clause, *and he had appointed him general also*: *δέ* connects the clauses, *καί* (*also*) contrasts

στρατηγόν with σατράπην. In genr. καί stands before the word on which its force falls. — πάντων: peculiarity in accent? H. 160. ff. K. § 33. III. Exceptions. — ἀθροίζονται, *are wont to assemble* to be reviewed annually by the governor (σατράπης) of the province. Tissaphernes had been succeeded in 407 B. C. by Cyrus; hence the ground of his enmity to Cyrus. — ἀναβαίνει . . . ἀνέβη: such changes from the historical pres. to the past are frequent. This first expedition of Cyrus to Babylon is alluded to again in 1, 3, 18 and 1, 4, 12. — λαβών: stem and changes? H. 437. 4 and 329. K. § 121. (b.) Peculiarity in accent? H. 367. K. § 84. 3. — καὶ . . . δέ: cf. καὶ . . . δέ above.

§ 3. κατέστη: compos.? and meaning of the parts? Stem and changes? H. 332 and 336. K. § 128. I. and § 130. 1. (c.) Tenses of this verb intrans. in the act.? H. 416. 1. K. § 131. Rem. 2. — εἰς τὴν βασ., *became established in the kingdom*, a construction denoting motion after a verb of rest:—an elliptical form of expression = *having entered into the kingdom he became established in it*. H. 618. a. — ὥς: see Lex. — ἐπιβουλεύει: *oratio obliqua*. H. 734. 736. K. § 188. — ὁ δέ, *and he*, i. e. Artaxerxes. Is ὁ an article here? H. 525. a. (γ.) — ἡ δὲ μήτηρ: state the peculiarity in the use of the article here. H. 527. d. K. § 148. 3. — αὐτόν: obj. of ἀποπέμπει as well as of ἐξαίτησαμένη.

§ 4. ὁ δέ: cf. ὁ δέ, § 3 and note. — ὥς: of time, *when, as*. — ἀπῆλθε: rule for the accent of verbs? Restrictions in compound verbs? H. 365 and 368. K. § 84. 1 and 2. Under what exception to the rule does ἀτιμασθεὶς come? H. 367. d. K. § 84. 3. (c.) — ἐπί: see Lex. — ἔσται and βασιλεύσει, *may*, etc. For the const. see H. 756. K. § 181. 2. — ὑπῆρχε: see Lex. ὑπάρχω. — μᾶλλον: compare. See Lex. — τὸν βασιλεύοντα, *the one being king*, i. e. *the reigning king*: τὸν βασιλέα would mean *the king*, without regard to time, whether then reigning or not.

§ 5. ὅστις is collective; hence may relate to πάντας. — Observo the notion of repeated action in ἀφικνεῖτο, διατιθεῖς, ἀπεπέμπετο. H. 696. K. § 152. G. §§ 10 and 11. — τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως: a condensed expression, frequent in Greek as well as in Eng. = τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ παρὰ βασιλέως, *whoever of those with the king came from the king to him*, or condensed, *whoever of those from the king came*, etc. — βασιλεύς, spoken of the Persian king, often stands without the article, like a proper name. H. 530. a. K. § 148. 5. — ἀφικνεῖτο: stem and changes? H. 438. 2. K. § 120. 2. — διατιθεῖς: stem and

changes? II. 403. 2. K. § 127. 2 and § 133. Why accented on the ultimate? Cf. note on ἀτιμασθεῖς, § 4. — οὕτω ... ὥστε ... εἶναι, *so as to be*, etc. For the const. of εἶναι, see II. 770. K. § 186. 1. (a.) — τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὥς = ἐπεμελεῖτο ὥς οἱ βάρβαροι, *he paid attention to the barbarians that they*, etc., instead of, *he paid attention that the barbarians*, etc.; an instance of prolepsis. By this const. greater prominence is given to τῶν βαρβάρων. See H. 726. — εἶσαν: not uncommon instead of εἶεν: but in the optat. 3d pers. plur. of other verbs -ησαν for -εν is extremely rare. Cf. παραδοίσαν, 2, 1, 10, and note.

§ 6. τήν implies that the Grecian force here mentioned was already well known. H. 527. a. K. § 148. 1. If Ἑλληνικήν were before the article or after the noun, how would the idea be changed? H. 531. ff. and 535. b. K. § 148. (a) and (b.) — ἤθροισεν and ἐποιεῖτο: the impf. here denotes *an action in its progress*; not as in § 5. *repeated action*. See H. 701. K. § 152. 9. G. § 11. — ὥς: properly a connective between ἐπικρυπτόμενος and ἐδύνατο, *concealing it* (i. e. the Grecian force), or perhaps, *concealing himself* (i. e. his designs), *as he was able most*, i. e. *as much as he was able*. — ὅτι, before the superlatives, intensive. H. 664. K. § 239. Rem. 2. L. G. — ὅποσας εἶχε φυλακὰς: antecedent incorporated into the relative clause. H. 809 and 811. K. § 182. 6. (end of the paragraph.) Otherwise expressed, τῶν φυλακῶν, ὅποσας εἶχε, κτέ. *he sent orders to the several commanders of the garrisons, which he had*, etc. — λαμβάνειν: why the pres. here rather than the aor. λαβεῖν? H. 714 and 716. a. K. § 152. 12. G. § 11. B. Remark. — Πελοποννησίους: the Peloponnesians, especially the Arcadians, were employed often-er than the other Greeks as mercenaries. — For the force of ὥς before a particip. see Lex. under ὥς. — καὶ γάρ, *etenim, since also, and* (this was probable) *for*, etc. This expression is elliptical; καὶ connecting the foregoing with a clause understood (*this was so*, or some similar expression suggested by the context). In translating, this implied clause is not generally expressed, and consequently καὶ is not comm. rendered. — αἱ Ἴωνικαὶ πόλεις: how would the idea be changed if Ἴωνικαὶ were before the article or after the noun? H. 531. ff. and 535. b. K. § 148. (a) and (b.) — ἐκ βασιλέως: ἐκ w. the pass. denoting the agent is rare in Att. prose. It denotes properly the idea of *source*. — ἀφιστήκεσαν: irregularity of meaning? H. 416. 1. K. § 131. Rem. 2. ἀφιστήκεσαν is the reading of Dind.

§ 7. *προαισθόμενος*, *having become aware beforehand*, i. e. before they revolted openly and went over to Cyrus. Stem of *αἰσθάνομαι* and changes? H. 436. 1. K. § 121. (a.) — *αὐτά*: different meanings of *αὐτός*? See Lex.; also H. 538. b. and 669. ff. K. § 60. Remark. — *βουλευομένους*, *that (some persons) in Miletus were plotting*, etc. For the const. of the supplementary particip. see H. 796. ff. K. § 175. — *ἀποστῆναι*, *to revolt*, explanatory of *τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα*. In *ἀποστῆναι* the single act is considered; but in *τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα*, the various transactions which it involved. — *τοὺς μὲν ... τοὺς δέ*, *some ... others*. What is *τοὺς* here? H. 525. K. § 247. L. G. — *ὁ δὲ Κῦρος*: use of the article with proper names? H. 530. a. K. § 148. 5. — *τοὺς φεύγοντας*, *the fugitives, the exiles*, and *τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας*, *the persons banished, the exiles*; different words, with the same general meaning, used for variety of expression. — *ἐκβάλλω*, *to banish*; *ἐκπίπτω*, *to fall out, to be banished*; *φεύγω*, *to flee, to be in a state of banishment*; *κατάγω*, *to restore (from banishment)*. — Principal parts of *συλλέγω*; also, of *λέγω*, *to speak*? See Lex. — *καὶ ... αὖ*: the emphatic idea is placed between these connectives, as between *οὐδὲ ... αὖ* and *καὶ ... δέ*. — *αὕτη* is the subject and *πρόφασις* the predicate of *ἦν*, *and this again was*, etc. — *τοῦ ἀθροίζειν*: the infin. as subst. limiting *πρόφασις*, H. 778. ff. K. § 173.

§ 8. *ὧν*: what are the principal ideas denoted by the particip.? H. 788. ff. K. § 176. Here the notion of cause is prominent, *he demanded because he was a brother of his*, etc. As *ἀδελφός* has no article, it is indefinite. *ὁ ἀδελφός αὐτοῦ* would mean *his brother*. — *οἱ*: often enclit.; why accented here? H. 232. K. § 16. 3. (c.) *to himself*, an indirect reflexive. H. 671. a. K. § 169. Rem. 3. — *ὥστε*: meaning w. indic. and w. infin.? H. 770 and 771. K. § 186. 1. (a.) Cf. *ὥστε*, § 5. — *πρὸς ἐαυτόν*: why between the article and noun? H. 534. K. § 148. 9. (a.) — *πολεμοῦντα*: time, *while carrying on war*; also the means, *by carrying on war*. H. 788. ff. K. § 176. Cf. *ὧν* above. — *αὐτόν*, i. e. *Κῦρον*. — *οὐδέν*, *in nothing, in no respect*: more emphatic than *οὐκ*. For the const. of *οὐδέν* and of *ταῦτα* above, see H. 549. K. § 159. 3. (7.) — *ἤχθερο*: stem *αχθ-*. — *ὧν*: object of *ἔχων*, attracted from the acc. to the case of the antecedent *πόλεων*. H. 808. K. § 182. 6.

§ 9, *ἄλλο*: peculiarity in the declens.? H. 236. K. § 60. Others like it? *αὐτός* and its compounds, *ἐκείνος*, *ὅς* and the article. — *αὐτῷ*, *for him*. What is the Greek for *by him* (as agent)? H. 656. b.

K. § 167. 7. — *συνελέγετο*: notice the force of the impf. here. Principal parts of this verb? — *τῇ* shows that the expression following it is an attributive of *Χερρονήσῳ*. H. 533 and 534. K. § 148. 9. Instead of *Cherronesus opposite to Abydus*, the name *Thracian Cherronesus* was afterwards adopted. — *τόνδε τὸν τρόπον*, in the following manner. Const.? H. 552. K. § 159. 3. (7.) ὁδε, τοιόσδε, τοσόσδε, and the adv. ὧδε comm. point to something following: οὗτος, τοιοῦτος, τοσοῦτος, and the adv. οὕτως, to something going before. — *ἡγάσθη τε καὶ δίδωσιν*: notice the change from aor. to historical pres. See H. 699. K. § 152. 4. Similar changes are not uncommon. Cf. § 2. *ἀναβαίνει ... ἀνέβη*. — *ἡγάσθη*: inceptive aor. H. 708. K. § 256. 4. (g.) L. G. *he came to esteem*. — *ἀπό*, with, denoting the means: not very comm. — *ἐκ ... ὁρμώμενος*: see Lex. ὁρμάω. — *Θραξί* depends on *ἐπολέμει*. H. 595. b. K. § 161. 2. *πολεμεῖν* admits other constructions also; as *πρὸς τινα*, *εἰς τινα*. Why *τοῖς* after *Θραξί*? H. 533 and 534. K. § 148. 9. — Why is *ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησποντον* placed between *τοῖς ... οἰκοῦσι*? It is an attributive of *οἰκοῦσι*, used as a subst. *those dwelling, the dwellers*. H. 786. K. § 148. 6. — *τοῦτο* belongs to *τὸ στράτευμα*. — *τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν*: see Lex. *λανθάνω*; also, H. 796. ff. 801. K. § 175. 3. — *αὐτῷ*: cf. *αὐτῷ* above.

§ 10. ὧν: cf. note on *παρῶν*, § 2. — *καί*, before *πιεζόμενος*, connects *ἐτύγγανεν* and *ἔρχεται*, another instance of change in tense: cf. note on *ἡγάσθη ... δίδωσιν*, § 9. — *τῶν οἴκοι ἀντ.* *those at home of an opposite faction*. For the const. of *οἴκοι*, see H. 492. f. K. § 148. 8. — *αἰτεῖ*: w. two accusatives. H. 553. K. § 160. 4. — *εἰς δις. ξένους*, *to the number of two*, etc. or *about two thousand mercenaries*; the whole phrase as remote object of *αἰτεῖ*. Hert. however joins it with *μισθόν*, *pay for two thousand*, etc. and *for three months*. The former const. is more commonly approved. — ὥς w. particip., see Lex. — *ἄν* belongs to *περιγεγόμενος*, as if *he would thus be superior*, etc. When does the particip. take *ἄν*? H. 803. K. § 153. 2. d. G. § 41. — *εἰς τετρακισχιλίου*, sc. *ξένους*; const. like *εἰς δις. ξένους* above. — *αὐτοῦ*: const.? H. 575. K. § 158. 5. (a.) — *πρόσθεν ... πρὶν*: a pleonasm, employed for emphasis. See Lex. *πρόσθεν*. — *ἄν*: w. aor. subjunct. denotes what? H. 760. a. K. § 152. Rem. 3, *until he shall have conferred with him* (i. e. Cyrus).

§ 11. What peculiarity in the accent of *λαβόντα* and of *παραγενέσθαι*? H. 367. a. K. § 84. 3. (a.) and 4. (a.) — *ὅτι* qualifies the

superlative. Cf. § 6. — *ὥς* w. particip., see Lex. *ὥς*: *giving out that he wished*, etc. *on the pretence that the Pisidians gave trouble to*, etc. — *καὶ τούτους*, *these also*; i. e. these as well as Proxenus and Aristippus. — *Τισσαφέρνει* depends on *πολεμήσων*, *on the pretence that he was about to wage war against Tissaphernes*. Cf. note on *Θραξί*, § 9. — *σύν*, *together with, in company with*. — Situation of the places alluded to in this section, Bæotia, Pisidia, etc.? (The learner is of course provided with an ancient atlas, and a classical dictionary.)

## CHAP. II.

The march from Sardis to Tarsus. On pretence of making an expedition against the Pisidians, Cyrus first marches to Celænæ, their ancient capital: thence he returns to Ceramon-agora, and commences his march eastward. Before arriving at the Cilician pass, he is met by Epyaxa, wife of Syennësis, the king of Cilicia. He meets with no resistance at the pass; and soon after his arrival at Tarsus, Syennësis surrenders to him.

§ 1. *ἤδη*, *already, at length*, i. e. after all the requisite preparations. — *τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν*: the antithetical clause implied by *μὲν* is not expressed, but only implied by the context: *he made the pretence*, etc.; *but in reality he was marching against the king*. — *ὥς* w. particip., see Lex. — *ἐκ τῆς χώρας*: what does the gen. case denote? H. 557. K. § 156. Meaning of *ἐκ*? H. 624. K. § 163. 4. — *ὥς* before a prep., see Lex. — *τὸ Ἑλλ. ἐνταῦθα στρατ.*, *the Grecian army which was there*, i. e. in the satrapy of Cyrus. Dind. omits *στράτευμα* and joins *ἐνταῦθα* with the next sentence; a reading which has much in its favor. — *λαβόντι ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στρατεύμα*: antecedent in relat. clause. The antecedent thus incorporated is usually separated from the relative by one or more intervening words, and stands without the article, even when in its ordinary position it would require one. H. 809. K. § 182. 6. (end of the paragraph.) Taking the antecedent from the relat. clause, we should have *λαβόντι τὸ στρατεύμα ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ*, *having taken the army which he had*, or, as *ὅσον* implies, *all the army that he had*. Cf. *ὅπως... φυλακάς*, 1, 1, 6. *λαβόντι* here and often may be rendered more simply, *with*: also *ἔχων*, *χρώμενος*, *φέρον*, and some other participles. — *συναλλαγέντι*: see Lex. *συναλλάττω*. Cf. *καταλύσαι πρὸς*, 1, 1, 10. — *τοὺς οἴκοι*: see Lex. *οἶκοι*. — *ὁ εἶχε στρατεύμα* = *τὸ στρατεύμα ὃ εἶχεν*: cf. note on *ὅσον... στρατεύμα* above. — *προειστήκει* is the reading of Dind.

here, for the more comm. *προεστίκει*. For the irregularity in meaning, see H. 416. 1. K. § 131. Rem. 2. — τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ: from 1, 1, 6, it appears that the Ionian cities are meant: ἐν ταῖς πόλ., an attributive of ξενικοῦ. H. 534. K. § 148. 9. (a.) lit. *the in the cities mercenary force*, i. e. in the Eng. idiom, *the mercenary force in the cities*. Const. of ξενικοῦ? H. 581. K. § 158. 7. (a). — λαβόντα: in the preceding sentence we find λαβόντι where it stands in immediate connection with Κλεάρχῳ. Here λαβόντα, being removed from Ξενία to which it refers, is connected more intimately with ἦκειν, and is accus. because the subject of the infin. is regularly in that case. Several similar instances occur in the Anab. H. 776. K. § 172. Rem. 2. *He sends orders to Xenias ... to come having taken*, etc., or *to come with*, etc. — πλὴν ὅποσοι, *except as many as*. The indefinite relative ὅποσοι is equivalent to a demonstr. pron. (which would be in the gen. governed by πλὴν) and a relative, the subject of ἦσαν.

§ 2. ἐκάλεσε: principal parts? See Lex. Wherein irreg.? H. 335 and 420. 5. K. § 93 and § 96. 3. — ὑποσχόμενος, *having promised*, from ὑπισχνόμαι. Stem and changes? H. 438. 5 and 6. and 329. K. § 120. — εἰ ... ἐφ' αὐτοῦ, *if he should succeed well (in those things) for which*, etc. Sc. ταῦτα, as antecedent of αὐτοῦ, accus. of specification. — μὴ παύσασθαι, *not to cease*, depends on ὑποσχόμενος, which oftener takes the fut. infin. — πρόσθεν ... πρὶν, cf. note Chap. 1. § 10. — καταγάγοι: stem? H. 384. K. § 89. Rem. — παρῆσαν εἰς: a verb of rest followed by a construction denoting motion: παρῆσαν, *they were present*, directs the mind more to the completion of the march; and hence, we may translate, *they arrived in Sardis*. Exact force of εἰς Σάρπ. ? H. 620. K. § 165. 2. Define the acc. case. H. 544. K. § 159.

§ 3. δῆ, *accordingly*, i. e. in accordance with the instructions of Cyrus, § 1. — ὀπλίτας: in apposition with τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων. — γυμνήτας: some editors read γυμνήτας. Difference in declens.? When may the circumflex accent stand on the penult? H. 94. c. and e. K. § 10. 3. Quantity of the termination -ας in the acc. plur. 1st declens.? 3d declens.? H. 131 and 154. K. §§ 25 and 31. Why then is γυμνήτας 3d declens. and the other form 1st declens.? — ὥς with numerals, see Lex. — ἦν: should it not be plur., as there are two subjects connected by καί? H. 511. h. K. § 147. Rem. 1. — τῶν ... στρατευομένων: predicate gen.; partitive. H. 572. a. K. § 158. 3. (a.), *were of those who were engaged in mili-*

*tary operations*, etc. — Repeat the definition of the gen. and of the accus.

§ 4. αὐτῷ: define the dat. case. H. 594. K. § 161. — μείζονα agrees with παρασκευήν: lit. *having thought the preparation to be greater than as if against the Pisidians*; i. e. *having thought the preparation to be too great to be destined merely against*, etc. Cf. H. 660. c. K. § 323. 8. L. G. — ὡς βασιλεία: how does ὡς as prep. differ from πρὸς? See Lex. ὡς as prep.

§ 5. παρὰ w. g. *from beside, from* (often denoting as here the agent); ἀπὸ, *from* (a place); ἐκ, *out of, from*. Meanings of παρὰ, with the gen. dat. and accus. See Lex. — ἀπὸ: list of prep. s w. the gen. alone? H. 619. K. § 162. 8. — διά: prep. s w. gen. and acc.? Meaning of διά w. gen.? w. acc.? See Lex. — ἐπί: preps. w. gen. dat. and acc.? Principal meanings of ἐπί with the different cases? See Lex. — List. of prep. s w. dat. only? w. acc. only? — σταθμούς and παρασάγγας: const.? H. 550. b. K. § 159. 3. (6.)

§ 6. ἐξελαύνει: stem and changes? H. 435. 2. K. § 119. — ἔμεινεν: stem and changes? H. 422. 13. K. § 111. 5. — ἡμέρας: const.? H. 550. a. K. § 159. 3. (6.) — ἔχων: cf. note on λαβόντι, § 1.

§ 7. σταθμούς τρεῖς: direction of these stages? See map. — Κύρῳ: const.? H. 598. K. § 161. 2. (d.) — βασιλεία, a palace: on what principle plur. in Greek? See Lex. — ἦν: why sing.? H. 515. K. § 147. (d.) Exception to this rule? — Σηρίων: const.? H. 584. b. K. § 158. 5. (a.) — ἀπὸ ἵππου, on horse-back: lit. *from a horse*, because the hunter's attention is directed away from the horse towards the game. Cf. below αἱ πηγαὶ ... ἐκ, lit. *the sources are out of*: Eng. idiom, *the sources are in*. — μέσου: force here? and when it follows the article? See Lex. — αὐτοῦ: position of the genitive of personal pronouns limiting a subst. w. the article? of the reflexive genitives? H. 538. K. § 148. Rem. 8. — Κελαινῶν: in apposition with πόλεως. H. 500. a. K. § 154. 2. Cf. ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός.

§ 8. ἔστι ... βασιλεία, and there is also a palace of the great king, i. e. in addition to the palace of Cyrus. ἔστι, ἐστί, and ἐστι, when used? H. 108. 111. c. 406. 1. Rem. b. K. § 14. (a.) § 15. 3. § 16. 1 and 4. — ὑπό: meaning w. gen. dat. and acc.? in compos.? See Lex. — ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος, and this also flows, i. e. this as well as the Mæander. — ποδῶν: const.? H. 572. h. K. § 158. 3. *the width is (a width) of twenty-five feet*. — ἐκδεῖραι, to have flayed.



H. 717. b. K. § 152. 12. (c.) G. § 23. 2. — νικήσας, sc. αὐτόν, i. e. Marsyas. — οἱ: dat. sing. enclit.: οἱ, the article, is proclitic: οἷ, the relat. pron. is oxytone. Cf. 1, 1, 8, note. — περὶ σοφίας, *respecting skill*, i. e. in music. Meaning of περί, w. gen. dat. and acc.? See Lex. — κρεμάσαι: connected to ἐκδεῖραι by καί: from κρεμάννυμι. — αἱ πηγαί, sc. αἱ τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ εἰσιν.

§ 9. τῇ μάχῃ, *in the battle*, i. e. *in the well known battle* at Salamis, 480 B. C. Why the article here? H. 527. a. K. § 148. 1. Const. of μάχῃ? H. 608. K. § 161. 3. — οἰκοδομῆσαι: cf. note on ἐκδεῖραι, § 8. How distinguished by the accent from the 3d pers. sing. 1st aor. optat. act., and from the 2d pers. sing. 1st aor. imperat. mid.? H. 367. Rem. e. K. § 84. Rem. 4. — Θρᾶκας and Κρητᾶς, in apposition with the words preceding them, may be rendered adjectively. H. 500. a. K. § 154. 2. The Cretan archers were celebrated; and hence were often employed as mercenaries. Why are these words properispomena? Cf. note on γυμνήτας, § 3. — σύμπαντες: ordinary position? H. 537. K. § 148. 10. (c.) ff. — ἀμφί: state the principal uses. See Lex. — τοὺς: force of the article with numerals? H. 528. K. § 148. 10. (f.) *about the full number two thousand*.

§ 10. ἐντεῦθεν . . . εἰς Πέλτας: direction of the march? See map. Cyrus wished to conceal his actual intentions as long as possible; and hence did not march directly towards Babylon. — ἔθγκα: mention the aorists in -κα. H. 381. K. § 131. 2 and § 126. 6. — ἦσαν: subject? H. 535. K. § 148. Rem. 2. If τὰ ἄθλα (neut. plur.) is the subject, why is the verb not singular? The verb may agree with the predicate-noun, when it is viewed as more important. H. 513. K. § 241. 6. L. G. — πρὸς: repeat the list of prepositions used with three cases. Principal meanings of πρὸς with these different cases? See Lex.

§ 11. Direction of the march? See map. — πόλιν: in apposition with Καύστρου πεδίον, which like Κεραμῶν ἀγορά has the force of one compound word. — πλέον: the adj. πλέων, agreeing with μισθός, would seem to be necessary here, but the advs. πλέον, μέιον and ἔλαττον are often joined thus by an apparently irregular construction to a subst.: render, *more than three months' pay*: μηνῶν limits μισθός understood. — ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας, *to his doors*, i. e. to the doors of Cyrus. — ἀπήτουν: difference in meaning between αἰτέω and ἀπαιτέω. See Lex. Cf. ἀποδίδωμι and ἀποθύω. Meanings of ἀπό alone, and in compos. See Lex. — δῆλος . . .

ἀνιώμενος, lit. *he was plain being troubled*, i. e. in an Eng. idiom, *he was plainly troubled*, or, *it was plain that he was troubled*. The personal for the impers. const. is comm. with δηλος, φανερός, δίκαιος and some other words. H. 488. Rem. c. K. § 175. Rem. 5. — πρόσ: see Lex. — ἔχοντα, instead of agreeing directly with Κύρου, as we might expect, agrees with the implied subj. of ἀποδιδόναι. Cf. note on λαβόντα, § 1 above.

§ 12. δ' οὖν: οὖν cum particulis, ut δέ, ἀλλά, aliis, juncta habet vim confirmativam. Küh. Render, *certain it is however (δέ) that he then gave*, etc. — φύλακας: differs how in meaning from φυλάκας, 1, 1, 6. See Lex. Quantity of -as in each word. Cf. note on γυμνήτας, § 3 above. — συγγενέσθαι: spoken here of improper intercourse.

§ 13. Direction of the march? See map. — κρήνη ... καλουμένη, the so-called fountain of Midas. Why ἡ before Μίδου? H. 533. K. § 148. 9. (a.) In later writers, οὕτω was expressed with καλούμενος for this idea. — τὸν Σάτυρον, the Satyr, i. e. Silenus; the article denoting a person well known. — Σηρεῦσαι: see note on ἐκδεῖραι, § 8 above. — οἶνω ... αὐτήν, lit. *by mingling it* (the fountain) *with wine*, or Eng. idiom, *by mingling wine with it*.

§ 14. δεηθῆναι: from δέομαι. — τῶν Ἑλλήνων and τῶν βαρβάρων limit ἐξέτασιν: placed at the end of the sentence for greater emphasis.

§ 15. νόμος: see Lex. — ταχθῆναι and στήναι have for subj. τοὺς Ἕλληνας, and depend on ἐκέλευσε. — ἕκαστον: sc. στρατηγόν, subj. of συντάξαι, depends on ἐκέλευσε. — ἐπί: meaning w. gen. dat. and acc.? See Lex. — εἶχε: cf. note on ἦν, § 3 above. — οἱ ἐκείνου: see Lex. ὁ. In distinction from οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος denotes an object more remote; but not unfrequently, when not contrasted with οὗτος, it refers as here to an object just mentioned. H. 679. b. K. § 303. Rem. 1. L. G.

§ 16. ἐλαύνω: principal parts? See Lex. Stem and changes? See H. 435. 2. K. § 119. — τοὺς Ἕλληνας: sc. ἐθεώρει. — ἐκκεκαλυμένος: *uncovered*. The shield had commonly a covering (σάγμα).

§ 17. παρήλασε: translate as plupf. H. 706. K. § 152. Rem. 6. — στήσας: differs how in meaning from στάς? Intrans. tenses in the act.? H. 416. 1. K. § 131. Rem. 2. — φάλαγγα: object of ἐκέλευσε, and subj. of προβαλέσθαι and ἐπιχωρῆσαι. — ἐσάλπιγχε: stem and changes? Others like it? H. 328. b. Note. K. § 105. 4.

— ἐκ τούτου, upon this, hereupon. — προϊόντων: gen. abs. sc. τῶν Ἑλλήνων, while the Greeks were advancing.

§ 18. τῶν βαρβάρων limits ἄλλοις; also ἡ Κίλισσα and οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς. — φόβος, sc. ἦν. The omission of the imperf. is rare. — καὶ ... καὶ ... τε ... καί, both to others of the barbarians and (particularly) both the Cilician woman fled ... and those of the market-place, etc. — ἔφ. ἐκ τῆς ἀρμ., fled from her chariot, because (says Hert.) she forgot in her haste and confusion that she could flee faster in her chariot than on foot. Krüg. understands it thus: fled on her chariot; comparing ἐκ here with ἀπό, § 7, above. Dind. has ἐπὶ τῆς ἀρμ., on her chariot, which is prob. the true reading. — οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς: another instance of brachylogy for οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς. Cf. τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως, 1, 1, 5. — ἦσθη: fr. ἦδομαι. — τὸν ... φόβον: the intervening clause is an attributive. H. 534. K. § 148. 9. (a.); lit. the out of the Greeks into the barbarians fear, i. e. the fear with which the Greeks inspired the barbarians.

§ 19. ἔμεινε: stem and changes? H. 422. 13. K. § 111. 5. Formation of the 1st aor. of liquid verbs? H. 382. K. § 111. 3 and 4. — χώραν: object of διαρπάσαι: οὖσαν refers to χώραν.

§ 20. ὁδόν: const.? H. 552. K. § 159. 3. (6.) — αὐτόν: Menon himself. — μετὰ w. gen. implies participation with; σὺν w. dat., in company with. — ἐν ᾧ, in which time; ᾧ refers collectively to ἡμέρας τρεῖς. — αἰτιασάμενος: sc. αὐτούς, having accused (them) of plotting against, etc.

§ 21. ἡ εἰσβολή: the so-called Κιλικίαι πύλαι; a narrow way artificially cut out of the rock, in a ravine through which runs the river Sarus. — ἀμήχανος ... στρατεύματι, impracticable for an army to enter: ἀμήχανος, predicate adj. belonging to εἰσβολή. Why but two endings? H. 209. K. § 78. 1. (c.) L. G. — Const. of εἰσελθεῖν? H. 767. K. § 171. 2. (d.) — δι' ὃ ἔμεινεν, wherefore he (i. e. Cyrus) remained, etc. — λελοιπὼς εἷη: nearly equivalent to λελοίποι, had left. Why optat. rather than indic.? H. 734 and 736. K. § 188. 3. — ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο, ὅτι, when he was informed, that, etc. — καὶ ὅτι, and because: connect w. the clause λελοιπὼς ... ἄκρα. — τριήρεις ... Ταμὼν ἔχοντα, he heard that Tamos had galleys, etc. Const. of ἔχοντα? H. 796. 799. K. § 175. — τὰς κτέ.: an attributive of τριήρεις, the galleys belonging to, etc. H. 533. K. § 148. 9. (a.)

§ 22. οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος: gen. abs.: peculiarity in the accent of οὐδενός? H. 120. 160. 255. K. § 33. 111. § 68. Rem. 1. — οὐ:

adv. See Lex. — ἐφύλαττον: Krüg. and Hert. consider this as plupf. in meaning. So also ἦσαν, 1, 1, 6; ἐτύγγανεν, 1, 1, 8. Küh. and Voll. consider them all as strictly imperf. — σύμπλεων agrees w. πεδίον; Att. 2d declens. Peculiarity in accent? H. 149. K. § 30. Rem. 2. — πολύ: predicated not only of σήσαμον but also of the nouns following. H. 511. h. K. § 147. Rem. 1. — φέρει: subj.? sc. τὸ πεδίον. — αὐτό: i. e. τὸ πεδίον.

§ 23. ἦσαν w. neut. pl. subj., denoting things, occurs several times in the Anab., contrary to the general rule. See H. 515 and Exc. K. § 147. (d.) Rem. 2. — μέσης: meaning in the predicate position? meaning when preceded by the article? H. 536. K. § 148. Rem. 9. — ὄνομα, *by name*: const.? H. 549. b. K. § 159. 3. (7): εὖρος, *in width*: same const. — πλίθρων limits ποταμός.

§ 24. μετά is used with what cases? meaning w. the different cases? and in compos.? See Lex. — ἐξέλιπον ... εἰς: an abbreviated expression, *abandoned* (and fled) *into*: ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη also implies a verb of motion. H. 618. a. K. § 165. 1 and 2. — οἱ ... ἔχοντες, sc. τὴν πόλιν οὐκ ἐξέλιπον.

§ 25. τῶν εἰς τὸ πεδίον: an attributive of ὄρων; the const. implies extension; *the mountains (extending) into the plain*. — οἱ μὲν ... οἱ δέ: see Lex. ὁ. — ἀρπάζοντας agrees w. the subj. of κατακοπῆναι, αὐτούς understood. — οἱ δέ, sc. ἔφασαν αὐτούς, *others (affirmed that they) having been left behind*, etc. — δ' οὖν introduces a fact opposed to a mere report or supposition: *and it is certain that these were*, etc. Cf. note § 12, above.

§ 26. πρὸς ἑαυτόν, (*to come*) *to himself*, i. e. Cyrus. — οὔτε ... ἐλθεῖν, *that he had neither at any time before entered into the power (lit. into the hands) of any one superior to himself*, etc. — Κύρω, sc. εἰς χεῖρας. — ἔλαβε, sc. Συέννεσις.

§ 27. Κύρος δέ, sc. ἔδωκε. — τὴν χώραν ... ἀρπάζεσθαι depends on ἔδωκε; so also ἀπολαμβάνειν with its object τὰ ... ἀνδράποδα: lit. *and that his country should no longer be plundered: and (he gave him permission) to take back*, etc. — ἦν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, *if they* (i. e. Syennësis and the Cilicians) *should anywhere meet with* (them, i. e. the slaves).

## CHAP. III.

The Greeks refuse to proceed farther, suspecting the real object of the expedition; but on being assured that Cyrus was leading them against Abrocomas, who was somewhere on the Euphrates, and with the promise of higher pay, they consent to resume the march. Clearchus is the principal agent in bringing about this result.

§ 1. οὐκ ἔφασαν ἵνα, *denied that they would go*; or, more simply, *refused to go*. ἵνα is often fut. H. 405. 1. Rem. a. K. § 137. Rem. 3. — τοῦ πρόσω: partitive gen. (*a step*) of the way forward. H. 574. e. K. § 158. Rem. 2. — οὐ φημί: see Lex. φημί. — ἐπὶ τούτῳ, *for this purpose*, i. e. to go against the king. — ἐβιάζετο. H. 702. K. § 152. Rem. 4.

§ 2. μικρόν: see Lex. μικρός. — ἐξέφυγε: ἐκφεύγω, stem and changes? H. 326. 425. 16. K. § 100. 1. (b.) — τὸ μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι: obj. of ἐξέφυγε, *he narrowly escaped that he should not be stoned to death*; or, more simply, *he narrowly escaped being stoned to death*. For this use of μὴ w. the infin. in connection with verbs of negative meaning, such as hindering, etc., see H. 838. K. § 177. 7. The negative in this case is not comm. rendered. — ὅτι οὐ δυνήσῃσαι, *that he would* (lit. *will*) *not be able*. H. 785. a. K. § 188. 4. — ἑδάκρυε . . . ἑστώς: lit., *standing he wept*; in an Eng. idiom, *he stood and wept*. For irregularity in form and meaning, see H. 305. 416. 1. K. § 131. Rem. 2. § 134. 3. — τοιάδε, *somewhat as follows*: τάδε, *as follows*, would denote more accuracy in the report of what was said. The same distinction prevails between τοιαῦτα and ταῦτα, referring to what precedes.

§ 3. ἄνδρες: see Lex. ἀνὴρ. — μὴ shows that θαυμάζετε is imperat., *be not*, etc. — πράγμασιν: const.? H. 611. a. K. § 161. 2. (c.) — φεύγοντα, *while a fugitive*: cf. note 1, 1, 7. — οὐκ . . . ἐμοί, *I did not lay (them) up for my own private advantage*: κατεθέμην; state the principal uses of the mid. voice. H. 687. ff. K. § 150. 3. — ἀλλά before οὐδέ is rare in the Greek of this period; but occurs oftener in later writers. Matthiæ renders *nein auch nicht*, *no, nor did I*, etc. — καθηδυσάθησα . . . ἐδαπάνων: the aor. and impf. differ how? H. 701. 705. K. § 152. 8, 9, 10.

§ 4. ἐτιμωρούμην, sc. αὐτοῦς. Force of the mid. voice here? H. 691. K. § 150. 3. (b.) See Lex. τιμωρέω. Observe that the reflexive relation expressed by the Greek mid. is often not represented in Eng. — μεθ' ὑμῶν: cf. note 1, 2, 20. — ἐξελαύνων βον

λομένους, *by driving them ... when they wished*. H. 788. ff. K. § 176. 1. — "Ελλήνας and γῆν: objects of ἀφαιρείσθαι. H. 553. K. § 160. 4. — εἰ τι δέοιτο, *if he should need anything*: δέομαι comm. takes the gen. H. 575. K. § 158. 5. (a.) It takes for the most part only neut. pronouns, seldom neut. adjectives, in the accus. — ἀνθ' ὧν = ἀντὶ τούτων ᾧ, *in return for those things which I had experienced as favors (εὖ ἔπαθον)*, or, more freely, *in return for the favors which I had received*.

§ 5. ἀνάγκη, sc. ἐστί. — προδόντα agrees with the implied subj. of χρῆσθαι. The dat. προδόντι, agreeing with μοι, would also be grammatical. Cf. note on λαβόντα, 1, 2, 1. — δ' οὖν, *but certainly*: cf. note 1, 2, 12 and 25. — ὃ, τι ... πείσομαι, *I will suffer whatever may be necessary*: πείσομαι fr. πάσχω takes the accus., fr. πείθομαι the dat. — οὐποτε ... οὐδεὶς: a negative followed by a compound neg. of the same kind to strengthen the negation; *no one ever*. H. 843. K. § 177. 6. — "Ελλήνας: indefinite; implying *any Greeks*; τοὺς "Ελλήνας, definite, denoting *the Greeks* just referred to, i. e. those whom he may have led among the barbarians. — εὐλόμην: force of the mid. voice?

§ 6. πείθεσθαι: force of the mid. here? — ἔπεσθαι τινι, *to follow any one*: ἔπ. σύν τινι, *to follow in company with any one*: ἔπ. ἅμα τινι, *to follow at the same time with any one*: ἔπ. μετά τινος, *to follow participating with any one*. — ἂν ... εἶναι τίμιος, *that I should be honorable*. Const. of τίμιος? H. 774. 775. K. § 172. 3. — ὑμῶν: const.? H. 584. f. K. § 157. — ἱκανός: const.? cf. τίμιος. — ὥς ἐμοῦ, κτέ.: gen. abs., *as if I were about to go*, or, more freely, *be assured that I will go*, etc.: ἰόντος; cf. note on ἰέναι, § 1, above. — ὑμεῖς, sc. ἦγε.

§ 7. οἱ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου, *both those of him himself*: αὐτοῦ intens. here, Lat. *ipse*; ἐκείνου: cf. note 1, 2, 15. — οἱ ἄλλοι, *the others*, i. e. those of the other generals. — ὅτι, with its clause, is explanatory of ταῦτα, *these things, that he refused*, etc. — φαῖν: orat. obliq. H. 734. ff. K. § 188. — πορεύομαι: what is a deponent pass.? a dep. mid.? H. 413. K. § 118. Rem. Do depon. verbs show the reflexive meaning of the mid. voice? H. 692. K. § 150. Rem. 5. — ἐπήνεσαν, sc. αὐτόν: peculiarities in conjugation of ἐπαινέω. See Lex.; also H. 420. 4. K. § 98. (b.) — παρά is used in this section w. gen. dat. and acc. Difference in meaning?

§ 8. τοῦτοις: const.? H. 611. K. § 161. 3. — μετεπέμπετο: mark the force of the imperf., *continued sending for*, or *repeatedly*

sent for. — πέμπων, κτέ., *sending a messenger told him*, etc. — μεταπέμπεσθαι, *to continue*, etc. Cf. μετεπέμπετο, above.

§ 9. θ': how does τέ become θ'? — τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ, *those who had come to him*, i. e. from Xenias and Pasion. αὐτῷ: const.? H. 605. K. § 284. Rem. 2. L. G. — τὸν βουλόμενον, *the one who desired*, i. e. *any one who desired* (to be present in the assembly), limited by τῶν ἄλλων as gen. of the whole. — τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου κτέ., *the relations of Cyrus are manifestly just the same* (lit. *so*) *towards us, as ours towards him*. δῆλον ὅτι (also written δηλονότι) is often placed thus in the midst of a sentence and used as adv. — ἐκείνου στρατ., *soldiers of his*. Cf. note on ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, 1, 1, 8.

§ 10. καὶ ... αὐτοῦ, *even though he continues to send for (me)*. — τὸ μὲν μέγιστον, *chiefly*. The correlative clause is ἔπειτα instead of ἔπειτα δέ. Cf. πρῶτον μὲν ... εἵτα, § 2. — ἐψενσμένος: force of the mid. here? H. 690. K. § 150. Rem. 3. — δεδιὼς κτέ., like αἰσχυνόμενος, is closely connected with οὐκ ἐθέλω, κτέ., the participles here denoting cause: *I am not willing to go (to him) ... because I fear that having taken me he may inflict punishment (on me) for those things in which he supposes*, etc. ὧν = τούτων ᾧ. The relative is attracted (from the acc.) to the case of the omitted antecedent. H. 808. K. § 182. 6. ὧν is gen. of cause. H. 577. K. § 158. 6. II.

§ 11. ἡμῶν αὐτῶν. H. 235. K. § 57: const.? H. 576. K. § 158. 6. 1. (b.) — βουλευέσθαι: force of the mid. here? H. 690. a. K. § 150. 3. (b.) — ὃ, τι (or ὃ τι), fr. ὅστις, is interrog. for an indirect, as τίς, τί is interrog. for a direct question. — ἐκ τούτων: see Lex. ἐκ. — αὐτοῦ, adv.: see Lex. — σκεπτέον εἶναι, sc. ἡμῖν, *that we must consider*, etc. H. 804. ff. K. § 168. 1 and 2. — ὅπως ... ἄπιμεν, *how we shall go away*, etc., connect in idea w. σκεπτέον ... εἶναι. Tense of ἄπιμεν? see note on ἵεναι, § 1. — στρατηγοῦ and ιδιώτου limit ὄφελος, *there is no profit either in general*, etc.

§ 12. ἀνὴρ, i. e. Cyrus; sc. ἐστίν. — πολλοῦ: const.? H. 584. e. K. § 158. 7. (γ.) — ᾧ ἂν ... ᾗ, *to whomsoever he may be*, etc. See Lex. ἄν. — αὐτοῦ: connect w. πόρρω. H. 589. K. § 158. Rem. 1. (d.)

§ 13. ἐκ: see Lex. — ἐγίγνωσκον: see Lex. — ἐκείνου, i. e. Clearchus. — μένειν and ἀπίεναι depend on ἀπορία. H. 767. K. § 306. 1. (d.) L. G.

§ 14. εἰς δὲ δῆ: correlative with οἱ μὲν and οἱ δέ above, *some ... others ... but one particularly*. — ἐλᾶσθαι, fr. αἰρέω, depends

on εἶπε, *proposed*. — βούλεται: for liveliness of narration instead of βούλοιτο. H. 734. b. K. § 188. 4. — ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ... στρατεύματι. This clause is not a part of the speech, but is thrown in as explanatory, to show how absurd the preceding proposal was. — συσκευάζεσθαι, like ἐλίσθαι and ἀγοράζεσθαι, depends on εἶπε; so also the following infinitives in this section. Point out the force of the mid. in all these verbs. — ἐλθόντας, sc. αὐτοὺς subj. of αἰτεῖν. — Κύρον, πλοῖα: const. ? H. 553. K. § 160. 4. — εἰάν ... διδῶ, instead of εἰ ... διδοίη; ἀπάξει instead of ἀπάγοι or ἀπαγάγοι. Cf. note on βούλεται, above. — ταχίστην: see Lex. ταχύς. — προκαταληφμένους, *persons to pre-occupy*, etc.: obj. of πέμψαι. — φθάσωσι ... καταλαβόντες, *may have anticipated (us) in having occupied (them)*. For φθάνω w. particip. see H. 801. K. § 175. 3. — ὧν limits πολλοὺς as partitive gen., and χρήματα as gen. of possession. It relates to οἱ Κίλικες. — ἔχομεν ἀνηπακότες denotes the continued possession: *from whom having taken many captives*, etc., *we still possess them*. — τοσοῦτον, *thus much*, i. e. *only thus much*, directing attention to the brevity of his speech.

§ 15. ὡς ... ἐμέ: acc. abs. H. 793. K. § 176. Rem. 2. — στρατηγίαν: see Lex.; cognate-acc. w. στρατηγήσοντα. H. 547. K. § 159. 2. — μηδεὶς ... λεγέτω, *let no one of you speak as if I were about*, etc. — δι' αἷ, *on account of which*, or simply, *why*. — ποιητίον: see Lex. — ὡς δέ, sc. ἕκαστος λεγέτω (suggested by μηδεὶς λεγέτω), *but let each of you say that*, or *entertain the opinion that*, etc. — τῷ ἀνδρὶ ... πείσομαι, *I shall yield to*, etc. Cf. note on πείσομαι, § 5. — ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε, *whom you shall have chosen*; ἂν w. aor. subjunc. H. 747. a. K. § 152. Rem. 3. — ἥ δυνατόν μάλιστα: see Lex. ἥ. — ὅτι ... ἐπίσταμαι. It was admitted by all that he knew how to govern (ἄρχειν); hence the force of καί, *that I know how to be governed also*. — μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων: added for emphasis; lit. *as any other one also especially of men*, i. e. *as well as any other one among men*.

§ 16. τοῦ κελεύοντος, *of the person urging*, etc., limits εὐθέειαν. — ὥσπερ ... ποιουμένων: pres. in vivid narration for fut. H. 699. a. K. § 255. Rem. 3. L. G., *just as if Cyrus would make the march back again*, i. e. *just as if Cyrus would return*, not prosecuting the expedition any farther, and so have no need of his ships. Kühner and some others read μή before ποιουμένων, and translate *quasi retro Cyrus navigaturus non esset*. — ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τοῦτου: what other const. occurs w. αἰτεῖν? Cf. § 14. — φ before λυμαινόμεθα:



const.? H. 597. K. § 161. 2. (c.) (δ.) end. — λυμαινόμεθα: see H. 734. b. K. § 188. 4. —  $\phi$  before  $\alpha\upsilon\upsilon$   $\kappa\acute{\iota}\rho\omicron\varsigma$  διδ $\phi$ : object of διδ $\phi$ , attracted fr. acc. to the case of its antecedent ἡγεμόνι. H. 808. K. § 182. 6. — τί ... προκαταλαμβάνειν is comm. understood thus: *what hinders Cyrus from giving orders to pre-occupy the heights also against us?* ἡμῖν: const.? H. 597. K. § 161. 2. (c.) (δ.) end. καί before τὰ ἄλλα implies: as he could harm us in other respects, so also, by pre-occupying the heights.

§ 17. ἐγώ is not expressed unless there is some emphasis on it. — γάρ refers to what is implied above:—I have no confidence in the plans proposed; *for I for my part should be reluctant*, etc. — μή, lest, after δκνοῖν as after a verb of fearing. — τρήρεσι: const.? H. 604. end. K. § 161. 1. (β.) —  $\phi$ : object of δοίη; cf. note on  $\phi$  before  $\alpha\upsilon\upsilon$ , § 16. — ὅθεν = ἐκεῖσε ὅθεν, *to a place from which*, the antecedent of a relative adv. like that of a relat. pron. being often omitted. — οἷόν τε: see Lex. οἶος. — ἄκοντος Κύρου: gen. abs.; ἐκὼν and ἄκων, which resemble participles, do not comm. take ὄντος or ὄντων in the gen. abs. — λαβεῖν: see Lex. λαμβάνω. See also H. 801. K. § 175. 3.

§ 18. οἷτινες: sc. εἰσίν. — τί ... χρήσθαι: see Lex. χρᾶσμαι. Const. of τί? H. 552. K. § 159. 3. (7.); τί is less comm. than  $\delta$ , τι in an indirect question. H. 682. K. § 187. 3. (9.) —  $\eta$ : fr. εἰμί. — οἷαπερ = τοιαύτη οἷανπερ. The antecedent is omitted and the relat. attracted to its case. οἷανπερ would have the same const. as τί above. Render, *similar to that in which he formerly also employed the mercenaries*. For the allusion, cf. 1, 1, 2. — ἡμᾶς: subj. of ἐπεσθαί. The clause depends on δοκεῖ above. — τοῦτο, i. e. Κύρῳ: depends on σύν in compos.

§ 19. τῆς πρόσθεν: sc. πράξεως. — ἀξιοῦν, and below ἀπαγγεῖλαι and βουλεύεσθαι w. its subj. acc. depend on δοκεῖ, § 18. —  $\eta$  ...  $\eta$ , *that he having either persuaded should lead us, or*, etc., depends on ἀξιοῦν. — πρὸς φιλίαν, and below πρὸς ταῦτα: see Lex. πρὸς. — φίλοι: adj. agreeing w. the subj. of ἐποίμεθα, *in following, we should follow (being) friendly to him*, etc. Force of the mid. in φαίνεται and βουλεύεσθαι? H. 688. ff. K. § 150. 3.

§ 20. ἔδοξε ταῦτα: notice the asyndeton (omission of the connective). H. 854. K. § 325. L. G. Similar instances, when the verb stands first and the demonstrative follows, are numerous. — τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ, *the things which seemed good for the army*, i. e. *what had been resolved on for the army*. — τὴν δίκην: obj. of

ἐπιθεῖναι. For the force of the article, see H. 527. c. K. § 148. 1. See also Lex. δίκη.

§ 21. ἄγει: in lively narration for ἄγοι. H. 734. b. K. § 188. 4. — οὐ: relat. attracted to the case of the omitted antecedent. Cf. note on φ before ἄν, § 16; also οἵαπερ, § 18. — τοῦ ... τῷ: H. 527. e. K. § 148. Rem. 6.—Define the act. mid. and pass. voices. H. 684. ff. K. § 149.

## CHAP. IV.

The march from Tarsus to the Euphrates. Manner of passing the Pylæ Syria;—desertion of Xenias and Pasion;—conduct of Cyrus towards them;—arrival at Thapsacus on the Euphrates;—Cyrus discloses his real object;—dissatisfaction of the army;—at length, influenced by fresh promises and by the example of Menon, the whole army crosses the Euphrates.

§ 1. Ἴσσοῦς: afterwards celebrated for the great battle between Alexander and Darius III. in the year 333 B. C. — οἰκουμένην: see Lex. οἰκέω. Define the pass. voice. State some points in which it differs from the Latin pass. H. 693. ff. K. § 150. 4. ff.

§ 2. αἱ ... νῆες: mentioned above, 1, 2, 21. — ἐπ' αὐταῖς, *over them*, denoting command. In § 3, ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, *on the ships*, denotes situation only. — ἡγείτο αὐτῶν, *led them*, i. e. the entire fleet; while Pythagoras was admiral of the Peloponnesian ships only. — ἐξ Ἐφέσου: connect w. ἡγείτο. — πρὸς αὐτόν, *against him*, i. e. Tissaphernes. — Define the imperf. tense, and point out its force in each of the verbs in this section. H. 701. K. § 152. 9. ἐπολιόρκει and ἐπολέμει are considered by Krüger and Hertlein as used here for the pluperf.; but Küh., Voll. and others, deny that the imperf. can ever be thus used.

§ 3. μετάπεμπος: force of the verbal adj. in -τος, as distinguished fr. the verbal in -ρέος? H. 398. K. § 234. 1. (i.) L. G. Cf. αἶρετοί, 1, 3, 21. — ἀποστάντες: intrans. in what tenses of the act.? H. 416. 1. K. § 181. Rem. 2.

§ 4. ἐντεῖθεν, *thence*, i. e. from Issi, or, as comm. written, Issus. Direction of the march? See map. — ἐνὶ πύλας, *to the pass*: the article is omitted, as often w. names of places. H. 530. a. K. § 148. Rem. (c.) — ἦσαν ... τεῖχη, *and these were two walls*. Thus Xen. describes somewhat indefinitely the pass itself; because fortified by a wall at each extremity. Notice ἦσαν w. neut. plur. Cf. note 1, 2, 23. Notice ταῦτα, neut., referring to πύλας. H. 503 and 513. b.

K. § 147. Rem. 1. — τὸ ἔσωθεν and τὸ ἔξω: sc. τεῖχος. For the use of ἔσωθεν and ἔξω, see H. 534. K. § 148. 8. What does τό, after ἔσωθεν and ἔξω, belong to? H. 533. K. § 148. 9. (a.) — μέσον: subst., see Lex. — τούτων: i. e. τῶν τευχῶν limits μέσον. — εὖρος: acc. of specification. H. 549. b. K. § 159. 3. (7.) — πλίθρον limits ποταμός. — ἦσαν agrees w. the predicate στάδιοι. H. 513. K. § 241. 6. L. G. — στάδιοι: gend. in sing. and plur., see Lex. — οὐκ ἦν: impers. *it was not possible*. — ἐφειστήκεσαν: the reading of Dind., Krüg., Hert., Matt. and Voll. Küh. reads ἐφειστήκεσαν, fr. ἐφίστημι. — This section may be better understood by the following diagram.



§ 5. ἀποβιβάζω and ἀποβαίνω: diff. in meaning? See Lex. — εἶσω, *within*, i. e. *between* the two walls: ἔξω, *without*, i. e. on the Syrian side; see plan, above: πνλῶν: connect with εἶσω as well as ἔξω: const.? H. 589. K. § 157. — καὶ βιασάμενοι, *and that they* (Cyrus and his army) *having overpowered the enemy*. For a similar change of subj. in two succeeding clauses, from the commander alone to the commander and men, see § 19. — φυλάττοιεν: sc. οἱ πολέμοιοι. — ὅπερ, *which very thing*, i. e. the keeping guard at the Syrian pass. — ἔχοντα, *because he had*. H. 789. c. K. § 176. 1. (b.) — Κύρον ... ὄντα, *that Cyrus was*, etc. Supplementary particip., H. 796. ff. K. § 175. Point out the distinction between the impf. and aor. as used in this section.

§ 6. *ἦν* : subj.? H. 535. K. § 148. Rem. 2. Notice the use of *ἦν* here, instead of *ἔστί*, assimilated to the form of the accompanying narration: so often. Cf. *ἦν*, § 1; *ἦσαν* and *ἦν*, § 4; *ἐνόμιζον*, § 9; *ἐχώρει*, 1, 5, 6. — *ὥρμουν*: fr. *ὥρμέω*. What is the impf. of *ὥρμάω*?

§ 7. *φιλοτιμηθέντες*: the allusion is explained 1, 3, 7. Is the aor. particip. always to be rendered as denoting past time? H. 717. a. K. § 257. 1. (d.). L. G. — *τοὺς στρατιώτας*: obj. of *ἔχειν*, *because Cyrus allowed Clearchus to retain*, etc. — *αὐτῶν*: notice its position. If the connection had required *αὐτῶν*, where would it stand?

H. 538. K. § 148. Rem. 8. Observe the important force of *τούς* after *αὐτῶν*: *their soldiers, those who had gone away*, etc. Without *τούς* it would mean, *their soldiers* (implying all of them) *after having gone away*, etc.; *τούς* makes the clause following it an attributive of *στρατιώτας*. H. 492. d. K. § 148. 9. (a.) — Force of *ὡς* before a particip.? See Lex. *ὡς*. — *εἶτα*: impf. 3d sing. fr. *εἶω*. For the augment, see H. 312. K. § 87. 3. — *ὅτι* introduces here the *oratio recta*. H. 734. K. § 188. — *ὡς ... ὄντας*, *on the ground that they were*, etc. See Lex. *ὡς*.

§ 8. *ἀπολελοίπασιν*: wherein does the Greek differ fr. the Latin perf.? The Greek pf. is always definite. H. 696. K. § 152. 5. — *ἐπιστάσθωσαν*: imperat. fr. *ἐπίσταμαι*. — *οἷχονται*: mention some verbs which in the pres. tense have a pf. meaning. H. 698. K. § 152. Rem. 1. — *οὐδ' ... οὐδεῖς*, *nor shall any one say*. When do two negatives strengthen the negation? H. 843. K. § 177. 6. — *χρῶμαι*, *make use of* (*him*, the person denoted by *τις*). — *αὐτοῖς*, though plur., refers to *τις* as collective in its force. — *ιόντων*, *let them* (i. e. *Xenias and Pasion*) *go*. — *κακίους*: nom. pl. H. 174. K. § 35. Rem. 4. — *καίτοι ... γε ... ἀλλ'*, *although I have indeed ... yet*, etc.: *γέ* adds emphasis to the preceding word. H. 850. 1. K. § 317. 2. L. G. — *φρονούμενα* refers to both nouns, *τέκνα* and *γυναικας*, considered as things. H. 511. Rem. 1. K. § 242. 1. (γ.) L. G.

§ 9. *ἥδιον* and *προθυμότερον*: how are the compar. and superl. of adverbs comm. formed? H. 228. K. § 54. — *πλήθρου* limits *ποταμόν*. Cf. *πλήθρων*, 1, 2, 23; *being (of) a plethron in width*. *πλήρη* agrees with *ποταμόν*. — Declens. of *πραέων*? H. 219. Rem. a. K. § 48. — *ἐνόμιζον* and *εἶων*: cf. note on *ἦν*, § 6; also *εἶα*, § 7. — *οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς*: sc. *ἀδικεῖν εἶων*. — *εἰς ζώνην δεδομένα*, *having been given for girdle-money, or given to supply her with girdles*. The tribute from different provinces of the Persian empire was often thus devoted to supply the various wants of the Persian queens. In what tenses are the pass. and mid. voices alike in form; and in what different?

§ 10. *ἐντεύθεν*: direction of the march? See map. — *οὐ ... πλήθρου*: Krüg. explains the const. thus: *οὐ τὸ εὐρὸς ἐστὶ εὐρος πλήθρου*, *whose width is (that of) a plethron*. — *τοῦ ... ἄρξαντος*, *the governor of Syria*: lit. *the one having governed Syria* (i. e. up to the time when Cyrus arrived). — *αὐτόν*, i. e. *παράδεισον*.

§ 11. *τετάρων σταδίων* is thought by Kiepert to be a mistake either of the memory or of the pen for *τετάρων πλείθρων*. —

ὀνόματι, *by name*: const.? H. 609. K. § 161. 4. The acc. would be far more comm., and Dind. reads here ὄνομα.

§ 12. αὐτοὺς ... κρίπτειν, *that they (the generals) knowing these things long before, concealed them.* φημί takes comm. the acc. and infin.; while λέγω comm. has ὅτι or ὡς and a finite mood. — εἰάν ... διδῶ, H. 747 and 750. K. § 185. 2. (3.), *unless some one (referring of course to Cyrus) should give, etc.* — ὥσπερ, κτέ., *just as also (money was given) to the former (soldiers) who went up, etc.* For the allusion, see 1, 1, 2. — Κύρου and τοῦ Κύρου: rule for the article w. proper names? H. 530. a. K. § 148. 5. — καὶ ταῦτα ... ἰόντων, *and that too, though they were not going, etc.*: καὶ ταῦτα is often thus rendered; the const. may be explained by understanding ἐδόθη, *and these things were given, though, etc.*: ἰόντων: gen. abs., sc. αὐτῶν. Does the Greek gen. abs. differ from the Latin ablative abs.? H. 791. K. § 312. Rem. 1, L. G. The dat. ἰοῦσιν, agreeing w. τοῖς προτ., would have been grammatical.

§ 13. δώσειν: the fut. infin. is the usual const. w. ὑπισχνέομαι; yet see παύσασθαι, 1, 2, 2. — μνᾶς: value of the silver mina? see Lex. — ἤκωσι and καταστήσῃ: cf. note on εἰάν ... διδῶ, 1, 3, 14; see also H. 728. K. § 183. 3. (b.) — καταστήσῃ: what tenses are intrans. in the act.? see Lex. ἴστημι. — τὸ πολὺ, *the greater part*, lit. *the much*. — πρὶν ... εἶναι, *before it was plain*: H. 768, 769. K. § 183. Rem. — τί ποιήσουσιν: the form of a direct question, for liveliness of narration; and, since it depends on this clause, ἔψονται has also the form of *orat. recta*. We render the whole more naturally as indirect: *what the rest of the soldiers would do, whether they would follow, etc.*

§ 14. πλέον strengthens the idea of προ-. — ὑμᾶς ... διαβῆναι, *that it is expedient for you to cross*: ὑμᾶς, subj. of διαβῆναι; χρῆναι, impers., depends on φημί. — πρὶν ... εἶναι, *before it is plain*: cf. note § 13. — ὃ, τι, fr. ὅστις: differs how in use fr. τί? H. 682. K. § 62. Rem. 1; differs how fr. ὃ? The last is never interrog. — ἀποκρινοῦνται: formation of the fut. of liquid verbs? H. 373. K. § 111.

§ 15. αἱτιοί: adj. qualifying ὑμεῖς, *the cause of this*, i. e. of their voting to follow. — ἄρξαντες: force of the particip. here. H. 789. c. K. § 176. b. Does the aor. differ in meaning from the perf. particip.? H. 715 and 717. K. § 257. 2. L. Gram.; G. § 18. 4. § 24. — χάριν εἶσεται (fr. οἶδα); see Lex. χάρις: ἀποδώσει, sc. χάριν. Cf. Lat. *gratiam habere* and *referre*. — τῷ τις καὶ ἄλλος: cf. 1, 3, 15. —

ὑμῖν ... εἰς, *but you, (being) most faithful, as if alone obeying, he will employ both for, etc.* — καὶ ἄλλον ... Κύρον, *and anything else, whatever you shall want, I know that you will obtain from Cyrus as a friend.* ἄλλον may depend as gen. on τεύξεσθε, since τυγχάνειν can take two genitives; or it may be instead of ἄλλο by inverted attraction. H. 817. K. § 182. Rem. 4. The latter explanation is preferred.

§ 16. διαβεβηκότας, sc. αὐτούς, *that they had crossed over*: const.? H. 796. ff. K. § 175. — ἦσθῃ: fr. ἦδομαι. — τῷ στρατεύματι ... εἶπεν, *said to the army* (i. e. said it through the messenger whom he sent: cf. ἔλεγε, 1, 3, 8). — νομίζετε is in form either indic. or imperat. Which is it in meaning? H. 832. ff. K. § 177. 3, 4, 5. Force of μή w. pres. imper.? H. 723. a. K. § 153. Rem. 2.

§ 17. οἱ στρατιῶται, *the soldiers*, i. e. those of Menon. — Μένωνι: const.? H. 597. K. § 161. 2. (c.) (δ.) end. — καὶ δῶρα, *gifts also*, not merely thanks, as to the soldiers. — τῶν διαβαινόντων limits οὐδεὶς. How does the pres. represent an action? H. 695. ff. K. § 152. 12. end.

§ 18. γένοιτο: why optat.? H. 731. K. § 188. 3. — εἰ μή: see Lex. εἰ. — ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, *but (that it was passable only) with boats.* — διαβῆ: see H. 739. K. § 188. 4. — τὸν ποταμόν: subj. of ὑποχωρῆσαι; both together depend on ἐδόκει, *it seemed that the river manifestly receded before Cyrus as, etc.*; “a mere piece of flattery to Cyrus,” says Grote. See Hist. Greece, ch. 69, note on this passage.

§ 19. ἐντεῦθεν: direction of the march? see map. — Were the boundaries of Syria the same in the time of Xen. as in the Roman period? see Lex. — ἀφικνούνται: cf. note on βιασάμενοι, § 5.

## CHAP. V.

The march on the left bank of the Euphrates to a point opposite Charmande. Sufferings of the army in the desert;—dangerous quarrel of Clearchus and Menon, in which the Greeks generally became involved, settled by the expostulation of Cyrus.

§ 1. εἴ τι, *whatever*, is collective; hence ἅπαντα, plur. — ἦσαν: another instance of plur. verb w. neut. plur. subj. — ἐνῆν: sc. τοῦτω τῷ τόπῳ. — εὐώδη: see Addenda.

§ 2. Σηρία: sc. ἐνῆν or ἐνῆσαν. — διώκοι, πλησιάζοιεν, Σηρῶεν: force of the optat.? H. 729. b. K. § 182. 8. (c.) — προδραμόντες,

fr. προτρέχω. — ἔστασαν: see H. 305. K. § 134. 3. Difference in meaning between ἵστασαν, ἔστασαν and ἔστησαν (1st and 2d aor.)? — πολὺ qualifies ἔαπτον, *much swifter*. — ταυτὸν = τὸ αὐτό. H. 234. K. § 60. Rem. — λαβεῖν, sc. αὐτούς.

§ 3. ἀπεσπᾶτο has for its subj. στρουθός, which is either masc. or fem. — τοῖς μὲν . . . χρωμένη: see Lex. χράομαι. — αἶρουσα, sc. τὰς πτέρυγας, *raising (them) up*. — ἂν . . . ἀνιστῇ: force of this const.? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (3.) — ἔστι, *it is possible*. When written ἔστι, when ἐστί, and when ἐστι? H. 406. Rem. b. and 111. c. K. § 16. 1 and 4.

§ 4. ἦν and περιεπεῖτο: cf. note on ἦν, 1, 4, 6. — ὄνομα . . . Κορσωτή, *and its name was Corsote*; lit. *Corsote was a name to it*. — Μάσκα: declens.? H. 136. Rem. d. K. § 27. Rem. 1.

§ 5. Direction of the march? see map. — οὐδὲ . . . δένδρον, *nor anything else, not even a tree*. — οἱ ἐνοικούντες, sc. ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ. — ἦγον, *took (them, i. e. the mill-stones)*. — καὶ . . . ἔζων (fr. ζάω), *and lived by purchasing corn in return (for the mill-stones)*.

§ 6. ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ. We learn from Herod. 1. 155 and 157, that the elder Cyrus, after the conquest of Lydia, forbade the use of arms to the inhabitants, and that henceforth they devoted their attention to trade. — τὴν καπίθην: in apposition w. the obj. of πρίασθαι (σίτον understood). For the force of the article, see H. 527. c. K. § 148. 1: *the (usual) measure of*, etc. — σίγλων: const.? H. 578. K. § 158. 7. (γ.) — δύναται: see Lex. — Ἀττικοὺς agrees w. the principal word ὀβολοὺς; but qualifies both. H. 511. h. K. § 242. 1. (b.) L. G. Value of the ὀβολός? see Lex. The price of corn in the army at this time was about sixty times as much as the usual price at Athens. — ἐχώρει: cf. note on ἦν, 1, 4, 6.

§ 7. ἦν . . . οὗς = ἐνίους, *some*. H. 812. K. § 182. Rem. 2. Lit. *some of these stages he marched very long*, i. e. *some of these stages which he accomplished were very long*. ἦν οὗς depends on ἤλαυνεν as cogn. acc. H. 547. K. § 159. 2. — βούλοιο: cf. note on διώκοι, § 2. — καὶ δὴ often introduces something specially emphatic: *And what was worthy of special notice, on a certain occasion when*, etc. — φανέντος, gen. abs., predicated of στενοχωρίας as well as πηλοῦ. H. 511. h. K. § 242. 1. (b.) L. G. — τοῦ . . . στρατοῦ depends on λαβόντας. H. 574. K. § 158. Rem. 2: *having taken a part of the*, etc.

§ 8. ποιεῖν: notice the force of the pres. here. H. 696. K. § 152.

12. — ἦν: impers., *it was possible*. — κάνδυσ: see Dict. Antiqq., art. Candys. — ἔτυχεν ἑστηκώς: cf. note on παρὼν ἐτύγχανε, 1, 1, 2: ἑστηκώς: what tense in form? in meaning? H. 416. 1. K. § 131. Rem. 2. — ἔντο: force of the mid.? see Lex. — δράμοι: define the optat. mood. H. 721. ff. K. § 153. 1. b. (β); force here? H. 748. 754. a. 758. K. § 185. 2. (4.) and Rem. 4. — περὶ νίκης, *for victory*, in allusion to the Grecian games. — καὶ μάλα πρανοῦς, *even very steep*. — τούτους, *those (well-known)*, etc. — ἀναξυρίδας: see Dict. Antiqq., art. Bracæ. — ἔνιοι δὲ καί, sc. ἔχοντες. — σὺν τούτοις, i. e. the expensive articles of dress just mentioned. — ὤσσον ἢ ὥς: lit. *sooner than as*, or, *in a way sooner than*; ὥς is here a relat. adv. denoting manner. We should render the phrase simply, *sooner than*: τίς ἂν φέτο (fr. οἶομαι), *one would suppose*. Force of ἂν w. impf. indic.? H. 746. K. § 153. 2. a. (α). Perhaps the protasis might be thus: εἰ μὴ εἶδεν, *sooner than one would suppose, if he had not seen it*; but the contrary was true: *one did see it, and consequently it became credible*.

§ 9. ὥς: force before a particip.? see Lex.; ὥς after δηλὸς ἦν or ἐστὶ is rare. — ὅπου μὴ, *except where*, lit. *where not*. — ὅσω τοσοῦτῳ: see Lex. τοσοῦτος. — ἔλθοι: force of the optat. here? H. 760. d. K. § 182. 8. (d.) — μαχεῖσθαι, f. infin., depends on νομίζων. — σχολαιότερον, sc. ἔλθοι. — συναγείρεσθαι: also depends on νομίζων: force of the pres. infin.? H. 714. K. § 152. 12. — συνιδεῖν ... ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, lit. *to the one giving his attention, the king's government was being strong to view in general* (συνιδεῖν): τῷ προσέχοντι: const.? H. 601. a. K. § 284. 3. (10.) L. G. — συνιδεῖν: const.? depends on ἰσχυρὰ. H. 767. K. § 171. Freely rendered, *it was plain to one turning his attention towards it, that the king's government was strong in*, etc. — τῷ ... δυνάμεις, *from the fact that the forces were widely scattered* (dat. of respect w. ἀσθενής, which is in the same const. w. ἰσχυρὰ). — εἰ ... ἐποίετο: force of this const.? H. 745. K. § 185. 2. (1.)

§ 10. κατὰ: see Lex. — διαβαίνοντες, sc. τὸν ποταμόν. — συνέσπων: συσπᾶω. — τὸ ὕδωρ: subj. of ἄπτεσθαι. — Why τῆς before ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος? H. 533. 534. K. § 148. 9. (a.) — τοῦτο, i. e. μελίη. See H. 503. 522. K. § 147. (b.) Rem. 1.

§ 11. τῶν τε ... καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρ., *both the soldiers of Menon and those*, etc., gen. abs. w. ἀμφιλεξάντων. What does the gen. abs. denote? How best translated? H. 790. K. § 176. 1 and Rem. 1. — ἀδικεῖν: see Lex. — τὸν τοῦ Μέν., sc. στρατιώτην. — ἐνέβα-



λεν, sc. αὐτῷ. — ὁ δέ, i. e. the soldier of Menon. — ἔλεγεν, *related* (the affair).

§ 12. σὺν ὀλίγοις, κτέ., lit. *with a few those about him*, i. e. *with a few attendants*. — οὐπω ἦκεν, *had not yet come*: verbs which in the pres. are perf. in meaning (esp. ἦκω and οἴχομαι) often have the imperf. in the sense of aor. or plupf. Cf. 1, 2. 6. — ἔησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ, lit. *casts (at him) with his axe*; Eng. idiom, *casts his axe (at him)*. ἔημι in this and similar expressions is apparently intrans. — οὗτος: the same one as τὸς above. — αὐτοῦ, i. e. Clearchus: const.? H. 580. K. § 157. — ἄλλος, sc. ἦσι.

§ 13. ἑαυτοῦ: position of the reflex. ? of the pers. pron. ? H. 538. K. § 148. Rem. 8. — αὐτοῦ, adv. — τὰς ἀσπίδας . . . ζέντας, *having rested their shields on their knees*; indicating thus their readiness for an attack. — τούτων, i. e. the horsemen: οἱ πλείστοι, sc. ἦσαν. — ἐκπεπληγῆσθαι: notice the force of the perf. infin. here; marking the result of the action as decisive and permanent: *so that they were (once for all) thoroughly frightened and ran*, etc. G. § 18. 3. Note. — οἱ δέ: used here as though οἱ μὲν had gone before: *others also* (soldiers of other generals). — ἔστασαν: cf. note, § 2.

§ 14. Πρόξενος: subj. of ἔθετο. — οὖν indicates that the sentence, interrupted by the parenthetical clause ἔτυχε γὰρ κτέ., is here resumed. Cf. Lat. *igitur*. — ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα: see Lex. τίθημι, (c.) — ποιεῖν: force of the pres. infin.? H. 714. K. § 152. 12. — ὅτι αὐτοῦ, κτέ., *because when he wanted little of being stoned to death*, etc.; αὐτοῦ, gen. abs. w. δεήσαντος; ὀλίγου, const.? H. 575. K. § 158. 5. (a.) — λέγοι, sc. Πρόξ.: why optat.? H. 734. K. § 188. 3. — αὐτοῦ refers back to the leading subj. of the sentence, ὁ δέ, i. e. Clearchus.

§ 15. ἐν τούτῳ: sc. τῷ χρόνῳ. — καὶ Κύρος, *Cyrus also*. — τὰ παλτά: τὰ indicates that the παλτά belonged to his ordinary armor. H. 527. a. K. § 148. — σὺν . . . πιστῶν, *with those who were present of his most faithful attendants*, implying that part of them were still on the march and had not yet come up.

§ 16. οἱ . . . Ἕλληνες: notice here, the nom. w. the article, connected by καὶ to the voc.: οἱ . . . Ἕλ. in apposition w. ὑμεῖς understood, subj. of ἴστε. — εἰ . . . συνάψετε, νομίζετε: force of this form of hypothetical period? H. 745. K. § 185. 2. (1.) — κατακεκόψεσθαι: fut. pf. H. 713. K. § 72. 111. (7.) — κακῶς . . . ἐχόντων, gen. abs., *for if our affairs*, etc. H. 790. d. K. § 176. 1. (c.) — οὗτοι . . . βάρβαροι: substantives w. οὗτος, etc., comm. take the

article. H. 538. a. K. § 148. 10. (g.) Here οὗς ὁρᾶτε expresses emphatically the idea of an article, and hence stands instead of it. — πολεμιώτεροι, *more hostile*, perhaps (as Hert. suggests) from envy, because Cyrus had shown a preference for the Greeks.

§ 17. ἐν αὐτῷ ἐγένετο: see Lex. γίγνομαι. Force of ἐν and dat. w. verbs expressing motion? H. 618. a. K. § 300. 3. (a.) L. G. — κατὰ χώραν: see Lex. χώραν. — ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα: see Lex. τίθημι, (a.)

## CHAP. VI.

Trial and condemnation of Orontes for conspiracy against Cyrus.

§ 1. ἐντεῖθεν: where was the army at this time? Cf. 1, 5, 5 and 10. — προϊόντων: sc. αὐτῶν, gen. abs. — οὗτοι: i. e. οἱ ἱππεῖς implied in the foregoing. — εἴ τι, *whatever*: cf. 1, 5, 1. — γένει, *by birth*. Const.? H. 608. K. § 161. 3. — τὰ πολέμια: const.? H. 549. K. § 159. 3. (7.) — λεγόμενος: see Lex. λέγω. — πολέμῃσας: sc. Κύρῳ.

§ 2. εἰ δοίη ... κατακάνοι ἄν: explain this form of hypothetical period. H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.) — τοὺς ... ἱππέας: obj. of κατακάνοι. With the following optatives, understand ἄν. — κωλύσειε: sc. αὐτούς. — τοῦ καίειν: use of the infin. here? H. 778. ff. K. § 178. Const.? H. 580. K. § 157. The obj. of καίειν is to be inferred fr. the above. — ποιήσειεν ὥστε: ποιεῖν is comm. followed by the infin. alone. The intended result is expressed here more emphatically by using ὥστε. — αὐτούς: subj. of δύνασθαι. — διαγγεῖλαι, *to announce (the fact, i. e. of having seen the army of Cyrus)*. Force of the aor. infin. as distinguished fr. the pres.? H. 716. a. K. § 152. 12; τοῦ καίειν, *from continuing to burn (everything useful)*; λαμβάνειν, *to proceed and take*.

§ 3. ὅτι, *to the effect that*. ἤξοι: why optat.? H. 736. K. § 188. 3. Force of the fut. optat.? H. 718. K. § 152. 6. — ὡς ... πλείστους, *as many as possible*. For ἂν δύνηται instead of δύναιτο, see H. 734. b. K. § 188. 4. — ἑαυτοῦ: reflex. referring to the obj. of ἐκέλευεν, sc. τὸν βασιλέα. H. 670. b. K. § 169. 5. (b.) — ὡς φίλιον: cf. ὡς φίλον, 1, 1, 2. — αὐτόν, i. e. Orontes. ὑποδέχεσθαι depends on φράσαι, and φράσαι on ἐκέλευεν. — ἐνῆν: subj.? ὑπομνήματα. Notice the prep. in compos. (ἐνῆν), and also before the noun. Such repetition is very comm.

§ 4. ἀναγνούς: see Lex. ἀναγιγνώσκω. — ἐπτά, *seven in number*, belongs to τοὺς ἀρίστους. — ἀγαγεῖν, and ἔσθαι: force of the aor. infin. as distinguished fr. the pres.? Cf. note § 2: τούτους, subj. of ἔσθαι. See Lex. τίθημι, (c.)

§ 5. ὅς γε, *since he indeed*. H. 822. K. § 334. 2. L. G. — τοῖς ἄλλοις, *to the others*, i. e. all in distinction from (αὐτῷ) Clearchus. — μάλιστα strengthens the idea of προτιμηθῆναι, *to be especially preferred in honor*. τῶν Ἑλλήνων limits ὅς. — τὴν κρίσιν ὡς ἐγένετο, *lit. the trial how it was conducted*, i. e. *how the trial was*, etc. Prolepsis; cf. note on τῶν βαρβάρων, κτέ., 1, 1, 5. — ἀπόρρητον, sc. ἡ κρίσις: a neut. predicate adj., though the subj. is fem. H. 522. K. § 147. (b.)

§ 6. ἄνδρες: see Lex. ἀνὴρ. — πρὸς: see Lex. — τουτουί: see H. 242. K. § 64. 5. Notice the demonst. pron. w. a subst. and without the article. See H. 538 and 530. a. K. § 148. Rem. 11. (b.) — ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ, and τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ: what need of the article? H. 538. c. K. § 148. 10. (a.) — αὐτός: meaning here? H. 669. b. K. § 169. Rem. 1. — ἐποίησα, κτέ., *I effected that it seemed good to him*, etc. Dif. between ὥστε w. the infin. and w. the indic.? H. 770. 771. K. § 186. Dif. between the aor. and pres. infin.? Cf. note on διαγείλαι, § 2.

§ 7. μετὰ ταῦτα: Cyrus now turns directly to Orontes. — ἔστιν ὃ, τι: *is there anything in which*, etc. — ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ, *he replied, no*. ὅτι introduces here a direct quotation, and is not rendered into Eng. When is οὐ accented? H. 104. K. § 13. (d.) — οὐδέν, *in nothing* (adv. acc.), a more emphatic neg. than οὐ. — ὃ, τι ἐδύνα: sc. *κακῶς ποιεῖν, in whatever you were able (to inflict damage)*. — ἔφη = ὠμολόγει, *Orontes acknowledged (it.)* — τὴν . . . δύναμιν, *your own power*, i. e. as the connection implies, how insufficient it was.

§ 8. Τί οὖν, *in what respect then*: const.? H. 552. a. K. § 159. 3. (7.) — φανερός, *manifest*: more conveniently translated as an adv., *openly plotting*, etc. See H. 488. Rem. c. K. § 175. Rem. 5. Cf. note on δηλός ἦν, 1, 2, 11. — ὅτι before οὐδέν and οὐδ' precedes a direct quotation, and is not to be translated. Cf. ὅτι, § 7. — οὐδέν ἀδικηθεῖς: sc. ἐπιβουλεύων σοι φανερός γέγονα. — ἄδικος: const.? H. 775. K. § 172. 3. — Ἥ γάρ, *yes for*: Ἥ implies ὁμολογῶ, hence the force of γάρ. — γενοίμην: sc. φίλος σοι καὶ πιστός. Force of this form of hypothetical period? H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.)

§ 9. ἀπύκνηται: see Lex. ἀποφάινω. — συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ κτέ.

—quite in accordance with the character of Clearchus. — ποιῆσθαι, φυλάττεσθαι: force of the mid. here? H. 689. K. § 150. 3. (b.) — ἀλλά: sc. ὥς, *but that there may be leisure*, etc. — τὸ ... εἶναι, *so far as this man is concerned*: for the use of εἶναι here, see H. 780. a. and 772. K. § 808. Rem. 3. L. G.

§ 10. ἔφη: sc. Κλέαρχος. — τῆς ζώνης, *by the girdle*: const.? H. 574. K. § 158. Rem. 2. — καί, *even*. — ἐξήγον has for subj. the antecedent of οἷς: *they to whom it was appointed led*, etc. — προσετάχθη: different kinds of impers. verbs? H. 494. a. K. § 238. 5. (b.) and Rem. 2. L. G. — οἵπερ, *the very persons who*: the antecedent of οἵπερ is subj. of εἶδον. — ἐπὶ θάνατον, after a verb of motion, denoting direction towards: ἐπὶ θανάτῳ denotes the object or end without the idea of motion. — ἄγοιτο: why optat.? H. 734. K. § 180. 5.

§ 11. οὔτε ... οὐδεὶς ..., *no one ever beheld Orontes either*, etc., the neg. repeated; see H. 843. K. § 177. 6. — εἰδώς, *knowing*, in opposition to the idea of εἰκάζων, *conjecturing*. — ἄλλοι: see Lex.

## CHAP. VII.

March to the vicinity of Cunaxa. Review of the forces at midnight;—Cyrus excites the enthusiasm of the Greeks by magnificent promises;—after passing a trench dug by the king, not expecting an immediate engagement, the army marches somewhat negligently.

§ 1. Ἐντεῖθεν: from what place? see 1, 5, 5 and map. — μέσας νύκτας, *midnight*: the plur. is used, says Krüger, because reference is had to the several watches (φυλακαί) into which the night was divided. — ἐδόκει: subj.? H. 763. K. § 238. Rem. 2. L. G. — εἰς ... ἔω denotes properly the notion of *arriving at and extending into*: comm. rendered *on the following morning*. H. 620. b. K. § 165. 2. — μαχομένον: define the particip.; differs how from the infin.? H. 762. K. § 174. 2. Force of the fut. particip.? H. 718. 789. d. K. § 176. 1. (e.) — κέρως: const.? H. 581. a. K. § 158. 7. (a.)

§ 2. ἅμα ... ἡμέρᾳ: see Lex. ἅμα. — περί: repeat the list of prepositions used w. three cases. — πῶς ἂν ... ποιοῖτο: force of the optat. here? H. 755 and 722. K. § 186. 2 and 182. 8. (e.) — Does αὐτός ever mean simply, *he*? No! H. 669. b. 668. K. § 169. Rem. 1.

§ 3. ἀπορῶν: force of the particip.? H. 789. c. K. § 176. 1. (b.) — ἀμείνων καὶ κρείττους, *better and braver*; a pleonasm for the

sake of emphasis. — προσέλαβον, sc. ὑμᾶς. — ὧπως, κτέ., *wherefore see that ye be men*, etc.: before ὧπως understand ὁρᾶτε or σκοπεῖτε. H. 756. a. K. § 330. Rem. 4. L. G. — ἧς: relat. attracted fr. accus. H. 808. K. § 182. 6. — ἀντὶ ... πάντων, *in preference to all that I have*: πάντων is incorporated in the relat. clause. H. 809. 2. K. § 182. 6.

§ 4. εἰδῆτε: fr. οἶδα. — γάρ: epexegetic, see Lex. — τὸ πλῆθος: sc. ἐστί. — ἂν ... ἀνάσχησθε (fr. ἀνέχομαι): force of this const.? H. 760. K. § 152. Rem. 3. — οἷους ... ἀνθρώπους: another instance of incorporation (cf. note on πάντων, § 3): = τοιούτους ἀνθρώπους οἷους, κτέ., *I seem to myself to be even ashamed of such men, as you shall know those in our country to be*. — ἡμῖν: ethical dat., i. e. dat. of the person who experiences emotion in view of the fact stated. H. 599. K. § 284. 3. (10.) (d.) L. G. The ethical dat. is often not translated. — ὑμῶν ... γενομένων: gen. abs.; force here? H. 790. d. K. § 176. 1. (c.): γενομένων, representing the action as *prior to that of the principal verb* (H. 717.), has here the force of a fut. perf.: *if you are true men and shall have been brave, I will*, etc. — τοῖς οἴκοι, *in the view of those at home*, limits ζηλωτόν. H. 601. K. § 161. 2. (d.) Formation and meaning of the verbal in -τός? H. 398. K. § 234. 1. (i.) L. G. — ἀπελθεῖν w. its subj. acc. (τὸν ... βουλόμενον ...) depends on ποιήσω. — ποιήσιν: when is the subj. of the infin. omitted? H. 774. ff. K. § 173. 2. — τῶν οἴκοι: neut.

§ 5. Καὶ μήν: see Lex. μήν. — διὰ τὸ κτέ., *on account of being at such (a point) of danger*, etc. Const. of εἶναι? H. 779. 780. K. § 173. 1. — ἂν δὲ κτέ.: meaning of this form of hypothetical period? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (3.) — μεμνησθαι: perf. in form but pres. in meaning. Here the pres. is used for the fut. to denote the certainty of the future event. H. 699. a. *They say you will not*, etc. — ἔνιοι: sc. φασίν. — οὐδ', κτέ., *not even if you should remember*, etc., *would you be able*, etc. Force of this const.? H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.) The apodosis in this sentence is in the infin. (δύνασθαι ἄν) instead of the optat. (δύναο ἄν), because it depends on φασίν. So also, in the preceding, the infin. depending on φασίν, instead of the indic. H. 751. 783. K. § 188. 2. For the form μεμνήω, see H. 319. b. and 393. a. K. § 122. 11.

§ 6. ἀλλά: often at the beginning of a speech made in reply to something going before. — ἔστι ... πρὸς ...: a const. denoting motion towards (H. 617. K. § 159. 1. (a.)) w. a verb of rest: ex-

tends towards the south, etc. — διὰ χειμῶνα: sc. οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι. — τούτων, these limits: gen. limiting μέσφ.

§ 7. ἦν ... νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ, κτέ.: force of this const.? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (4.) — τούτων, these domains (above mentioned). — When is ὥστε followed by a finite mode? H. 771. K. § 186. — μὴ οὐκ: after a verb of fearing. H. 846. K. § 177. Rem. — ἱκανούς: sc. φίλους.

§ 8. οἱ δὲ ... αὐτοὶ τε, and those who had heard these things both themselves, etc. — τινές: why accented? H. 108. K. § 15. 3. How distinguished from the interrog.? H. 105. b. K. § 14. (c.) — σφίσιν: differs how in use fr. ἐαυτοῖς? Always in Attic an indirect reflexive: ἐαυτοῦ, etc. is either direct or indirect. H. 670. a. 671. a. K. § 169. Rem 3. — ἔσται, would be; κρατήσωσιν, should conquer. For the const. see H. 735. 736. 737. K. § 188. 3 and 4.

§ 9. μὴ μάχεσθαι: i. e. not to engage personally in the battle. — τάττεσθαι: force of the mid.? See Lex.; also H. 688. K. § 150. 3. (a.) — Οἷε: what verbs in Attic always have -ει 2d pers. sing. indic. instead of -η? H. 863. Rem. a. K. § 82. 2. — Force of γάρ in a question? H. 870. b. K. § 324. 2. L. G. (Possibly I am mistaken) for do you (actually) think, etc. — παῖς, a child; ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, a brother of mine. H. 538. c. K. § 148. 10. (a.) — ταῦτα, these things, i. e. this power, this kingdom.

§ 10. ἀριθμός: H. 530. K. § 148. Rem. 5. — ἀσπίς: by meton. for those who carried the ἀσπίς, i. e. hoplites. — τὰ εἴκοσι: H. 528. K. § 148. 10. (f.)

§ 11. ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες: probably a great exaggeration. Cf. Plut. Artax. 13. Grote, chap. LXIX. — βασιλέως: for the frequent omission of the article with this word, see H. 530. a. K. § 148. Rem. 4. (c.)

§ 12. ἄρχοντες is generic: καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες seem to be used here in partitive apposition w. ἄρχ. to denote the different ranks of the commanders. Modern military titles would seem inappropriate here. We may render, both generals and leaders. Connect τέτταρες w. ἄρχοντες. — ἕκαστος: sc. ἄρχων. — ἡμέρας: const.? H. 550. K. § 159. 3. (6.)

§ 13. τῶν πολεμίων limits the subj. of ἡγγελλον, the antecedent of οἷ. — Difference in meaning between ταῦτά and ταῦτα?

§ 14. στρατεύματι: const.? H. 604. K. § 161. 1. (c.) — Force of μέσος in the predicate position? See Lex. The ditch indicated to Cyrus that the king was near, prepared for battle. Hence the

force of γάρ after κατά. — ὀργυιαί: in apposition w. τάφρος. The comm. const. would be gen. (ὀργυιῶν) limiting τάφρος. Cf. σταδίων, 1, 4, 11; πλέθρου, 1, 4, 4 and 9; ποδῶν, § 16 below. — What is meant by co-ordination? by subordination? H. 724. K. § 178. 1. What are the sentences in this section? H. 853. a. K. § 178. 9.

§ 15. ἐπὶ . . . παρασάγγας: might ἐπὶ be omitted? H. 550. K. § 159. 3. (6.) — μέχρι . . . τείχους: "the wall of Media, in the line here assigned to it, has no evidence to rest upon." Grote, chap. LXX, note. — ἐκάστη, each one (*from another*); in apposition w. the subj. of διαλείπουσι.

§ 16. πάροδος. The fact that the ditch was not completed to the river, indicates that Cyrus had surprised the king by the rapidity of his approach. — ποδῶν limits πάροδος. — ποιεῖ, πυνθάνεται: historic pres.; translate ποιεῖ as plupf. In this compound sentence, point out the *principal* and the *subordinate* sentence. H. 724. K. § 179. — προσελαύνοντα: supplementary particip. H. 796. ff. K. § 175.

§ 17. παρῆλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο: often w. a collective noun as subj. the verbs change thus from sing. to plur. Küh. — μὲν: correl. of δέ, § 20. — ὑποχωρούντων: connect w. ἵππων and ἀνθρώπων. — ἦσαν: cf. note 1, 2, 23.

§ 18. ὅτι, κτέ., *because while sacrificing previously, on the eleventh day*, etc. εἶπεν, sc. Σιλανός. — ὅτι before βασιλεὺς introduces the *oratio recta*, and is not to be rendered, unless the clause following is translated by the *oratio obliqua*. — ἡμερῶν: const.? Difference in meaning between the gen. and the dat. and the accus. of time? H. 550. 591. 613. K. § 158. 4. § 159. 3. (6.) § 161. 1. (b.) — Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχ., *then he will not fight at all*: ἔτι, *after that, at all*. — εἰ . . . οὐ μαχεῖται: conditional sentences regularly take the neg. μή. H. 835. K. § 177. 5. οὐ μαχεῖται is here a repetition of the words of the soothsayer; and οὐ is understood, not as qualifying the whole sentence, but μαχεῖται alone. H. 842. K. § 318. Rem. 1. L. G. — Force of the conditions, εἰ . . . μαχεῖται, and ἐὰν ἀληθεύσης, with their respective conclusions? H. 745. 747. K. § 185. 2. (1.) and (3.) What is meant by *protasis* and *apodosis*? H. 744. K. § 185. 1. — αἱ δ. ἡμ., *the ten days*, i. e. those above mentioned.

§ 19. ἀπεγνωκέναι: ἀπογινώσκω. — τοῦ μάχεσθαι: const.? H. 779. 580. K. §§ 173. 157.

§ 20. τῇ τρίτῃ: sc. ἡμέρᾳ. — αὐτῷ and τοῖς στρατιώταις: H. 597. K. § 161. 2. (c.) end. — ἦγοντο: pl. w. neut. pl. subj.

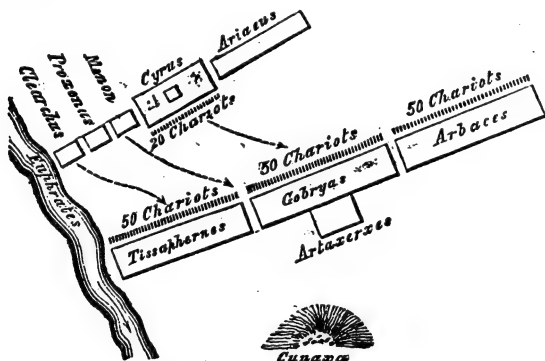
## CHAP. VIII.

## Battle of Cunaxa, and death of Cyrus.

§ 1. Καὶ ... τε ... καί, *And already it was not only ... but*, etc. — ἦν: subj.? H. 494. K. § 145. Rem. 2. (b.) — πλησίον: H. 522. K. § 147. (b.) — ἵππῳ: const.? H. 604. K. § 161. 1. (c.) — ὅτι: before the *orat. rect.* Cf. note 1, 7, 18.

§ 2. αὐτίκα modifies ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι: is placed first for emphasis. — καὶ ... δέ: cf. note on καὶ στρατ. δέ, 1, 1, 2. — ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι: sc. βασιλεία, *that the king would fall upon*, etc.

§ 3. Καὶ Κύρος τε ... τοῖς τε, *and not only Cyrus ... but he sent orders to all the others*, etc. — καθίστασθαι denotes motion; hence followed by εἰς w. acc.: see Lex. καθίστημι. — ἕκαστον: subj. of καθίστασθαι.



PLAN OF THE BATTLE OF CUNAXA.

§ 4. Κλέαρχος ... Πρόξενος ... οἱ ἄλλοι: in apposition w. the subj. of καθίσταντο. — ἐχόμενος: see Lex. ἔχω. — Μένων, κτέ., *and Menon and his army occupied*, etc.

§ 5. παρὰ Κλ. ἔστησαν: for other instances of παρὰ w. acc. and verb of rest, see 1, 2, 13 and 24; 1, 5, 5; 1, 7, 16; 1, 9, 13 and 31.

§ 6. Κύρος ... ἵππεις: sc. ἔστησαν expressed in § 5. — αὐτοί, *themselves*, in distinction from their horses.

§ 7. μαχαίρας: differed how fr. ξίφος? see Lex. μάχαιρα. — Ἑλληνικάς: position emphatic.



§ 8. καὶ ... τε ... καί: cf. note § 1. — δειλῆ: article omitted. H. 530. b. K. § 148. Rem. 4. — χρόνῳ: const.? H. 613. K. § 161. 1. (b.) — Supply ἐφάνη before ὥσπερ, *it* (i. e. *κονιοπρός*) *appeared just like*, etc.; or, *there was an appearance just like*. — ἐγίγοντο: sc. οἱ πολέμιοι. — ἐγγύτερον is often used, like other adverbs of place, with εἶναι or γίγνεσθαι as an indeclinable adj. Krüg. Cf. πλησίον, § 1. — χαλκός: see Lex.

§ 9. Τισσαφέρνης, κτέ.: an explanatory parenthetical clause; hence the asyndeton. H. 854. K. § 325. L. G. — ἐχόμενοι: cf. ἐχόμενος, § 4. — τούτων: const.? H. 574. b. K. § 158. 3. (b.) — ἄλλοι: see Lex. — ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος: in apposition w. πάντες οὗτοι; ἐπορεύετο, being in close proximity w. the appositive word, agrees with it. *They all proceeded severally nation by nation in*, etc.

§ 10. ἄρματα: sc. ἐπορεύετο. — καλούμενα: cf. 1, 2, 13. — ἀποτεταμένα: see Lex. ἀποτείνω. — ὥς instead of ὥστε w. the infin. denoting a result or a purpose is frequent in Xen. What idea is expressed by the infin. in Greek which is not expressed by the Latin infin.? H. 765. K. § 171. 2. (a.) (d.) — ὥς ... ἐλῶντα (fr. ἐλαύνω), sc. τὰ ἄρματα: const.? H. 793. K. § 176. Rem. 2.

§ 11. ὁ relates to τοῦτο below. — εἶπεν, 1, 7, 4. — τοῦτο: const.? H. 549. c. K. § 159. 3. (7.)

§ 12. τῷ ... ἄγειν, *he called to Clearchus to lead*, etc. On what verbs may the infin. depend as an obj.? H. 764. K. § 171. 2. — κατά: see Lex. μέσον τὸ κτέ. H. 533. K. § 148. 9. (a.) — καὶ ἄν (= καὶ ἄν) ... νικῶμεν: force of this const.? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (3.) — ἔφη: "often thus inserted in the midst of words quoted, like *ait* and *inquit* in Latin." WHITON. — ἡμῖν: const.? H. 600. K. § 161. 2. (d.) end. — πεποίηται: the perf. expresses the certainty of the fut. action, by representing it as already completed.

§ 13. τὸ μέσον: as subst., *the centre*. — Κύρου: const.? H. 576. K. § 158. 5. (b.) — ὄντα ... βασιλέα, *that the king was*, etc. H. 796. ff. K. § 175. 1. — μέσον ... ἔχων, *though he occupied the centre*, etc. The circumstantial particip. denotes what? H. 788. ff. K. § 176. 1. For μέσον without the article, see H. 530. b. K. § 148. Rem. 4. — τῶν ἑαυτοῦ: cf. τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, 1, 2, 15. — ἀλλ' and the repetition of ὁ Κλέαρχος are occasioned by the intervention of the explanatory sentence τοσοῦτον γὰρ κτέ.; the sentence begun above (ὁρῶν δὲ κτέ.) being here resumed. — ὅμως, (although Cyrus commanded it) *nevertheless*, etc. — οὐ, μή: general distinction between these

negatives? H. 832. K. § 177. 3. Why is μή used after verbs of fearing? H. 743. K. § 177. Rem.

§ 14. τὸ βαρ. στράτευμα: sc. τοῦ Κύρου. VOLL., MATT. — ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ, *in the same (place)*. Force of the impf. (συνεάττετο)? — πρὸς: force w. gen., dat., acc.? see Lex. — ἐκατέρωσε modifies κατεβῆατο.

§ 15. Ξενοφῶν Ἀθ.: mentioned here for the first time in the Anab.; and, as always hereafter, in the 3d pers. — ὥς: cf. note § 10. H. 875. f. 770. K. § 186. — ἐπιστήσας (ἐπίστημι), sc. τὸν ἵππον, *having halted*. Tenses of this verb intrans. in act. voice? see Lex. — καλά: repeated for emphasis. Understand εἶη.

§ 16. ὅτι: cf. note 1, 7, 18. — καὶ ὅς. H. 525. b. K. § 247. 3. (a.) L. G. — τίς: what other word would be more comm.? H. 682. K. § 62. Rem. 1. — ὅ, τι: what other word might be used? Cf. ἤρετο, τίς, above. — ὁ δ': i. e. Clearchus.

§ 17. Ἀλλά denotes the sudden turn in his thoughts. *Well, I both accept (it)*, etc. Cf. ἀλλά, 1, 7, 6. — τῷ: fem. H. 521. K. § 241. Rem. 10. L. G. — προήρχοντο, *began first*, i. e. before the rest of the army.

§ 18. ὥς δὲ πορευομένων, sc. αὐτῶν, *And when, as they were advancing*, etc. — ἤρξατο: dif. in meaning between the act. and mid. of ἄρχω? see Lex. — τοῖς ἵπποις: those attached to the war-chariots of the enemy.

§ 19. ἐξικνεῖσθαι (sc. αὐτῶν, i. e. the Greeks): const.? H. 768. 769. K. § 183. Rem. — κράτος: see Lex. — μή: why this neg.? H. 837. K. § 177. 5.

§ 20. ἐφέροντο w. neut. plur. subj.: cf. εἶχον, § 10. See note on ἦσαν, 1, 2, 23. — τὰ μὲν ... τὰ δέ, *some ... others*: in partitive apposition w. ἄρματα. — ἡνιόχων: const.? H. 584. f. K. § 157. — προῖδοιεν: sc. τὰ ἄρματα. — ἔστι δ' ὅστις, *now and then one however*: cf. ἦν ... οὗς, 1, 5, 7. H. 812. K. § 182. Rem. 2. When ἔστι, ἐστί, and ἐστὶ respectively? H. 406. 1. Rem. b. K. § 16. 1 and 4. — ἐκπλαγείς: ἐκπλήττω. — τοῦτον: indef., referring to ἔστιν ὅστις, *not even such an one*. — οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ ... οὐδεὶς, *and not even any other*, etc. Notice the emphasis from the juxtaposition of οὐδεὶς οὐδέν. H. 885. K. § 348. 10. L. G.; also the accumulation of negatives. H. 843. K. § 177. 6. οὐδὲ ... δέ in a neg. clause correspond to καὶ ... δέ in an affirmative. Cf. 1, 1, 2, καὶ σπαρ. δέ, note.

§ 21. καθ' αὐτούς: see Lex. κατά. — οὐδ' ὥς, *not even thus*. Difference in meaning between ὥς and ὡς? see Lex. — συν-

εσπειραμένην, fr. συσπειράω: agrees w. τὴν . . . τάξιν: τῶν ἱπ. is an attributive of τάξιν; σὺν ἑαυτῷ an attrib. of ἱππέων. H. 534. K. § 148. 9. (a.) — ποιήσει: in lively narration for the optat. H. 731. a. K. § 188. 3 and 4. — αὐτόν: cf. note on τῶν βαρβάρων, 1, 1, 5; τὴν κρίσιν, 1, 6, 5, *he knew him that he*, etc. instead of *he knew that he occupied*, etc. — μέσον: cf. note, § 13.

§ 22. τό shows what connection between μέσον and αὐτῶν? H. 533. K. § 148. 9. (a.) — ἦν ἦ, κτέ.: force of this const.? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (3.) The conclusion, depending on νομίζοντες, is in the infin. H. 734. c. K. § 188. 2. — αὐτῶν depends on ἐκατέρωθεν. H. 589. K. § 158. Rem. 1. (d.) — εἰ . . . χρήζοιεν: force? H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.) — αἰσθάνεσθαι depends on νομίζοντες: why does it take ἄν? H. 783. K. § 153. 2. d. — τὸ στράτ.: subj. of αἰσθάνεσθαι.

§ 23. ἔχων: force of the particip. here? H. 789. f. K. § 176. 1. (c.) — ἐγένετο: see Lex. γίγνομαι. — αὐτῷ and αὐτοῦ mean the king. — αὐτοῦ: H. 589. K. § 158. Rem. 1. (d.) — τεταγμένος: fr. τάττω.

§ 24. κατακόψη: subj. βασιλεύς. Dif. between the pres. and aor. subjunctive? H. 716. a. K. § 152. 12. — ἀποκτείνει, *to have slain*. H. 717. b. K. § 152. 12. (c.)

§ 25. τὸ διώκειν: H. 778. 780. K. § 173. — καλούμενοι: cf. note on καλουμένη, 1, 2, 13.

§ 26. ἡνέσχετο (fr. ἀνέχω): peculiarity in the augment? H. 314. K. § 91. 1. — αὐτός agrees w. the subj. of φησί; the Eng. idiom makes it subj. of the dependent verb: *he affirms that he himself dressed*, etc. ἰᾶσθαι: notice its use here. The pres. infin. has three distinct uses. 1. It denotes continued or repeated action *without regard to time*; 2. continued or repeated action *contemporary with that of the leading verb*; 3. continued or repeated action which is *past with reference to the leading verb*. GOODWIN, § 15.

§ 27. ὅποσοι, κτέ.: a change of const. occurs at this point. II. 886. K. § 347. 5. L. G. From the const. following, we should expect the gen. abs. in the preceding clause (μαχομένων, κτέ. instead of μαχόμενοι, κτέ.). — ἐκείνῳ, *him*, i. e. the king. Cf. ἐκείνον, § 26; also note on ἐκείνου, 1, 2, 15.

§ 28. πεπτωκότα: H. 796. 799. K. § 175. — περιπεσεῖν, *to have*, etc. The aor. infin. has two distinct uses. 1. It denotes a momentary or single action *without regard to time*; 2. a momentary or single action which is *past* relatively to the leading verb. GOODWIN. Cf. note on the pres. infin. § 26.

§ 29. *κελεύσαι*: distinguish by the accent the three forms which have the same letters. H. 367. Rem. e. K. § 84. Rem. 4. — *Κύρω* depends on *ἐπί* in compos. — *οἱ δέ*: sc. *φασί*. — *ἐαυτόν*: obj. of *ἐπισφάσσειν*, expressed for emphasis. H. 688. a. — *Περσῶν*: H. 530. a. K. § 148. 5.

## CHAP. IX.

### Character of Cyrus.

§ 1. *μὲν οὖν* denotes the transition in the narrative: *μὲν* = *μήν*. H. 852. 13. K. § 316. Rem. L. G. — *τῶν ... γενομένων*, *who have lived since the elder Cyrus*—the founder of the Persian empire; the subject of Xenophon's *Cyropædia*. — *Κύρου* limits *πείρα*. — *γενέσθαι*, *to have been*. State the two uses of the aor. infin. See note 1, 8, 28.

§ 2. *πρῶτον μὲν*: correl. w. *ἐπεὶ δέ*, § 6. — *πάντων πάντα*, *of all in all respects*. Notice the *paronomasia*. — Distinction between coördinate and subordinate sentences? H. 724. K. §§ 178. 179. What have we in this section?

§ 3. *γάρ*: the reason introduced by *γάρ* extends to § 6. — *ἐνθα*: meanings? see Lex. — *καταμάθει ἄν*: force of this const.? H. 722. K. § 185. Rem. 4. — *οὐδὲν οὐτ'*: when are two negatives in the same sentence equivalent to an affirmative? When is the negation strengthened? H. 844. 843. — *ἔστι*: when thus accented? H. 406. Rem. b. K. § 16. 1.

§ 4. *ἀκούουσι*: connected by *καί* to *θεῶνται*; *καί* before *τούς*, correl. w. *καί* before *ἄλλους*. — *ὥστε*: dif. between *ὥστε* w. the indic. and *ὥστε* w. the infin.? H. 770. 771. K. § 186. 1. (a.) To which class of sentences, mentioned in § 2, does this belong? H. 853. b. K. § 179. 3.

§ 5. *τέ* connects *εἶναι* and *πείθεσθαι*; *καί*, intens., *and to obey ... even more than*, etc. Why pres. infin. here? H. 714. K. § 152. 12. — *φιλιππότατος*, sc. *ἐδόκει εἶναι*: *χρησθαι*, sc. *ἐδόκει*. — *ἔκρινον*: subj.? H. 504. c. K. § 145. Rem. 2. (c.) *αὐτόν ... εἶναι*, *they judged him to be*, etc. *τῶν ἔργων* connect w. *φιλομαθέστατον*; also w. *μελετηρότατον*. H. 584. c. 587. a. K. § 158. 5. (c.)

§ 6. *ἐπεὶ* and *ἔπειτα*: dif. in meaning and const.? Corresponding Latin words? — *τὰ μὲν*, *some things*. Instead of a following *τὰ δέ*, we have by an anacoluthon *τέλος δὲ κτέ.*, *but finally*, etc.

— πολλοῖς: const.? H. 601. K. § 161. 2. (d.), *in the view of many*.

§ 7. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη: in the year 407 B. C. — καθήκει: subj.? εἰς ... ἀθροίζεσθαι. H. 494. a. K. § 238. Rem. 2. L. G. — μὲν after πρῶτον: correl. w. δέ after φανερός, § 11. — περὶ πλείστου: see Lex. περί. — ποιοῖτο and the following optatives are in *orat. obliq.* In the *orat. recta*, they would all be indic. of a past tense, in the form. H. 745. K. § 185. 2. (1.) The dat. of τῆς and of the article differ how in form? The former is enclitic; the latter orthotone. — σπείσαιοτο (fr. σπένδομαι) implies a previous hostility; συντίθεμαι suggests no such idea. — ψεύδεσθαι depends on ποιοῖτο.

§ 8. καὶ γὰρ οὖν, *and* (there was proof of this) *for accordingly*. — ἐπίστευον: placed before its subj. and repeated for emphasis. ἄνδρες: sc. ἐπιτρεπόμενοι. — σπείσαμένου K., *after*, etc. H. 790. a. K. § 176. 1. (a.) — μηδέν: obj. of παθεῖν. Why not οὐδέν? H. 837. K. § 177. 5. When does the infin. take ἄν? H. 783. K. § 153. 2. (d.)

§ 9. τοιγαροῦν = καὶ γὰρ οὖν, save that τοί is intens. and καὶ connective. — πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις, i. e. in Ionia. Cf. 1, 1, 6. — τοὺς φεύγοντας: cf. 1, 1, 7; 1, 2, 2. The exiles whom Cyrus refused to abandon were political enemies of the dominant party in Miletus; hence the ground of their fear.

§ 10. καὶ before γάρ, correl. w. καὶ before ἔλεγεν, *not only ... but also*. — Supply τινάς w. προῖτο. — Dif. in meaning between ἀπαξ and ποτέ? see Lex. — εἰ w. the optat. in the protasis, and ἄν w. the optat. in the apodosis, denote what? H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.) — ἔτι: repeated for emphasis. — Dif. between πράττω and ποιέω w. κακῶς, κακόν, or κακά; also w. εὖ, καλῶς, ἀγαθόν, or ἀγαθά? see Lex.

§ 11. φανερός ἦν: cf. note on δηλός ἦν, 1, 2, 11. — For two accusatives w. ποιήσειεν, see H. 555. K. § 160. 2. — εὐχὴν αὐτοῦ, indef., *a prayer of his*. Cf. note on ἐμός ἀδελφός, 1, 7, 9. — εὐχοίτο: *orat. obliq.* — Mark the sentiment at the close of this section. How much better the christian rule.

§ 12. δῆ: often placed thus after a superlative to strengthen it. Cf. §§ 18 and 20. H. 851. K. § 315. 2. L. G. — αὐτῷ ... ἀνδρί, lit. *to him one man at least*. The Eng. idiom requires some change of const., *A far greater number desired ... to him than to any other one man*: γέ (like δῆ) adds emphasis to the preceding word. H. 850. 1. K. § 317. 2. L. G. — τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν limits ἀνδρί. For

the force of ἐπὶ w. gen. see Lex. — *προίσθαι*, to surrender, with a different shade of meaning, § 9. Force of the mid.?

§ 13. οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδέ, *not indeed not even*, or *nor indeed*: μὲν here = μὴν. So often before δὴ. H. 852. 13. K. § 316. Rem. L. G. When do two negatives in the same clause strengthen the negation? H. 843. — ἂν ... εἴποι: potential optat. — εἶα (εἰάω), peculiarity in the augment? H. 312. K. § 87. 3. — πάντων limits the subj. of ἐτιμωρέιτο. — πολλάκις, κτέ.: this picture is not quite in accordance with our notions of the best government. — μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι: when does the particip. take μὴ instead of οὐ? H. 839. K. § 177. 5. end.

§ 14. γέ: rule for the position of γέ, and exceptions? H. 850. 1. — καί: before αὐτός, intens. — οὗς relates to τούτους. — ἑώρα: peculiarity in the augment? H. 312. K. § 87. 6. — καί: before ἄρχοντας, correl. w. καί before ἄλλη. — ἧς ... χώρας, of the country which: incorporation. Cf. note on λαβόντι ... στράτευμα, 1, 2, 1.

§ 15. ὥστε φαίνεσθαι, κτέ., *so that he appeared to think it proper*, etc. — οἷοιτο: why optat.? H. 757. 758. K. § 183. 1. § 182. 8. (c.) — Κῦρον: more emphatic than αὐτόν.

§ 16. εἷς ... δικαιοσύνην: this clause, standing before εἰ, is made prominent in the thought. H. 885. K. § 348. 9. L. G. — γέ, thus united with μὴν, presents, with more point and emphasis than δέ, a transition to another and important thought. — ἐπιδείκνυσθαι depends on βουλόμενος. — περί: see Lex. — τούτους refers to τῖς. Cf. αὐτούς, 1, 4, 8. — See Lex. ἐκ.

§ 17. ἀλλὰ τε πολλὰ ... καί, *not only many other things ... but especially*. When τε ... καί are correl. the second member is more emphatic than the first. — αὐτῷ: dat. *commodi*, for him. — Dif. in meaning between ἀληθινός and ἀληθής? — Κύρῳ limits πιεθαρχεῖν. — κατὰ μῆνα: cf. 1, 3, 21.

§ 18. ἀλλὰ μὴν, *but further*, denotes a transition to a new topic. — εἴ τις γέ τι: point out the enclitics. H. 105. 109. K. § 14. § 15. Rem. — Notice here a condition of the *fourth* form (H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.)) and conclusion of the *first* (H. 745. K. § 185. 2. (1.)) — οὐδενί: remote obj. of εἵασε (fr. εἰάω), *he never allowed to any one his zeal (to be)*, etc. Eng. idiom, *he never allowed the zeal of any one (to be)*, etc. — δὴ: cf. note § 12. — Κύρῳ: dat. *commodi*, limits γενέσθαι, *to arise to Cyrus*.

§ 19. εἰ ... ὁρῶν ... ἂν ἀφείλετο: a condition of the *fourth* form, and conclusion of the *second*. H. 745. ff. K. § 182. 2. A condition

of the same form with the conclusion would have been improper in idea here. What would it have suggested?—See Lex. *ἐκ*. — *ἦς* ... *χώρας*: cf. note on *λαβόντι* ... *στράτευμα*, 1, 2, 1, *regulating the country which*, etc. — *ἀφείλετο* takes two accusatives. Supply *τῇ*, or *αὐτῇν* referring to *χώρας*. — *αἶ*: continuative. — *φθονῶν* ... *ἐφ*: dif. between *φαίνομαι* w. particip. and w. infin.? H. 802. K. § 175. Rem. 4. (f.)

§ 20. *φίλους*, which in the comm. grammatical order would stand after *ποιήσαιτο* (incorporated in the relat. clause), is placed first for emphasis: *most excellent to provide for those whom he made friends*, etc. — *γέ μὴν*: cf. note § 16. — Why are these verbs in the optat.? H. 757. K. § 182. 8. (c.) — *τυγχάνοι βουλόμενος*: see Lex. *τυγχάνω*. — *γενέσθαι*: state the two uses of the aor. infin. See note 1, 8, 28.

§ 21. *καὶ γὰρ* ... *ἔχοι*: *For (it was) this very thing, on account of which he himself thought he needed friends, that he might have*, etc.: *αὐτὸ τοῦτο* points to the exegetical clause *ὡς* ... *ἔχοι*. — *τούτου*: gen. objective; limits *συνεργός*. — *οὔτου* (fr. *οὐσitis*) depends on *ἐπιθυμοῦντα*. — *αἰσθάνοιτο*: why optat.? H. 757. K. § 182. 8. (c.)

§ 22. *εἰς γε ὃν ἀνὴρ*: join w. *πλεῖστα*, *the greatest number* ... *being one man at least*; Eng. idiom, *a greater number of gifts than any other one man*. Cf. § 12. — *πάντων* limits the subj. of *διεδίδου*, *he of all men*. Force of *δή*? Same as after a superlat. Cf. note, § 12. — *καὶ* (sc. *σκοπῶν*) *οὔτου, κτέ.*, *and having regard to that which he saw*, etc.

§ 23. *τῷ σώματι* ... *κόσμον*: definitive apposition w. *ὅσα*. — *ὡς εἰς*: cf. 1, 8, 23. — *καί*: before *περί*, intens. — *λέγειν* ... *ἔφασαν*, *they* (the persons from whom Xenophon obtained his information) *affirmed that he used to say*, etc. — *δύναιτο* and *νομίζοι*: why optat.? H. 733. 736. K. § 188. 3.

§ 24. *τό* belongs to the whole clause ending with *ποιοῦντα*, *the fact that he*, etc.: sc. *ἔστί*. — *γέ*: force? H. 850. 1. K. § 317. 2. L. G. — *τῷ προθυμῆσθαι*: H. 779. 782. K. § 173. — *ταῦτα*: plur. because two ideas precede, *his care* and *his desire to gratify* (his friends).

§ 25. *γάρ* introduces here an illustration of the preceding statement, that he surpassed his friends in attention, etc. — *λάβοι*: why optat.? H. 757. K. § 183. 3. (c.) *ἐπιτύχοι*: H. 733. 736. K. § 188. 3. — *ἔπεμψε* and *ἔπεμπε*: dif. in force? H. 701. 705. K. § 152. 8 and

9. — σοί: *dat. commodi*; why accented? H. 111. b. K. § 16. 3. b. — σὺν οἷς, *with those whom*. H. 810. a. K. § 332. 6. L. G.

§ 26. σέ: why accented? cf. σοί, § 25. — τούτων: const.? H. 576. K. § 158. 5. (a.)

§ 27. πάνυ stands comm. before the word which it qualifies. Cf. § 25. Why after, here? An unusual position often imparts emphasis to a word. H. 885. K. § 348. 9. L. G. Cf. ἰσχυρῶς, 1, 2, 21; 1, 7, 15. — αὐτὸς ... ἐπιμέλειαν is parenthetical and not affected by ὅπου; hence, ἐδύνατο is not in the same const. w. εἶη. — διαπέμπων: why διὰ? — ἐαυτῶν refers to φίλους; ἐαυτοῦ, to the subj. of ἐκέλευε. — Why μή? H. 832. K. § 177. 5.

§ 28. εἰ ... πορεύοιτο ... μέλλοιεν: a condition of the *fourth* form, with a conclusion (ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο) of the *first*. H. 745. 748. 750. K. § 185. 2. (1.) (4.) Rem. 2. — οὗς τιμᾶ: H. 761. K. § 188. 4. — πεφιλῆσθαι: is the perf. in Greek both def. and indef. as in Latin? — Ἑλλήνων, βαρβάρων limit οὐδένα.

§ 29. οὗτος (i. e. Orontas), subj. of εἶρε: ὃν relates to αὐτόν: οἱ (reflex. for a dependent clause) refers to οὗτος: *this one quickly found him* (i. e. the servant who was to convey the letter, cf. 1, 6, 3) *whom he thought*, etc. — καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι, *and these indeed, and that too*: οἱ ἀγαπώμενοι in appos. w. οὗτοι; and both in the same const. w. πολλοί. — ἂν ... τυγχάνειν depends on νομίζουσες. When does the infin. take ἂν? H. 783. K. § 153. 2. d.

§ 30. τὸ ... γεγόμενον: subj. of ἦν understood; τεκμήριον, predicate. H. 535. K. § 148. Rem. 2. — αὐτῷ: i. e. Κύρῳ. — ὅτι, κτέ.: connect w. τεκμήριον, *proof that*, etc.

§ 31. ἀποθνήσκοντος: force of the pres.? H. 714. K. § 152. 12; *while he was dying*. — Κύρον πεπτωκότα, *that Cyrus had fallen*. H. 796. 799. K. § 175. 1. (a.) — καί, *also*: *he fled* not simply alone.

## CHAP. X.

Movements of both armies immediately after the death of Cyrus. The Persians, after plundering the camp of Cyrus, having advanced against the Greeks, again retreat precipitately.

§ 1. διώκων εἰσπίπτει agrees w. the principal subj. H. 511. h. K. § 147. Rem. 1. — ἐλέγοντο, *there were said to be*, etc. H. 494. K. § 145. Rem. 2. (b.) — ὁδοῦ limits παρασάγγαι. H. 567. K. § 158. Rem. 1. Eng. idiom, *the distance was said to be*, etc.



§ 2. τὴν ... εἶναι, *the one said to be*, etc. σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν: predicate. — λαμβάνει: cf. note on εἰσπύπτει, § 1.

§ 3. γυνή: see Lex. — πρὸς: see Lex., a rare const. Krüger makes τῶν Ἑλ. depend on the omitted antecedent of οἱ, i. e. τούτους understood. This const. would also be extremely rare. — ἔτυχον ... ἔχοντες: see Lex. τυγχάνω. — οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν, *and some of them also*, i. e. τῶν Ἑλ. οἱ ... ἔχοντες. — ταύτην: i. e. τὴν Μιλησίαν. — ἐπὶ τὸς ... ἐγένοντο, *came within their reach*. χρήματα and ἄνθρωποι, in appos. w. ἅλλα ὅποσα. — πάντα repeats with emphasis the idea of ἅλλα ὅποσα ... ἐγένοντο.

§ 4. οἱ Ἑλλ. here denotes the main army of the Greeks; not the same that were mentioned in the last section. οἱ μὲν refers to οἱ Ἑλλ. In like manner ὁ μὲν may refer to the nearer and ὁ δὲ to the more remote object. — καθ' αὐτούς: cf. 1, 8, 21. — οἱ δὲ instead of ὁ δὲ, because Xenophon has in mind not merely βασιλεὺς, but also those with the king. — πάντες: i. e. all the Persians, even those who had been opposed to the Greeks in the battle and had been routed.

§ 5. εἶη and νικῶεν: why optat.? H. 734. 736. K. § 188. — οἷχονται: lit. *have gone*; pres. in form, perf. in meaning. One might expect οἷχοντο to correspond w. νικῶεν. But we often find the forms of the *oratio recta*, instead of those proper to the *orat. obliq.* H. 734. b. K. § 188. 4. — ἐπὶ τὸ ... ἀρήξοντες, *to the camp to render assistance*.

§ 6. ἐν τούτῳ: notice the asyndeton, denoting haste. H. 854. K. § 325. L. G. — καὶ βασιλεὺς. The Greeks were meditating an attack, so, *the king also was manifestly*, etc. — δῆλος: cf. note 1, 2, 11. — ὥς ... προσιώντος: sc. βασιλέως. — καὶ δεξόμενοι: a particip. in the nom. connected to a particip. in the gen. Not a rare const. — ἧ δὲ κτεί., *but where he had passed along*. Cf. 1, 8, 13 and 23. παρήλθεν: cf. note on ἐποίησε, 1, 1, 2. — καὶ τοὺς ... αὐτομολήσαντας, *and those who (being) over against the Greeks had deserted in the battle*.

§ 7. διήλασε (διελαύνω): Tissaphernes being on the left wing of the Persians (1, 8, 9) would be opposed to the right wing of the army of Cyrus. Here Clearchus was posted (1, 8, 4); and on his right the Grecian targeteer force (1, 8, 5), which skilfully gave way so as to allow Tissaphernes to pass along between themselves and the river. — κατὰ: see Lex. — Ἕλληνας: here used as adj. Cf. Ὀρᾶκας and Κρήτας, 1, 2, 9. Names of nations with nouns denoting

persons are often used thus. — αὐτοῖς: Tissaphernes and those with him. Cf. note on οἱ δέ, § 4.

§ 8. ὥς: connect w. ἀπηλλάγη (fr. ἀπαλλάττω), *after*. — μείον ἔχων: see Lex. μείων. — τό: why before τῶν Ἑλ.? H. 533. K. § 148. 9. (a.)

§ 9. ἀναπτύσσειν ... ποταμόν, *to fold back the wing and to rest upon the river* (lit. *to make the river in the rear*). By referring to the plan, 1, 8, 3, it will appear that the Grecian line was at right angles with the river. It was now proposed to effect a change of front, so that the line should be parallel with the river, the front facing the enemy, and the rear resting on the river. Such is now the usual explanation of this passage, which has given rise to much discussion.

§ 10. ἐν ᾧ, κτέ., *But while they* (the Greeks), etc. The movement spoken of in § 9 was only contemplated (ἐδόκει). — καὶ δὴ κτέ., *even now*, etc. — ἀντίαν, *opposite* (to the Grecian army). — εἰς ... σχῆμα, ὥσπερ, *in just the same form, as*, etc. — μαχοῦμενος: force? H. 789. d. K. § 176. 1. (e.) — συνήει: see Lex. σύνειμι (σύν, εἶμι). — ὄντας: sc. αὐτοῖς, i. e. the king and his army.

§ 11. ἐκ πλείονος: see Lex. πολὺς. — τὸ πρόσθεν: 1, 8, 19.

§ 12. ἀνεστράφεσαν: see Lex. ἀναστρέφω. — ἐνεπλήσθη: ἐμπλήμι. — τὸ ποιοῦμενον, *that which was being done*, or *what was going on*: τὸ γινόμενον is much more comm. in this sense. — μή: why not οὐ? H. 837. K. § 177. 5. — αἰετὸν: in appos. w. σημεῖον. — ἀνατεταμένον: ἀνατείνω.

§ 13. οἱ ἱππεῖς: emphatic position. — ἄλλοθεν: see Lex. It means strictly *from another place*, the writer assuming in mind for his point of view the place towards which the enemy were fleeing. — ἐψιλοῦτο (fr. ψιλώω): notice the force of the imperf. *was* (by degrees) *becoming bare*.

§ 14. ἀνεβίβαζεν: sc. τὸ στράτευμα, *did not conduct the army*, etc. — ἀλλ' ὑπὸ κτέ.: a condensed expression; *but having brought the army to the foot of the hill and commanding it to halt*, etc. H. 657. a. 618. a. K. § 167. 7. c. — κελεύει: sc. αὐτοῖς. — τὰ ... τί ἐστίν, *the things beyond the hill what (there) is*: τί in the sing. denotes the complete view of the several objects implied in τὰ.

§ 15. ὅτι: before the *orat. recta*. Cf. note 1, 7, 18. — καὶ ἥλιος, *the sun also*: notice the omission of the article. II. 530. b. K. § 148. Rem. 4.

§ 16. *Ζέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα*: see Lex. *τίθημι* (α). — *ἅμα μὲν*: instead of a corresponding *ἅμα δέ*, the construction is changed, owing to the introduction of explanatory clauses, and we have in the correl. sentence, § 17, *καὶ αὐτοὶ κτέ.* — *φαίνοιτο, παρείη*: why optat.? H. 734. 736. K. § 188. 3. — *αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα*: H. 796. 799. K. § 175. 1. (α.) — *διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι*: sc. *αὐτόν*, *that he*, etc. i. e. Cyrus. — *προεληλακέναι*: *προελαύνω*.

§ 17. *αὐτοί, they themselves*, in distinction from Cyrus. — *αὐτοῦ*: adv. — *ἐνταῦθα, to that place*: cf. § 13. — *οὖν, accordingly*, i. e. as the result of their deliberation. State the dif. between *οὖν* and *γάρ*. H. 865. ff. 869. ff. K. § 178. 9.

§ 18. *ταύτης ... ἐγένετο, such was the end of this day*. An eventful day! and destined to exert an important influence on the future history of the world. For on that day the Greeks learned their superiority to the Persians, even in the heart of the empire. The conquests of Alexander, with all their weighty results, may be traced directly to the lesson which was learned in the battle of Cunaxa. The death of Cyrus, which the reader of this narrative naturally deploras, was probably no disaster to the world; for, had he lived, he would have been the most dangerous enemy to Grecian liberty. — *τὲ ... καί, not only ... but especially*: cf. note 1, 9, 17. — *σφοδρά*: adj.; how distinguished fr. the adv.? See Lex. — *διαδοίη, might distribute (these, i. e. the wagons filled with provisions)*. Force of the const. after *ἵνα*? H. 749. 729. K. §§ 181. 185. — *ὡς ἐλέγοντο*: personal instead of impers. const. Cf. *ἐδόκουν*, 1, 4, 7. — *καὶ ταύτας, even these*, repeats w. emphasis the idea of *τὰς ἀμάξας*.

§ 19. *ἄδειπνοι, ἀνάριστοι*: emphatic position.

## BOOK SECOND.

Ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο ἀπιδόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσα-  
φέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς.—Movements of the Greeks after the battle of Cunaxa,  
until the treaty which they ratified with the Persians was broken.

## CHAP. I.

Negotiations of the Greeks with Ariæus, Persian commander under Cyrus, to  
whom they offer the throne of Persia; and of Artaxerxes with the Greeks  
whom he attempts in vain either to overreach or to intimidate.

§ 1. A recapitulation of the principal events in the last book.  
—ὡς ... οὖν, *how therefore*. μέν, correl. of δέ, § 2. — Κύρω:  
H. 597. K. § 161. 2. (c.) end. — ἐστρατεύετο: H. 702. K. § 152.  
Rem. 4; *intended to make*, etc. — τὰ πάντα νικᾶν, *that they were*  
*in everything victorious*. Why is the subj. of νικᾶν not expressed?  
H. 775. K. § 172. 2. — ἔμπροσθεν: H. 534. K. § 148. 8. —  
δεδῆλωται has for subj. the clauses ὡς, κτέ.; ὅσα, κτέ.

§ 2. σηματοῦντα: fut. particip., force? H. 789. d. K. § 176. 1. (e.)  
—πέμπει, φαίνοιτο: notice the change of mood. H. 738. K. § 188. 4.  
Force of the indic.? of the optat.? H. 719. 721. K. § 153.

§ 3. ὄντων: gen. abs., sc. αὐτῶν. Cf. προϊόντων, 1, 2, 17. —  
γεγονώς: see Lex. γίγνομαι. — Ταμώ: gen. Att. 2d declens. —  
τίθηκεν, *orat. recta*: εἶη, *orat. obliq.* H. 734. b. K. § 188. 4. Cf.  
πέμπει, φαίνοιτο, § 2. — Connect ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ w. εἶη, as πεφυγώς  
would require εἰς τὸν σταθμόν. — τῶν ... βαρβάρων: those who  
had been with Cyrus. — ὅθεν, *from which*, refers to σταθμῷ. —  
λέγοι, φαίη: sc. Ἀριαῖος. — ἄλλῃ: see Lex. ἄλλος.

§ 4. Ἄλλ': cf. note 1, 7, 6. — ὥφελε ... ζῆν: force of this  
form of a wish? H. 721. b. K. § 153. Rem. 1. — εἰ ... ἦλθετε,  
ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν: force of this const.? H. 746. K. § 185. 2. (2.) The  
implication is, but you did come, therefore we shall not go, etc.  
— εἰάν ... ἔλθῃ ... καθιεύ: cond. sent. 3d form. H. 747. K. § 185.  
2. (3). The conclusion (καθιεύ fr. καθίζω) in the infin. depending  
on ἐπαγγελλόμεθα.

§ 5. τοὺς ἀγγέλλους: those mentioned § 3. — ἐβούλετο: sc.  
ἀποστέλλεσθαι.

§ 6. οἱ μέν: notice the asyndeton. H. 854. K. § 325. L. G. —  
κόπτοντες refers to τὸ στρατεύμα as collective. — ξύλοις, *as fuel*,

in appos. w. οἰστοῖς. — οὐ: see Lex. — ἦσαν φέρεσθαι: a rare const., comm. explained thus, *there were to be brought*, i. e. *there were many etc. which might be brought* (for fuel). ἔρημοι: sc. οὔσαι. — κρέα: obj. both of ἔψοντες and of ἦσθιον.

§ 7. καὶ ἤδη τε ... καί, *and already it was both ... and there come*, etc. Cf. 1, 8, 1. — οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι ... δέ: *the others ... but*, etc. — ἐτύγγανε ... ὦν: cf. παρὼν ἐτύγγανε, 1, 1, 2. — ἐπιστήμων ... τῶν, κτέ. H. 584. c. K. § 158. 5. (c.)

§ 8. νικῶν τυγχάνει: cf. παρὼν ἐτύγ. 1, 1, 2. — ἄν (= εἰάν) τι δύνωνται: force of this condition? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (3.) With what moods is εἰ used? with what, εἰάν (ἦν, ἄν)? See Lex.

§ 9. ὁμως δὲ Κλέ., *but still Clearchus*, though equally indignant with the others. Distinguish ὁμως, ὁμοίως, ὁμοῦ. — τοσοῦτον: cf. note 1, 3, 14. — οὐ τῶν νικ., *not to the victorious*, suggesting the antithesis ἀλλὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων, *but to the vanquished*. Const.? H. 572. e. K. § 158. 2. — ἔφη, *continued he*. Cf. note 1, 8, 12. — ἔχετε: sc. ἀποκρίνασθαι. — ἦξω: see Lex. — ιερά: see Lex. ιερόν. — ἔτυχε: see Lex. τυγχάνω. — ζυόμενος: why mid.? See Lex. ζύω. Cf. 1, 7, 18.

§ 10. πρόσθεν ... ἦ: see Lex. — παραδοίησαν: an extremely rare form; cf. note on εἶησαν, 1, 1, 5. — ἄλλ': cf. note 1, 7, 6. — ὥς ... δῶρα, *as gifts*, in apposit. w. ὅπλα. — εἰ μὲν: supply what? — λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα: lit. *having come take (them)*; Eng. idiom, *come and take (them)*. — εἰ, κτέ., λεγέτω: force? — τί ἔσται, κτέ., εἰάν ... χαρίσωνται: force? H. 745. 747. K. § 185. 2. (1.) (3.)

§ 11. πρὸς ταῦτα: asyndeton. Cf. § 6. — αὐτῷ depends on ἀντιποιεῖται, as *dat. incommodi*; made emphatic by its position: *for who is there that ... against him* (the king)? — ἔχων (sc. ὑμᾶς) and δυνάμενος: cause? H. 789. c. K. § 176. 1. (b.) — πλήθος: obj. of ἀγαγεῖν. — ὅσον: obj. of ἀποκτεῖναι: *such a multitude as*, (τοσοῦτο(ν) the antecedent of ὅσον not being expressed.) — εἰ ... ὑμῖν, *if he should deliver (them) up to you*, sc. to be slain. A condition and conclusion of what form?

§ 12. μετὰ τοῦτον: asyndeton, for liveliness of narration. — εἰ μή: see Lex. εἰ. H. 872. — ἄν (in both clauses) belongs to the following infin. It never modifies the pres. or perf. indic. — στερηθῆναι depends on οἰόμεθα understood. — μὴ οἶον (fr. οἶομαι): two ways of expressing prohibition? and dif. in meaning? H. 723. a. K. § 153. Rem. 3. § 152. 12. — παραδώσειν: sc. ἡμᾶς, *that we shall*

*deliver up to you*, etc. — ἀλλὰ . . . μαχούμεθα: a transition to *orat. recta* for vivacity and emphasis.

§ 13. φιλοσόφῳ and ἀχάριστα: used ironically. — ἴσθι ὦν, *be assured that you are*, etc. H. 796. a. K. § 174. 175. 1. (a.) — οἶε: H. 868. Rem. a. K. § 82. 2.

§ 14. ἔφασαν: cf. note 1, 9, 23. — ἄλλο τι: H. 552. K. § 159. (7.); *to employ (them) for anything else*, etc.

§ 15. ἐν τούτῳ: asyndeton; cf. § 12. — εἴεν: why optat.? H. 733. 734. K. § 188. — ἄλλος ἄλλα: paronomasia; see Lex. ἄλλος: λέγει agrees w. ἄλλος, which is in partitive apposit. w. οὔτοι. Cf. note on ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος, 1, 8, 9. — λέγεις: see Lex.

§ 16. ἄσμενος, *gladly*: H. 488. Rem. c. K. § 264. 3. L. G. — οἶμαι: often thus thrown into a sentence without affecting the const., as a parenthetical clause. — καὶ . . . πάντες, *all the others also*; sc. σὲ ἄσμενοι ἐωράκασιν. — ἡμεῖς . . . ὁρᾷς: an emphatic amplification for *we all*; sc. Ἑλληνές ἐσμεν. — περὶ ὧν: H. 810. K. § 182. 6. 7. Cf. ὧν, 1, 1, 8.

§ 17. πρὸς: see Lex. — ἀναλεγόμενον agrees w. ὁ. Force of the circumstantial particip. ? H. 788. ff. K. § 176. 1. — ξύν: older Attic for σύν. — ξυμβουλευομένοις agrees w. αὐτοῖς. Dif. between the act. and mid. of this verb ? See Lex.

§ 18. καὶ . . . πρεσβεύοντα, *the one coming as envoy from the king even himself*. Different meanings of αὐτός ? — παρὰ τὴν δύξαν: see Lex. παρά. — αὐτοῦ (Κλεάρχου): rule for its position ? (H. 538. K. § 148.) Difference in meaning and position between αὐτοῦ and αὐτοῦ ? H. 538. K. § 148. Rem. 8.

§ 19. Ἐγώ: placed first, as though he would answer directly; but next, with much art, comes the condition which nullifies the force of the advice. — μία τις: more emphatic than μία or τις alone; *any one*. — σωθῆναι depends on ἐλπίς sc: *hope of being rescued*. H. 767. K. § 306. 1. (d.) L. G. — πολεμοῦντας agrees w. the implied subj. of σωθῆναι. Cf. note on λαβόντα, 1, 2, 1. — τοί, *surely*, is forcible here: μηδεμία, made emphatic by its separation fr. ἐλπίς. — ἄκοντος: cf. note 1, 3, 17. — ὅπῃ δυνατόν, *in what way it is possible*, i. e. *in the best way you can*. Altogether, the answer is as shrewd as the question.

§ 20. Ἀλλά, *well*: cf. note 1, 7, 6. — ταῦτα, τάδε: notice the difference. — φίλους εἶναι: sc. ἡμᾶς. — πλείονος . . . φίλοι: connect w. οἰούμεθα: *that we should be more valuable friends*. For ἄξιοι

and φίλοι w. the infin. see H. 774. 775. K. § 172. 2 and 3. — πολεμείν also depends on οἰόμεθα.

§ 21. βασιλεύς: position emphatic. — μένουσι, προϊούσι, ἀπιούσι: sc. ὑμῖν. The particip. denotes what here? H. 788. 789. e. K. § 176. 1. (a.) and (c.) — μενείτε, εἰσίν: notice the change in tense. — ὧς ... ὄντος: see Lex. ὧς.

§ 22. καὶ ἡμῖν ... καὶ βασιλεῖ: καί, also; the Eng. idiom admits also only in the demonstrative clause. — ἄπερ, sc. δοκεῖ: force of -περ? See Lex. Dif. in meaning between ταῦτά and ταῦτα? — τί ... ταῦτα: cf. note 1, 10, 14. — ἀπεκρίνατο: asyndeton, cf. § 12. — Ἦν ... μένωμεν: force? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (3.) — ἀπιούσι, προϊούσι: cf. note § 21.

§ 23. μένουσιν, κτέ., used as above. The Laconic brevity of these replies adds much to their force. They must have proved highly satisfactory to Artaxerxes!

## CHAP. II.

The Greeks, joining Ariaëus, resolve to return with him to Ionia. After a day's march, they arrive at some Babylonian villages. In the night, they are seized with a groundless panic, which is allayed through an ingenious plesantry of Clearchus.

§ 1. ἦκον, came back. Cf. ἤξω, 2, 1, 9. — Προκλῆς, Χειρίσοφος: descriptive apposit. w. οἱ δέ. — αὐτοῦ: see Lex. — φαίη: why optat.? H. 734. 736. K. § 188. 3. πολλούς, made emphatic by separation fr. its subst. Πέρσας. — βελτίους: used here with respect to rank. — οὓς: sc. φαίη, and these (he affirmed) would not, etc. — οὐκ ... ἀνασχέσθαι (ἀνέχω): when may οὐ be used w. the infin.? H. 837. b. K. § 318. 4. L. G. When does the infin. take ἄν? H. 783. K. § 153. 2. d. — αὐτοῦ: comm. explained as obj. of ἀνασχέσθαι. May it not be gen. abs. w. βασ-, denoting a condition to which the preceding clause corresponds as conclusion? ... would not endure (it), if he were king. — κλεῖναι: sc. ὑμᾶς. — αὐτός: why nom. w. infin.? Cf. ἄξιον, 2, 1, 20.

§ 2. 'Ἄλλ': cf. 2, 1, 20. — οὕτω = ὥδε. — Before ὥσπερ, supply χρὴ ποιεῖν. — ὅποιον ... τι, whatever: τι imparts the notion of indefiniteness to ὅποιον. H. 683. K. § 303. 4. L. G. — ἄν: connect w. οἶσθε. Force? H. 757. K. § 153. 2. b. — ὑμῖν depends on συμφέρειν: is made emphatic by separation fr. its clause. — οὐδέ: stronger than οὐ, not even.

§ 3. *ίέναι* depends on *οὐκ ἐγίγνετο*: see Lex. *γίγνομαι*. — *ἄρα*: what sort of conjunc.? Differs how fr. *οὖν*? Differs how in meaning and in position fr. *ἄρα*? H. 865. ff. 828. ff. K. § 324. 3. (a.) (b.) § 344. 5. (b.) L. G. — *οὐ μὲν δὴ*: cf. note 1, 9, 13. — *οἶόν τε*: sc. *ἐστί*. Dif. in meaning between *οἶος* and *οἶός τε*? See Lex. For this use of *τέ*, see H. 856. K. § 321. Rem. 4. L. G. — *τὰ ἐπιτήδ.*, *the (requisite)*, etc. H. 527. c. K. § 244. 3. L. G. Cf. *τὴν δίκην*, 1, 3, 20, note. — *ἔστιν*: H. 406. Rem. b. 1. K. § 16. 1. — *ίέναι* depends on *καλά*.

§ 4. *δειπνεῖν*: sc. *χρή*; *ἀπιόντας* agrees w. the implied subj. of *δειπνεῖν*. — *σημήνη*: see Lex. *σημαίνω*. Cf. *ἐσάλπινξε*, 1, 2, 17. — *ὥς*: same force as w. a particip., *as if*. — *συσκευάζεσθε, ἀνατίθεσθε*: imperat.

§ 5. *ταῦτα*: asyndeton. — *λοιπόν*: see Lex. — *δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα*: sc. *φρονεῖν*.

§ 6. This section seems to be out of place here. — *ἦν*: H. 550. b. K. § 159. 3. (6.) — *τῆς Ἰωνίας*: H. 559. b. K. § 158. 3. — *μάχης*: see Lex. — *σταθμοὶ τρεῖς καὶ ἐνεήκοντα*: only eighty-four stages from Sardis to the battle-field are mentioned in the first book; but it will be perceived that the distance from Ephesus purports to be given here.

§ 7. *ἡν*: not to be pronounced in two syllables: augmented fr. *αὖν*. H. 310. K. § 86.

§ 8. *κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα*: see Lex. *παραγγέλλω*: cf. § 4. — *ἐκείνου*: cf. 1, 2, 15; 1, 3, 1; 1, 8, 26. — *μέσας νύκτας*: cf. 1, 7, 1. — *Ξέμενοι*: sc. *οἱ Ἕλληνες*; cf. *μαχόμενοι*, 1, 8, 27. — *μήτε ... τέ*: see Lex. *μήτε*. — *πρός*: in compos.; force?

§ 9. Demosthenes mentions *κάπρος*, *κριός*, and *ταῦρος* as being used for a sacrifice. Compare the *suovetaurilia* of the Romans. The wolf seems to have been added as a sacrifice to Ahriman, the Persian god of darkness. — *εἰς ἀσπίδα* (join w. *σφάξαντες*), (*so that the blood ran) into a shield*. HERTLEIN.

§ 10. *ἄπιμεν*: sc. *τὴν ὁδόν*; *ἥνπερ ἦλθομεν*. H. 547. b. K. § 159. 2.

§ 11. *ἀπιόντες* (sc. *τὴν ὁδόν*) denotes a condition. H. 751. K. § 185. Rem. 4. Force of the whole sentence? H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.) — *σταθμῶν*: time; H. 591. K. § 158. 4; *within the seventeen nearest stages*. — *οὐδέ*: differs how fr. *οὐ*? Cf. note § 2. — *μακροτέραν*: sc. *ὁδόν*. — *ἐπινοῶ*, *to fix the mind upon, to intend, purpose*: *ἐννοῶ* (*ἐννεονοκεῖν*, § 10), *to have in mind*.

§ 12. *πορευτέον*: force of the verbal in *-τέος*? const. of *ἡμῖν*?



of σταθμούς? H. 804. ff. 547. K. § 168. § 159. 2. *We must*, etc. —  
 ὡς w. superlat., see Lex. — ἀπαξ: differs how fr. ποτέ? See Lex.  
 Cf. 1, 9, 10. — ἦν ... ἀπόσχωμεν (ἀπέχω): force of aor. subjunc.  
 w. ἄν? H. 747. a. K. § 152. Rem. 3. — οὐκείη μή: explanation  
 of this expression? used w. what parts of the verb? force? H. 845.  
 K. § 177. 9. — σπανιεί: Att. fut. how formed? H. 376. K. § 83.  
 — ταύτην ... ἔγωγε: emphat. posit.

§ 13. ἦν ... δυναμένη: a circumlocution giving greater promi-  
 nence to the idea of δύναμαι, wh. see, in Lex. — κάλλιον, *better*;  
 because the Persians regarded it, not as a flight, but as an advance  
 for attack. — ἐν δεξιᾷ ... ἤλιον: i. e. northwards. — τοῦτο: cf.  
 1, 8, 11.

§ 14. ἔτι ... ὁρᾶν, *they imagined that they still saw*, etc. —  
 τῶν Ἑλ- limits the antecedent of οἷ, which is subj. of ἔθεον. —  
 Why μή? H. 835. K. § 177. 5. — ἐτυχον ὄντες: see Lex. τυγχάνω.  
 — ἐτύγχανε ... ἐτέρωτο: parenthetical.

§ 15. εἰσὶν ... νέμονται: cf. note 2, 1, 2, on πέμπει. — ἐστρα-  
 τοπεδεύετο: H. 735. a. K. § 345. Rem. 5. L. G.

§ 16. ἦγεν: intrans. — ἀπειρηκότας, ὄντας: supplementary  
 particip. H. 796. 799. K. § 175. — οὐ ... οὐδέ: when do two  
 negatives in one sentence strengthen the negation? H. 843. —  
 μή: force here? H. 743. K. § 177. Rem. — ἄγων: cf. ἦγεν. —  
 τοὺς πρώτους, *the foremost, the van*. — ὧν relates to κόμας. —  
 καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ κτέ., *even the very*, etc., subj. of διήρπαστο: τὰ ἀπὸ κτέ.:  
 cf. note on τῶν παρὰ κτέ., 1, 1, 5.

§ 17. ὁμως: notwithstanding what was just mentioned. —  
 σκοταῖοι: const.? H. 488. c. K. § 264. 3. L. G. — ὡς ... ἕκαστοι:  
 lit. *as they severally happened*; Eng. idiom, *as it happened*, denot-  
 ing the manner in which they passed the night (αὐλίζομαι). —  
 ὥστε, w. two dif. const.: the first denoting a conceived result,  
 and introducing a subordinate clause; the second expressing the  
 actual fact, and introducing a coördinate sentence. H. 770. 771.  
 K. § 186. — οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα: sc. ὄντες, *those of the enemy (who  
 were) nearest*, etc. H. 492. f. K. § 148. 8.

§ 18. οὔτε ... οὐδέν: οὔτε ... οὐδαμοῦ. H. 843. K. § 177. 6. —  
 ἐξεπλάγη, fr. ἐκπλήττω. — οἷς ... ἔπραττε, *by what he did*, etc.  
 οἷς: attraction. H. 808. 810. a. K. § 182. 6. For the allusion, see  
 2, 3, 1.

§ 19. προϊούσης ... ταύτης: how is the gen. abs. here to be  
 translated? H. 790. a. K. § 176. 1. (a.) — καὶ τοῖς Ἑλ., *to the*

Greeks also, not simply to the Persians. — οἶον: subj. of γίγνεσθαι, depends on εἰκός, sc. ἐστί, *qualem par est fieri*. Krüg., *such as would naturally arise when*, etc.

§ 20. κήρυκα ἄριστον: apposit. w. ὄν, *a herald (being among the) best*. What would κήρυκα τὸν ἄριστον, κτέ. mean? τῶν τότε, sc. κηρύκων: H. 492. f. K. § 148. 8. — τοῦτον: epanalepsis; cf. ταύτας, 1, 10, 18. — ὅς relates to the subj. of λήψεται. Force of ὅς ἂν κτέ.? H. 757. K. § 153. 2. b. The relative clause stands first for emphasis. — τὸν ἀφέντα: obj. of μηνύσῃ. τόν before ὄνον implies that *the ass* had been the cause of the uproar, — a joke invented by Clearchus to quell the panic. — τὰ ὅπλα: see Lex.

§ 21. εἴη: why optat.? H. 736. K. § 188. 3. — ἥπερ εἶχον, *as they were, as they stood*.

### CHAP. III.

Various negotiations between the Persians and the Greeks, resulting finally in a treaty.

§ 1. ὁ ... ἔγραψα: 2, 2, 18. — γάρ: expegetive. See Lex. — ἡλίφ: cf. note 1, 10, 15.

§ 2. ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ: subjunc. where we might expect the optat.; thus denoting present expectation. H. 729. 728. K. § 188. 3. 4. This reply was haughty, but well-timed.

§ 3. ὁρᾶσθαι depends on καλῶς, by the same principle as it might depend on an adj. H. 767. K. § 171. 2. (d.); lit. *well to be seen*, i. e. *so that it might present a fine appearance, (being) on all sides a dense phalanx*. — τῶν ... εἶναι: supply ὥστε before this clause. Why μηδένα rather than οὐδένα? — ταῦτά, *the same things*, to do as he did (προῆλθε ... ἔχων, κτέ.).

§ 4. ἀνθρώπα (ἀνερωτάω), τί βούλονται: somewhat blunt. In keeping w. § 2. — ἔσονται: H. 735. 736. K. § 188. 4.

§ 5. πρῶτον: emphatic position. — ἔστιν: H. 406. Rem. b. K. § 16. 1. — οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων, *nor am I the man that will dare*. — μὴ πορ-: when does the particip. take μὴ instead of οὐ? H. 839. K. § 177. 5.

§ 6. ἐπετέτακτο: subj.? ταῦτα πράττειν. — ὅτι ... βασιλεῖ, *that they seemed to the king to speak what was reasonable*. Some understand οἱ Ἕλληνες as subj. of δοκοῖεν; others, the same as the subj. of ἔλεγον, οἱ ἄγγελοι. — ἄξουσιν, ἔξουσιν: notice the alliteration. — εἶθ' ἐν: cf. ἔθεν, 1, 3, 17: οἶ, 2, 1, 6.

§ 7. ὁ δέ: Clearchus. — αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι: dat. commodi; *for the men alone*: to define this clause, τοῖς . . . ἀπιούσιν is added, *those coming and going away*, i. e. the Persian commissioners. — εἰ . . . σπένδοιτο: indirect question (direct ἄρα σπείσονται), *whether he should*, etc. H. 733. 735. ff. K. § 188. 3. Force of the optat. here? H. 730. K. § 185. 2. (4.) — ἤ: supply εἰ fr. the foregoing, *or whether*, etc. — Why ἄν after μέχρι? H. 757. ff. K. § 183. 2. 3. — τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν: lit. *the things from you*, i. e. *your answer*.

§ 8. Force of μετα-? — ἐδόκει, *it seemed expedient* (to the army). — ἐπί, *for, after*: in § 9, πρὸς means simply *to*.

§ 9. ἐστ' ἄν: why ἄν? Cf. μέχρι ἄν, § 7. — ποιήσασθαι: why mid.?

§ 10. οἱ μὲν ἡγούντο, *the others* (i. e. the other Grecian commanders) *took the lead*. In § 9, ἡγεῖσθαι is spoken of the Persian envoys: *he ordered (them = τοὺς ἀγγέλους) to conduct (the army) to*, etc. — μέντοι, instead of δέ, correl. w. μὲν in the preceding clause. For other instances of the correlation of μὲν . . . μέντοι, cf. § 9; also 2, 1, 13; 2, 6, 19. — τὰς μὲν . . . ἐν τάξει: these two explanatory clauses are parenthetical. — τάφροις καὶ αὐλῶσιν: prob. made for irrigation. Cf. § 13. — ὥς w. the infin. instead of ὥστε is frequent in Xen. — ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες: cf. note on ἦν δυναμένη, 2, 2, 13. — τοὺς δέ, *but some*, etc., corrects the too general statement which precedes.

§ 11. ἦν: impers. — Κλέαρχον: prolepsis; cf. note on τῶν βαρβάρων, 1, 1, 5; lit. *it was possible to learn Clearchus how he commanded*; instead of, *it was possible to learn how Clearchus*, etc. — βακτηρίαν: flogging was not uncommon in the Spartan armies, and hence their generals were in the habit of carrying a stick. Cf. πλὴγὰς ἐνέβαλεν, 1, 5, 11. — εἰ . . . δοκοίη: H. 749. a. K. § 185. Rem. 2. — πρὸς τοῦτο, *for this*, i. e. διαβάσεις ποιῆσθαι. — ἔπαισεν ἄν: force of this const.? H. 704. K. § 153. 2. a. (β.) — When does the infin. take μὴ οὐ? H. 847. 838. K. § 177. 8.

§ 13. μή: force? H. 743. K. § 177. Rem. — ἄρδεν: const.? H. 814. K. § 182. Rem. 4. It was now autumn. The fields were irrigated in summer to prepare them for the sowing in the early autumn. — βασιλέα: subj. of ἀφεικέναι (ἀφήμι), made emphat. by posit.

§ 15. τὰς δέ τινας, *and some others*: τις is often added to ὁ μὲν, or ὁ δέ, making it more indef. II. 525. a. K. § 303. 4. L. G. — καὶ ἦν, *and it was*: subj. indef, although the reference is to τραγήματα.

§ 16. τῆς ἡδονῆς: cf. ἡδύ, § 15. ἦσθη, 1, 9, 26. — σφόδρα: made emphat. by separation fr. κεφαλαιαί. — ἐξαιρεθείη: force of the optat. ? H. 757. 758. K. § 153. 1. b. (β.)

§ 18. πολλά καὶ ἀμήχανα: two attributives in Greek are connected by a conj. In Eng. the conj. may be omitted. — ἐποίησάμην, εἰ δυνάμην: condit. of the *fourth* form, conclusion of the *first*. H. 748. 745. K. § 185. 2. (1), (4.) — ἂν ... ἔχειν, *that it* (the act just mentioned) *would not be unattended with gratitude to me*: οὐκ ἄχαρ-, litotes: ἔχειν w. an adv., see Lex.

§ 19. ἡγγεῖλα: 1, 2, 4. — διήλασα: 1, 10, 7. — αὐτῷ, i. e. τῷ βασιλεῖ.

§ 20. ἐὰν δύνωμαι: condit. of the third form. The conclusion, εὐπρακτότερον ἢ, instead of the indic., is subjunc. after a final conjunc. H. 739. K. § 181. 2.

§ 21. μεταστάντες: force? Differs how fr. the mid. μεταστησάμενος, § 8. Force of μετά in compos. ? — ὥς w. particip.: force? See Lex. ὥς. — οὐτ' ἐπορευόμεθα ἐπὶ βασ. is to be understood of the intention of the Greeks.

§ 22. αἰσχύνομαι w. acc. H. 544. a. K. § 159. 3. (5.) — εὖ ποιεῖν: force of the infin. here? H. 765. K. § 171. 2. (d.) Can the infin. in Latin be used thus? Lit. *yielding ourselves* (to Cyrus) *to do well* (by us), i. e. *suffering ourselves to receive favors* (from him).

§ 23. τέθηκεν: is the Gr. perf. always definite? — βασιλεῖ ... ἀρχῆς: const. ? H. 577. c. K. § 158. 3. (b.) § 161. 2. — οὐτ' ... ἐνεκα: lit. *nor is there anything for which*, i. e. *nor is there any reason why*, etc. — βουλοίμεθ' ἂν ... ἂν ... ἐθελοίμην: potential optat., *should wish*, etc. H. 722. K. § 153. 2. c. — πορευοίμεθα ... λυποῖη: H. 748. K. § 185. 2. (4.) — ἀδικοῦντα, *any one who injures* (us): obj. of ἀμύνασθαι. — ποιῶν: supplementary particip. H. 798. K. § 175. 1. (e.), *is first to do well*, etc. — τούτου depends on ἡττησόμεθα. — εἰς: see Lex.

§ 24. ἦκω: cf. note on ἦκον, 2, 2, 1. — μερόντων: imper.

§ 25. εἰς: cf. note 1, 7, 1. — ἦκων ἔλεγεν: cf. note on ἐδάκρυε ... ἐστώς, 1, 3, 2. — παρὰ βασιλέως: connect w. διαπεπραγμένος, *having obtained from the king that it be granted him* (Tissaph.), etc.

§ 26. φιλίαν: predicate adj.; made emphat. by separation fr. its subst. χώραν. — παρέξειν, ἀπάξειν: subj. sc. ἡμᾶς, suggested by ἡμῶν. — ὅπου ... ἢ, *and wherever it may not be possible*, etc. H. 757. K. § 153. 2. b.

§ 27. ὑμᾶς δ' αὖ ἡμῖν: contrasted words are often made more striking by juxtaposition. H. 885. K. § 348. 10. L. G.; *that you give oath to us*, etc. — φιλίας: sc. τῆς χώρας. — ὠνουμένους, sc. ὑμᾶς, *that you will receive . . . by purchasing*. H. 789. K. § 176. 1. (d.)

§ 28. ταῦτα ἔδοξε: asyndeton.

§ 29. ὥς: cf. note 1, 2, 4. — ἃ δέομαι: cf. note 1, 3, 4.

## CHAP. IV.

The Greeks, suspecting the sincerity both of Ariæus and of Tissaphernes, march and encamp by themselves. Both armies cross over to the left bank of the Tigris, and proceed as far as the river Zapatas.

§ 1. βασιλέα: subj. of *μνησικακήσειν*, *that the king would not*, etc.; the whole clause is exegetical of δεξιᾶς. — ἐπιστρατείας, ἄλλον: const. ? H. 566. K. § 158. 6. II.

§ 2. οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον, *Ariæus and his men*. — ἐνδηλοι . . . προσέχοντες: cf. note on δηλός . . . ἀνιόμενος, 1, 2, 11. — καὶ διὰ τοῦτο, *on this account also*; a special reason, the principal one being the delay of Tissaphernes. — τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς: correl. of Κλέαρχος δέ, § 5. — ἤρεσκον: subj. οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον. — προσιώντες . . . ἔλεγον: sc. οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων.

§ 3. ἤ, as interrog., differs how in use fr. ἦ interrog. ? See Lex. — ἂν . . . ποιήσαιτο: how is the condition here expressed ? H. 751. K. § 185. Rem. 4; *would make, etc. if he might destroy*. — περὶ παντός: see Lex. περὶ. — ἵνα . . . ᾗ: H. 739. K. § 181. 2; Eng. idiom, *that there might be*, etc. — στρατεύειν depends on φόβος. H. 767. K. § 306. 1. (d.) — διεσπάρθαι, διασπείρω. — οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ, κτέ., *it is not possible that he will fail to attack*, etc. When are two negatives equivalent to an affirmative ? H. 844.

§ 4. τοσοῖδε: see Lex. — ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ: a hyperbole. The distance from Babylon seemed slight compared with the long way they had passed over.

§ 5. οὐδεὶς . . . οὐδὲ ὄθεν, *no one will furnish us even (villages) from which*: when do two negatives in the same clause strengthen the negation, and when are they equivalent to an affirmative ? H. 843. 844. — ἐπισιτιούμεθα: ἐπισιτίζω: formation of the Att. fut. ? H. 876. K. § 83. — ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς ἔσται, *there will be no one who will act as guide*. Cf. ὁ τολμήσων, 2, 3, 5. — ἅμα w. the particip. denotes with emphasis the contemporaneousness of the two actions,—the one mentioned in the dependent clause, and

the one, in the principal clause: *and at the same time that we are doing*, etc. — ἀφεστήξει: fut. pf. fr. ἀφίστημι. — οἱ πρόσθεν ὄντες: sc. φίλοι suggested by φίλος in the preceding clause: πολέμιοι is predicate.

§ 6. ποταμός: emphatic position; in the comm. grammatical order, it would stand after ἄλλος. — ἄρα: differs how fr. ἄρα? fr. οὐν? See Lex. — ἡμῖν: const.? διαβατέος: force? Difference in meaning between the personal and impers. const. of the verbal? Does the const. here give greater prominence to ποταμός? H. 804. ff. K. § 168. — δ' οὐν: force? cf. note 1, 2, 12; *but we certainly know*, etc. — οἶδαμεν: rare in Attic, = ἴσμεν. H. 409. 6. Rem. a. K. § 143. — ἀδύνατον: impers., sc. ἐστί. — οὐ μὲν δὴ: cf. note 1, 9, 13. — νικῶντες, ἡττωμένων: H. 789. e. K. § 176. 1. (c.) — οὐδένα οἶόν τε: sc. ἐστί, *it is not possible that any one*, etc.

§ 7. βασιλέα: subj. of ὁμόσαι, emphatic in position: αὐτόν (i. e. τὸν βασιλ.) is expressed for perspicuity; *I do not know why it is necessary that the king*, etc. — εἴπερ προθυμείται ..., οὐκ οἶδα, κτε.: force? H. 745. K. § 185. 2. (1.) — ὃ, τι: const.? H. 552. a. K. § 159. 3. (7.) — πιστὰ ἄπιστα: paronomasia of antithetical words.

§ 8. εἰς οἶκον: his satrapy was Caria. — Ὀρόντας: sc. ἔχων; satrap of Armenia.

§ 9. ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο: the same word at the end of one sentence and the beginning of another is emphatic. After so long a delay, it was worthy of emphasis that they were now *proceeding*. — στράτευμα: apposit. w. τὸ ... βαρβαρικόν.

§ 10. ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν: see Lex. ἐπί. — παρασάγγην καὶ μείον, lit. *a parasang and less*. In a comm. Eng. idiom, *a parasang or so*.

§ 11. ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ, *from the same (place)*. H. 509. K. § 154. Rem. 2.

§ 12. καλούμενον: cf. note on καλουμένη, 1, 2, 13. — εἴσω αὐτοῦ, *within it*. "What these words properly signify in respect to the wall is difficult to determine from the discrepant opinions of travellers." VOLL. — ποδῶν limits τεῖχος, the subj. (understood) of ἦν.

§ 13. ἐξευγμένην: see Lex. ζεύγνυμι. — αὗται: sc. αἱ διώρυχες. — κατετέμνητο: κατατέμνω. — ὥσπερ: sc. κατατέμνεται. — μελίνας: see Lex. — ἧ ὄνομα, *the name of which (was)*. Cf. ὄνομα αὐτῇ, 1, 5, 4.

§ 14. δένδρων: const.? H. 584. b. K. § 158. 5. (a.) — οἱ βάρβαροι: sc. ἐσκήνησαν.

§ 15. ἔτυχον ... ὄντες: see Lex. τυγχάνω. — ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι: ex-

press the condition suggested by *ἀν.* H. 748. 752. K. § 185. 2. (4.) and Rem. 4. — *καὶ ταῦτα*: cf. note 1, 4, 12. — *ὧν*: H. 789. f. K. § 176. 1. (c.); *though he was*: agrees w. the subj. of *ἐξήτει*.

§ 16. *ὅτι*: cf. note 1, 6, 8. — *ἐπεμψε*: cf. note on *ἦν*, 1, 2, 3. — *μή*: H. 743. K. § 177. 7.

§ 17. *ὥς*: before *διανοεῖται*, causal; before *μή*, final. See Lex.

§ 18. *ἐταράχθη, ἐφοβεῖτο*: change of tense, why?

§ 19. *τό τε ἐπιθήσεσθαι καὶ λύσειν, κτέ.*: subj. of *εἶη*; the predicate adj. *ἀκόλουθα* is neut. plur. H. 511. Rem. i. K. § 147. 1. — *δῆλον*: so. *ἐστί*; a transition to the *orat. recta*. — *ἐπιτιθημένων, the persons making an attack*, agrees w. the subj. of *νικᾶν* and *ἡττᾶσθαι*. — *οὐδέ*: connect w. *ἔχοιμεν*. Notice the form of condit. and conclusion. H. 747. 748. 750. K. § 185. 2. (3.) (4.) — *ὅποι ... σωθῶμεν*: *ἀν* omitted. H. 759. K. § 183. 2. (b.)

§ 20. *ὅποι, κτέ.*: cf. note § 19. — *λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας*: repeated for emphasis. Cf. *ἄριστον*, 2, 3, 5.

§ 21. *τὶς* imparts an indefinite force to *πόση*; *about how large*. — *ἡ* points out the whole clause following as attributive of *χώρα*. — *πολλή*: so. *ἡ χώρα ... ἐστί*.

§ 22. *ὑποπέμψαιεν*: why optat.? H. 731. K. § 180. 5. Force of *ὑπό* in compos.? See Lex. Two forms of the aor. act. optat. 3d pers. plur.? Which is more comm.? H. 349. Rem. b. K. § 116. 9. — *διελόντες*: *διαίρειω*. — *ἐρύματα*: appos. w. *τὸν Τίγ.* and *τὴν διώρ.* — *ἐνθεν*: see Lex. — *καὶ τῶν ... ἐνότων*: H. 790. c. K. § 176. 1. (b.) and 2; *since also there were in (it) those who would till (the land)*. — *γένοιτο*: H. 731. K. § 180. 5; *it might become*, etc.

§ 23. *μέντοι ... ὅμως, but nevertheless*, i. e. though they thought there was no ground for alarm.

§ 24. *ἔως*: subst. — *ὥς οἷόν τε*: see Lex. *ὥς*, and *οἶος*. — *τῶν παρὰ*: cf. note 1, 1, 5. — *διαβαινόντων*: *while they* (the Greeks) *were crossing*. Cf. note on *ιόντων*, 1, 4, 12. — *ᾤχετο ἀπ.*: more picturesque than *ἀπῆλσε*; see Lex. *οἶχομαι*.

§ 25. *ὤκειτο*: see Lex. *οἰκέω*; cf. note on *ἦν*, 1, 4, 6. — *ἡ ὄνομα*: cf. note § 13.

§ 26. *εἰς δύο, two abreast*. — *ἐπιστήσειε*: force of the optat.? H. 757. K. § 183. 3. (c.)

§ 27. *πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων*, lit. *except slaves*, i. e. *but not to take any of the inhabitants with them as slaves*.

§ 28. *ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον*: notice the asyndeton; often found thus in the enumeration of different particulars.

## CHAP. V.

During a halt of three days at the river Zapatas, Clearchus seeks and obtains an interview with Tissaphernes. He is so far deceived by the wily Persian that he takes with him four other generals and twenty captains for a second interview. The Greek generals are made prisoners and the captains put to the sword. Ariaeus repairs at once to the Grecian camp, and demands an immediate surrender. Cleanor, in behalf of the Greeks, returns a reproachful answer.

§ 1. *φανερὰ, ἐπιβουλὴ*: emphatic position.

§ 2. *ἔδοξεν, κτέ., εἴ πως δύναιτο*: *condit. fourth form, conclus. first*. H. 745. ff. K. § 185. 2. — *παῦσαι*: connected by *καί* to *συγγενέσθαι*, and understood w. *δύναιτο*. — *πρὶν ... γενέσθαι*: H. 769. K. § 183. Rem. — *ἐρούντα* (fr. *φημί*): force? H. 789. d. K. § 176. 1. (e.)

§ 3. *Τισσαφέρην*: declens.? H. 198. K. § 71. A. L. G. — *ἡμῖν*: const.? H. 600. K. § 161. 2. (d.) Comm. const. for the agent? — *σέ*: why not enclit. here? H. 111. b. K. § 16. 3. (b.) — *ἡμᾶς*: obj. of *φυλαττόμενον*.

§ 4. *οὐ ... οὔτε ... τέ, I am not only unable to, etc., but also I, etc.* Cf. note on *μήτε ... τέ*, 2, 2, 8. — *αἰσθεσθαι*: how would this be accented if it were 2d aor.? — *εἰς λόγους σοι εἰλεῖν, to enter into a conference with you*. *σοί*: const.? H. 601. K. § 161. 2. — *ἐξέλοιμεν, ἐξαιρέω*.

§ 5. *τοὺς μὲν, τοὺς δέ*: partitive apposit. w. *ἀνθρώπους*. — *φθάσαι ... πρὶν παθεῖν, to get the start* (sc. in inflicting injury) *before suffering* (any harm). — *ἐποίησαν, κτέ.*: see Lex. *ποιέω*. — *κακά, τοὺς μέλλοντας*: const.? H. 555. K. § 160. 2. — *τοιούτου, οὐδέν, any such thing*, i. e. as the infliction of injury.

§ 6. *νομίζων*: causal. — When does the infin. take *ἄν*? H. 783. K. § 153. 2. (d.) Express this clause (*τὰς ... παύεσθαι*) with a finite mood, omitting *νομίζων*.

§ 7. *πρῶτον μὲν*: instead of *ἔπειτα δέ*, the corrol. sentence begins § 8, *τῶν δέ, κτέ.* — *ἡμᾶς ὅρκοι*: a hyperbaton for *ὅρκοι ἡμᾶς*, making each word emphatic. H. 885. K. § 348. 9. L. G. — *τούτων*, i. e. *τῶν θεῶν* depends on *παρημεληκώς*. — *τὸν θεῶν πόλεμον*: obj. of *ἀποφεύγει*; why first in the sentence? — *ἀπό*: force here? See Lex. — *ἄν* w. the optat. here potential, *could*, etc. — *πάντη πάντα ... πανταχῇ πάντων*: notice the paronomasia. Cf. 1, 9, 2; 2, 4, 7. With the striking language of this section, cf. Ps. 139: 7-10.

§ 8. *τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ὄρκων*: hendiadys, i. e. two coördinate



clauses where we might expect a principal and subordinate clause; lit. *concerning the gods and the oaths*, instead of *concerning the oaths (in the name) of the gods*. — οἷς relates to θεῶν. — σέ: why accented? cf. note § 3.

§ 9. σοί, σοῦ: why accented? cf. note § 3. — Difference between πᾶσα ὁδός and πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός? H. 537. K. § 148. 10. (c.) — φοβερός, φοβερώτατον: paronomasia. — φοβερώτατον: predicate neut. for fem. H. 522. K. § 147. (b.)

§ 10. μανέντες: μαίνομαι. — ἄλλο τι (sc. ἐστίν) ἤ, lit. (is) *anything else (true) than (that)*, etc., i. e. *should we not*, etc.; Lat. *nonne*. ἄν: join w. ἀγωνιζόμεθα. H. 508. b. 829. a. K. § 346. 2. (d.)

§ 11. γάρ: expegetive; see Lex. — τῶν τότε: H. 492. f. K. § 148. 8. — εἶναι: sc. αὐτόν, as subj. — βούλοιο: force of the optat.? H. 729. b. K. § 182. 8. (c.) — σέ and σοί: emphat. position. — σοὶ ... οὖσαν: sc. ὁρῶ. ταύτην: cf. ταύτας, 1, 10, 18. τοῦτον, 2, 2, 20.

§ 12. ὅστις, κτέ.: a relative clause often denotes, as in Latin, a result; *so mad that he*, etc. — ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐρῶ γάρ, *but this is not all; for I will state*, etc.

§ 13. ἄν ... παρασχεῖν: ἄν παῦσαι: subj. why omitted? H. 775. K. § 172. 2. — ἐνοχλοῦντα agrees w. ἄ. — Αἰγυπτίους: emphat. position; obj. of κολάσαισθε. — τῆς ... οὔσης: sc. δυνάμεως; const.? H. 585. K. § 158. 7. (β.); *than (by using) the force now with me*. Instead of μᾶλλον τῆς, κτέ., μᾶλλον ἢ τῇ ... οὔσῃ would be grammatical.

§ 14. σύ: subj. of βούλοιο: why placed before εἰ? — Dif. between τῷ and τῷ? Condition εἰ w. the optat., conclusion ἄν w. the optat., denotes what? — ὡς w. the superlat., see Lex.; before δεσπότης, as. — ἀναστρέφω: sc. ἄν; H. 722. c. K. § 260. Rem. 7. L. G. Cf. 1, 6, 2, where ἄν is expressed w. the first optat. (in apodosis) and understood w. the rest. — χάριτος: sc. ἔνεκα. — ἧς: obj. of ἔχομεν, attracted to the case of the antecedent. — σοῦ σοί: emphatic paronomasia. δικαίως: emphatic position.

§ 15. οὕτω: connect w. θαυμαστόν. — τὸ ... ἀπιστεῖν, *the fact that you*, etc.; subj. of δοκεῖ. — τίς, κτέ.: a more pointed expression for the more comm. form τοῦτον ὅστις, *the name of him who*, etc. — ἀπημείφθη: poetic; perh. used as a high-flown word in irony.

§ 16. ἄλλ': cf. note 1, 7, 6. — ἅμα ἂν ... εἶναι, lit. *you seem to me that you would*, etc.; personal for impers. const. H. 777. K. § 175. Rem. 5; Eng. idiom, *it seems to me that you would be*,

etc. *ἄν*: connect w. *εἶναι*. *κακόνους*: why nom.? H. 775. K. § 172. 3. — *ὥς*: final. Force of *ἄν*? H. 741. K. § 181. 3.

§ 17. *εἰ* ... *ἐβουλόμεθα*: what is implied in this condition? H. 746. K. § 185. 2. (2.) — Is *πότερα* to be rendered? See Lex. — *δέ* may often, as here, be expressed by the Eng. *while*. *ἀντιπάσχειν* depends on *κίνδυνος*.

§ 18. *ἀλλά*: in questions, nearly = Eng. *or*. — *ἀπορεῖν ἄν*: differs how fr. *ἀπορεῖν*, § 17. — *οὐ*: supply w. the following coördinate members of this question, *τοσαῦτα δὲ κτέ.*, *τοσοῦτοι δὲ κτέ*. Force of *οὐ* in a question? of *μή*? H. 829. K. § 187. (4.) (6.) — *ὄντα*: H. 796. 799. K. § 175. — *ὕμιν* ... *πορευτέα*: H. 804. 805. K. § 168. — *ὅποσους*: depends on *μάχεσθαι*; implied antecedent, *τοσοῦτους*, obj. of *ταμιεύεσθαι*. — *εἰς* ... *οὓς*, and some of them (the rivers), obj. of *διαβαίητε*; for the const. see H. 812. K. § 331. Rem. 4. L. G. Cf. *ἦν* ... *οὓς*, 1, 5, 7. — *ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς*: paronomasia to give the expression more point.

§ 19. *ἡττώμεθα*: optat. Form of the indic. and subjunct.? — *ἀλλὰ* ... *γέ τοι*, yet, at least, certainly. — *ὄν*: a relat. pron. may often be best rendered by a conjunction and demonst. pron.; and *having burned this, we should be able*, etc.

§ 20. *ἄν* belongs to *ἐξελοίμεθα*, and is repeated because of the intervening words. — *μηδένα*: sc. *πόρον*, obj. of *ἔχοντες*; why not *οὐδένα*? H. 839. K. § 177. 5. end.

§ 21. *ἀπόρων ἐστί*, it belongs to (persons) without resources, etc. — *καὶ τούτων*, and that too. H. 680. 508. b. K. § 812. Rem. 8. L. G. Cf. *καὶ ταῦτα*, 1, 4, 8. — *οἷτινες ἐθέλουσι*: anacoluthon; from the preceding const. we should expect here the infin.; and so it is better to render, *to wish*, etc.

§ 22. *ἐξόν*: acc. abs. H. 792. K. § 176. 3; when it was permitted, etc. — *τούτου*, of this, i. e. the fact that we did not undertake to destroy you: *τούτου* depends on *αἷτιος*, sc. *ἐστίν*. — *τοῦ* ... *γενέσθαι*, καὶ ... *καταβῆναι*: depends on *ἔρως*; my earnest desire of becoming trusted, etc. (lit. that I become, etc. and that I go down, etc.). — *ξενικῶ*: incorporated in the relat. clause. Cf. note on *ὅσον* ... *στράτ.*, 1, 2, 1. *τούτῳ* repeats the idea of the antecedent; cf. *ταύτην*, § 11, and note. Render, and of going down, strong through benefits (conferred), with that mercenary force with which Cyrus came up, trusting to it on account of, etc. *ᾧ* depends on *πιστεύων*. — *μισθοδοσίας, εὐεργεσίας*: plur. denoting the acts performed at different times.

§ 23. μοι ὑμεῖς: cf. note on ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς, § 18. — ὀρθήν: predicate adj.; connect w. τιάραν. — τὴν ... καρδίᾳ: sc. τιάραν. — ἕτερος: Tissaphernes means of course himself; and would give Clearchus to understand that he aspired to the Persian throne.

§ 24. εἶπεν: sc. ὁ Κλέαρχος. — ἔφη: sometimes inserted in the midst of words quoted, even when εἶπεν has preceded them. — τοιούτων ... ὑπαρχόντων: gen. abs.; *when such inducements exist*, etc.

§ 25. μοί: ethical dat. H. 599. K. § 161. 2. (d.) — οἱ τε ... λοχαγοί: appos. w. the subj. of βούλεσθε. — ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεί: cf. ἐν τῷ φανερό, 1, 3, 21.

§ 26. καὶ ... αὖ: cf. note 1, 1, 7. — σοῦ: why accented? H. 232. K. § 16. 3. (a.)

§ 27. δηλὸς ἦν ... οἰόμενος, *manifestly thought*, etc. Cf. 1, 2, 11, note. — διακίσθαι: see Lex. διάκειμαι. — ἐκείνος: subj. of ἔλεγεν. — χρῆναι ... ἐκέλευσε, *that it was necessary for those whom he (Clearchus) bade to go*, etc. — τῶν Ἑλλήνων limits the omitted antecedent of οἱ, which is the subj. of τιμωρηθῆναι; *and that those of the Greeks, who*, etc. — αὐτοὺς: intens.; *themselves* (in distinction fr. those whom they may have calumniated).

§ 28. αὐτῷ: i. e. Clearchus.

§ 29. μὴ κτέ., *that not all*, etc.: μὴδὲ πιστεύειν, *and not to trust*, etc.

§ 30. ὥς εἰς ἀγοράν: hence, *unarmed*.

§ 31. ἐπὶ Σύραις: without the article, as comm. when without an attributive.

§ 32. συναλμβάνοντο, κατεκόπησαν: force of the imperf.? of the aor.? — ὥτινι ... πάντας: cf. note on ὅστις, 1, 1, 5.

§ 33. ἡμφεγνόουν: fr. ἀμφιγνοῶ; augmented at the beginning of the prep. and of the simple verb. K. § 91. 1 and 3.

§ 36. προσελθεῖν ... εἴ τις, κτέ., *if there was any one of the Greeks, either general*, etc., *that he come forward*. εἴη: why optat.? H. 734. 736. K. § 188.

§ 37. Ὀρχομένιος: called 2, 1, 10, Ἀρκάς; hence, fr. Orchomenus in Arcadia, not fr. the city of this name in Boeotia. — Ξενοφῶν: mentioned once before, 1, 8, 15. — ἐτύχανεν ἀπὸν: see Lex. τυγχάνω.

§ 38. ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον: a verb of rest w. a const. denoting motion. H. 618. a. K. § 300. 3. (b.) L. G. — τὴν δίκην: force of τὴν? Cf. 1, 3, 20, note. — αὐτοῦ: i. e. Clearchus. — ἀπαιτεῖ: differs how fr. αἰτεῖ? See Lex. Cf. 1, 2, 11. — ἐκείνου: i. e. the

king; gen. limiting δούλου. As a demonst. w. δούλου, what would be its position? H. 538. K. § 148. 10. (g.) — With εἶναι and ἦσαν, supply τὰ ὅπλα.

§ 39. ἡμῖν depends on τοὺς αὐτοὺς. H. 603. K. § 161. 2. (b.) — ἄνδρας: obj. of ἀπολωλέκατε. — ὥς: declarative; omit in rendering either οἵτινες or ὥς. The change in const. at this point (as though οἵτινες above were forgotten) indicates the excitement of Cleanor; so also, the repetition of the idea, τοὺς . . . προδεδωκότες. — τέ . . . καί, *have both destroyed . . . and are coming*, etc.

§ 40. γάρ refers to some thought not expressed; perhaps in this form, *We have not betrayed them, for*, etc.

§ 41. δίκαιον: sc. ἐστί; impers. — Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων: made prominent in the sentence by their position before ἐπέειπε. The const. may be imitated in Eng.

## CHAP. VI.

Character of the five generals; particularly of Clearchus, Proxenus, and Menon.

§ 1. ἀπομηθέντες (ἀποτέμνω) τὰς κεφαλὰς, *having been beheaded*: const.? H. 549. a. 694. a. K. § 159. 3. (7.) § 160. Rem. 5. Const. in the act.? See Lex. — εἰς: apposit. w. στρατηγοί: μέν; correl. δέ, § 16. — ἐμπείρως ἐχόντων: see Lex. ἔχω. — αὐτοῦ: const.? H. 584. c. K. § 158. 5. (c.) — ἐκ πάντων . . . δόξας: a union of two constructions, since δόξας would take πᾶσι. The const. of ἐκ πάντων seems to be determined by the adv. ὁμολογουμένως. Cf. 1, 9, 1. — ἐσχάτως: emphatic position.

§ 2. πόλεμος: the allusion is to the Peloponnesian war, which lasted from 431 to 404 B. C. — παρέμενεν, *he remained*, i. e. at home. — τοὺς Ἕλληνας: i. e. those who occupied the Thracian Chersonesus. Cf. 1, 3, 4. — ὥς w. particip.; see Lex.

§ 3. πῶς indicates that Xenophon was ignorant of the reasons. — ἐνταῖθα introduces the principal clause with emphasis.

§ 4. τῶν . . . τελῶν: τέλος. — ἄλλη γέγραπται has for logical subj. the preceding clause; *has been described elsewhere* (not in 1, 1, 9, nor 1, 3, 3, nor anywhere else in the Anab.).

§ 5. ἀπὸ . . . χρημάτων: cf. 1, 1, 9. — ἐπολέμει, ἐνίκησε, ἔφερε καὶ ἤγε: why the change fr. imperf. to aor. and again to imperf.? — ἀπὸ τούτοι, *from this (time)*. — ἔφερε: see Lex. φέρω.

§ 6. φιλοπολέμον: made emphatic by separation from the subst. ἀνδρός. — ὅστις ... αἰρείται: cf. note on οἵτινες, 2, 5, 21. — ἐξόν: cf. note 2, 5, 22. — ὥστε: see Lex. — πολεμῶν: force of the particip. here? H. 789. b. K. § 176. 1. (d.)

§ 7. οὕτω: see Lex. — ὅτι: exegetical of ταύτη; *in this, that he was*, etc. — ἄγων, φρόνιμος: sc. ἦν. — πανταχοῦ πάντες: paronomasia.

§ 8. ὥς δυνατόν, *as far as possible*. — ἐκ, *with* (lit. *out of*). — κἀκείνος = καὶ ἐκείνος: καὶ appears here to be intens.; though not sufficiently so, to admit of being rendered, *even*. — ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος: cf. 1, 3, 15; καὶ is here also intens., *as any other one even*; more fully, *as capable as any other person whatever*. Hert., Matt., Vollbrecht, and others, would omit the rendering of καὶ in this place; as before ἐκείνος. — αὐτῷ: ethical dat. H. 599. K. § 284. 10. (d.) L. G. — πειστέον ... Κλεάρχῳ: H. 804. ff. K. § 168. Why εἶη and not ἐστί? H. 731. K. § 188.

§ 9. ἐκ τοῦ ... εἶναι, *from the fact that he was*, or *by being*, etc. H. 778. ff. K. § 173. χαλεπός: const.? H. 775. K. § 173. 2. — ὁρᾶν depends on συγγρός: H. 767. K. § 171. 2. (d.) Rem. — ἐσθ' ὅτε: H. 812. K. § 331. Rem. 5. Cf. ἦν ... οὕς, 1, 5, 7. ἐσθ' ὅτε is more emphatic than ἐνίστε, as οὐδὲ εἰς is more emphatic than οὐδέις. — ἀκολάστου στρατεύματος: prominent position.

§ 10. ἔφασαν: cf. note 1, 9, 23. — ἀφέξεσθαι: ἀπέχω.

§ 11. οἱ στρατιῶται: emphatic position.

§ 12. ὅτε ... γίνοντο ... ἐξείη: force of the optat.? H. 729. b. K. § 183. 3. (c.) — ὥσπερ ... διδάσκαλον. It is to be hoped this comparison has now lost its force!

§ 13. καὶ γὰρ οὖν: cf. note 1, 9, 8. — ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι: sc. κατεχόμενοι; *constrained by want*, lit. *by the fact that they were in want*. — παρείησαν: force of the optat.? — πειθομένοις agrees as pred. w. the obj. of ἐχρήτο: these persons (those described in the former part of the sentence) *he employed, obeying (him) implicitly*. Cf. πολεμία, 2, 5, 11.

§ 14. τὰ ... ποιοῦντα: subj. of ἦν; lit. *those things making the soldiers with him to be useful*, etc.; more freely, *those things rendering his soldiers*, etc. — τὸ ... ἔχειν, *boldness towards*, etc.: καὶ τὸ ... φοβεῖσθαι, *and the fact that (they) feared*, etc.

§ 16. εὐθὺς: see Lex. — ἔδωκε ... ἀργύριον: lit. *gave money to*, i. e. *obtained instruction from*, etc.

§ 17. ἱκανός: pred. w. εἶναι, *having supposed that he was*

*already able.* H. 775. K. § 172. 3. — ἄρχειν, ἡττᾶσθαι, depend on *ικανός*.

§ 18. ἄν δέλοι: force? H. 722. K. § 180. 6. — μή (sc. *τούτων τυγχάνειν*): emphatic position.

§ 19. μέντοι: cf. note 2, 3, 10. — φανερός: cf. note on δῆλος, 1, 2, 11.

§ 20. ᾧτο ἀρκεῖν ... ἐπαινεῖν, *he thought it sufficient for being and seeming ... to praise the one doing well*, etc. — ἔτων: gen. limiting subj. of ἦν. — συνόντων: σύνειμι.

§ 22. ὧν, *those things which*; antecedent of ὧν obj. of *κατεργάζεσθαι*. — τῷ ἡλιθίῳ depends on τὸ αὐτό: H. 603. K. § 161. 2. (b.) — εἶναι depends on ἐνόμιζε, *he thought ... to be*, etc.

§ 23. *τούτῳ* depends on ἐπιβουλεύων.

§ 24. λαμβάνειν depends on χαλεπόν. — *μόνος ... ὧν*, *he thought he alone knew it was easiest*, etc. *μόνος*: connect w. the subj. of εἶδεναι. H. 775. K. § 172. 3. ὧν: H. 796. 799. K. § 175. 1. (a.)

§ 25. The antecedent of ὅσους (sc. πάντας) is the obj. of ἐφοβέιτο: with this obj. ὠπλισμένους agrees.

§ 26. τῶν ἀπαιδευτῶν: partitive gen. w. εἶναι. — τοὺς πρώτους = τοὺς πρωτεύοντας, sc. *φιλία*, *those occupying the foremost place (in friendship)*. — *τούτους*: antec. of οἷς; obj. of κτήσασθαι, *he thought it necessary to acquire these by calumniating*, etc. διαβάλλων: adjunct of the subj. of κτήσασθαι, attracted to the nom. by the subj. of the leading verb. Cf. note on *μόνος*, § 24.

§ 27. τὸ ... παρέχεσθαι: obj. of ἐμηχανᾶτο. — δύναιτο ... ἄν: H. 722. K. § 180. 6. — *πλείστα*: connect w. ἀδικεῖν.

§ 28. τὰ ἀφανῆ: connect w. ψεύδεσθαι, as acc. of specification. — Ἀριστίπῳ: cf. 1, 1, 10; 1, 2, 6. — Ἀριαίῳ depends on οἰκειότατος. — αὐτός: i. e. Menon. — ἀγένειος ὧν γενειῶντα: juxtaposition of contrasted words; spoken with bitter contempt.

§ 29. ἀπέθανε: subj. Menon. — ἀποτμηθέντες, κτέ.: cf. § 1. — *τυχεῖν*, *to have*, etc. Uses of the aor. infin.? Cf. note 1, 8, 28.

§ 30. καὶ τοῦτω, *likewise*; lit. *these also*. Cf. καὶ *τούτους*, 1, 1, 11. — *τούτων*: prominent position; depends on *κατεγέλα*. — *εἰς φιλίαν*, *in respect to friendship*, i. e. *for a want of fidelity in friendship*. — ἀπεθανέτην, ἦσθην. Is the dual always used in speaking of two objects? H. 517. K. § 147. Rem. 3.

## BOOK THIRD.

“Ὅσα παραβάντας τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.—Hostilities between the Persians and Greeks after the treaty was broken, with an account of the march from the river Zapatas to the Carduchian mountains.

## CHAP. I.

The Greeks are in the greatest dejection. Xenophon, waking from a remarkable dream, rouses first the captains of Proxenus and urges them to immediate action. The other captains and the surviving generals are then called, and after deliberation in which Xenophon takes a conspicuous part, they conclude to elect new generals in place of those who were taken by the Persians.

§ 1. Ὅσα ... μάχης: subject of the first book; ὅσα ... σπονδαίς, subject of the second book. — ἀπιόντων, κτέ.: how is the gen. abs. to be rendered here? H. 790. a. K. § 176. 1. (a.) Rem. 1.

§ 2. οἱ στρατηγοί: those mentioned in 2, 5, 81. — συνειλημ- fr. συλλαμβάνω. — ἐπὶ ταῖς ... ὁδοῖς: cf. note 2, 4, 4. — πολλά and πολεμιαί belong both to ἔθνη and πόλεις: H. 511. h. K. § 147. Rem. 1; many both nations and cities (that were) hostile. — μύρια στάδια: i. e. by the most direct route. It was much farther by the way in which they had come. Cf. 2, 2, 6. — προῦδεδώκεσαν (for προεδ-) ... οἱ ... βάρβαροι: the inversion of the grammat. order gives emphasis both to the subj. and to the verb. — νικῶντες, ἡττηθέντων: force of the particip.? H. 789. e. 790. d. 751. K. § 176. 1. (c.) § 185. Rem. 4.

§ 3. ὀλίγοι, few (not a few): partitive apposit. w. the general subj. to which ἔχοντες and ἐννοούμενοι refer. — εἰς: cf. note 1, 7, 1. — ἐτύγχανεν: sc. ὦν; see Lex. τυγχάνω. — πατρίδων ... παίδων: cf. note 2, 4, 28.

§ 4. ὦν: after στρατιώτης, concessive; after ξένος, causal. — ὦν: obj. of νομίζειν. αὐτός: connect w. the subj. of νομίζειν. H. 775. K. § 172. 3.

§ 5. ὑποπτεύσας implies the notion of fear, hence followed by μή, lest. — πρὸς: see Lex. — εἴη: subj.? The clause Κύρω ... γενέσθαι. — ὅτι: causal. — ἐλθόντα agrees w. the implied subj. of ἀνακοινῶσαι. Cf. λαβόντα, 1, 2, 1. One might expect here ἐλθόντι; but the change of termination -ῶντι, -όντα was more pleasing to the ear.

§ 6. ἐπήρετο : ἐπέρομαι. — Ξύων, εὐχόμενος : force? H. 789. b. K. § 176. 1. (d.) — ἄν before Ξεῶν, also before καί, belongs to ἔλθοι. H. 873. a. K. § 261. 3. — ὁδόν : cogn. acc. w. ἔλθοι. — πράξας : cf. note 1, 9, 10. — Ξεοῖς : for Ξεούς by inverse attraction; obj. of ἀνείλεν. H. 817. K. § 182. Rem. 4.

§ 7. οὐ stands regularly before the verb; here placed before τοῦτο, making it emphatic. — τοῦτο is followed by an explanatory clause; hence, denotes what follows. H. 679. — ἰτέον εἶναι, *that (he) must go*. H. 804. K. § 168.

§ 8. οἷς, (to those) whom. H. 810. K. § 182. 6. — ὁρμᾶν τὴν ὁδόν : cogn. acc. Cf. § 6.

§ 9. ἐπειδάν : see Lex. — ἀποπέμψειν depends on εἴπε, as though ὅτι were not expressed. After ὅτι, we should expect a finite mood. The change to the infin. is an anacoluthon. — εἰς Πισίδας. Cf. 1, 1, 11.

§ 10. ἦδει : sc. ὁ Πρόξενος. — τὴν ... ὁρμὴν : sc. οὖσαν; *that the expedition was*, etc. — εἶη : why optat.? H. 731. K. § 180. 5.

§ 11. καθεύδειν : force of the pres. infin.? λαχών : λαγχάνω. — ἔδοξεν, κτέ. explains ὅναρ; hence the asyndeton. σκηπτός : subj. of ἔδοξεν. — πᾶσαν : sc. ἔδοξεν; impers., *it seemed that all (the house)*, etc.

§ 12. μὴ οὐ, *that not*; connect w. ἐφοβείτο. How is *that not* expressed in Latin after a verb of fearing?

§ 13. ὁποῖόν τι ... ἰδεῖν, *but of what import it is to have* (lit. to see), etc. — πρῶτον μὲν : correl. w. ἐκ τούτου, § 15. — ἐπὶ w. dat., cf. 1, 1, 4. — εἰ γενησόμεθα ..., τί ἐμποδόν : sc. ἐστί. Force? H. 745. K. § 185. 2. (1.) — τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχὶ ... ἀποθανεῖν, *what prevents our dying after having*, etc. For μὴ οὐ w. the infin., see H. 847. b. K. § 177. 8. Cf. 2, 3, 11.

§ 14. ὥσπερ ἐξόν, *just as though it were permitted*. Cf. note 2, 5, 22.

§ 15. ἐκ τούτου : cf. 1, 2, 17. — οὔτε : correl. w. οὔτε; οὐδέ, *not even*. ὑμεῖς : sc. δύνασθε καθεύδειν. — ἐν οἷοις : neut., *in what (circumstances)*.

§ 16. δηλον ὅτι : see Lex. δηλος. — πρότερον ... πρίν : cf. note on πρόσθεν πρίν, 1, 1, 10. — οὐ : connect w. ἐξέφηναν (ἐκφαίνω); placed before πρότερον to emphasize that word.

§ 17. πείσεσθαι may come in form from what two dif. words? takes dif. cases from these dif. words; what are they? Cf. note 1, 3, 5. — καὶ τοῦ ... καὶ τοῦ : emphatic expression. — καὶ τεθνη-



κότος ἤδη, *even when already dead*,—an act particularly shocking to the Greek moral sentiment. — τὴν χεῖρα: τὴν δεξιάν: cf. 1, 10, 1. — ἡμᾶς: subj. of παθεῖν; made emphatic by position. The subj. of παθεῖν being the same as the subj. of the principal verb, why is it here expressed? H. 775. b. K. § 172. Rem. 1. — ἐστρατεῦσαμεν, κτέ.: an independent sentence connected to a relat. clause. Render, *and who made an expedition against*, etc.

§ 18. ἐπὶ πᾶν: see Lex. πᾶς. — τοῦ στρατεῦσαι limits φόβον. — ἐπὶ ἐκείνῳ: cf. ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, §§ 13, 17. — πάντα: obj. of ποιητέον (sc. ἐστὶν ἡμῖν). H. 804. b. K. § 168. 2.

§ 19. διαθεώμενος, κτέ., *considering in respect to them how extensive*, etc. αὐτῶν depends on the relat. clause ὅσῃν ... ἔχοιεν taken together as a subst. idea. KRÜG., HERT., VOLL. But Kühner governs it by διαθεώμενος. Matthiæ makes it limit χώραν: thus, διαθ. αὐτῶν τὴν χώραν, ὅσῃν καὶ κτέ.

§ 20. τὰ ... στρατιωτῶν: *emphat. position*; obj. of ἐνθυμοίμην; force of the optat. here? H. 729. b. K. § 183. 3. (c.) — μετεῖη: see Lex. μέτειμι; why optat.? H. 731. K. § 180. 5. — ὅτου ... ἔχοντας, *I knew that few still had the means with which*, etc. ὅτου: H. 578. K. § 158. 7. (γ.) ἔχοντας: H. 796. ff. K. § 175. — ἄλλως, κτέ.: supply ἤδειν; *I knew that our oaths restrained us from procuring*, etc. *in any other way than by*, etc. ἡμᾶς: subj. of πορίζεσθαι, which w. its subj. depends on κατέχοντας. — ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος resumes the idea of ἐνθυμοίμην.

§ 21. ἀθλα: apposit. w. ἀγαθὰ; *as prizes*. — ὁπότεροι: supply antecedent τούτων, (*of those*) *whichever party*, etc. The figure in this sentence was happily chosen to inspire the Greeks, who were so fond of prize contests.

§ 22. ἐπιτορκεῖν θεούς is analogous to δμνῶναι θεούς. H. 544. a. K. § 159. 3. (4.) — ἐξείναι: sc. ἡμῖν. — πολύ: connect w. μέizoni. — τούτοις, (*is permitted*) *to them*, i. e. the Persians.

§ 23. ἔχομεν ... ἔχομεν δὲ καί: anaphora w. the omission of μέν in the first member. — σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς: see Lex. θεός. Xenophon's constant recognition of dependence on the gods is a marked feature in his narrative. — οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες (sc. εἰσὶν) ... ἦν οἱ θεοί ...: force of the const.? H. 747. K. § 185. 2. (3).

§ 24. ἀλλ' ... ἄλλοι, *but since others also perhaps*. — Why the neg. μή? H. 833. K. § 177. 5. — παρακαλοῦντας: fut. — τοῦ ἐξορμηῆσαι: H. 779. 544. b. K. § 173. § 158. 7. (a.) — φάνητε, κτέ.: the asyndeton heightens the rhetorical effect.

§ 25. ἡγεῖσθαι ... ἡγοῦμαι: notice the two meanings of this word. — ἐρύκειν depends on ἀκμάζειν.

§ 26. πάντες: emphatic position; making the exc. πλὴν κτέ. more striking. — πλὴν ... ἦν, *save that there was*, etc. — βοιωτιά-ζων τῇ φωνῇ: because he wished to pass for a Greek. — φλυναροίη ... λέγοι: why optat.? H. 734. ff. K. § 188; *any one talked nonsense who*, etc. — ἄλλως πως ... ἦ: cf. § 20. — Why ἄν w. τυχεῖν? H. 783. K. § 153. 2. (d.) Express ὅτι after λέγοι and give the form of the finite verb instead of τυχεῖν. — πείσας: the means, *by*, etc.

§ 27. τοῖτοῖς depends on ταὐτῷ: *in the same (place) with these*. — ὅτε, κτέ. Cf. 2, 1, 8.

§ 28. εἰ οὐκ ἐποίησε, *what did he not do*, is more emphatic than the direct assertion πάντ' ἐποίησε.

§ 29. αὐτοῖς: the Persians. Cf. note on οἱ δέ, 1, 10, 4. — οὐ νῦν, κτέ., *are they not now, the wretched men, though beaten ... unable even to die*, etc. Force of οὐ in a question? H. 829. K. § 187. 3. (6.) — τοῦτου: i. e. τοῦ ἀποθανεῖν.

§ 30. ἀνθρώπων: used in contempt instead of ἀνδρα. — ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς: cf. ταὐτῷ ... τοῖτοῖς, § 27. — μήτε ... τέ: see Lex. μήτε. — ἀφελομένους, ἀναθέντας agree w. ἡμᾶς understood, the subj. of χρῆσθαι. — ὡς τοιούτῳ, *as such a person*, i. e. one on whom they had placed baggage (σκεύη ἀναθέντας).

§ 31. ἐντεῦθεν: asyndeton denoting haste. — οὐδέν: subj. of προσήκει. — ὅτα: const.? Cf. κεφαλᾶς, 2, 6, 1.

§ 32. εἴη, οἴχοιτο: why optat.? H. 757. K. § 183. 3. (c.)

§ 33. μέσαι νύκτες: cf. 1, 7, 1, note.

§ 34. καὶ αὐτοῖς συνελθεῖν, *both to come together ourselves*, etc. αὐτοῖς in app. w. ἡμῖν. — ἅπερ, *the very things which*; sc. ἔλεξας.

§ 35. Ἀλλά: cf. note 1, 7, 6; perhaps this thought is implied, (*I need not describe our situation*) *but*, etc. Cf. ἀλλά, § 31. — δῆλον ὅτι: cf. § 16. — ἡμῖν: agent w. ποιητέα. H. 805. K. § 168. 2. — ἐπί: cf. 1, 1, 4.

§ 36. Notice the position of μέγιστον and καιρόν, each emphatic.

§ 37. ὑμεῖς ... ὑμεῖς ... ὑμεῖς: emphatic anaphora, without μέν and δέ. — πλεονεκτέω contains the idea of the comparative; hence, takes the gen. τούτων. — ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς: obj. of ἀξιοῦν; *it is proper (that you) consider yourselves worthy both to be*, etc.

§ 38. πρῶτον μὲν: correl. w. ἐπειδὴν δέ, § 39. — ἀντικατασταθῶ-σιν: ἀντικαθίστημι. — ἂν ... γένοιτο: potential optat. H. 722. — συνελόντι: see Lex.; also H. 601. a. K. § 284. 3. (10.) (a.) L. G. —

ὥς ... εἰπεῖν : H. 772. K. § 186. Rem. 4. — οὐδαμοῦ : παντάπασιν : emphatic position.

§ 39. δι᾽ : sc. καταστήσασθαι, suggested by καταστήσῃσθε.

§ 40. ἀθύμως ... ἀθύμως : emphat. anaphora. — ἐχόντων : gen. abs. ; sc. τῶν στρατιωτῶν. Cf. ἰόντων, 1, 4, 12. — ὃ, τι : cf. τί, 1, 3, 18. — δέοι : sc. χρήσασθαι αὐτοῖς. τι is connected w. χρήσασθαι, as ὃ, τι w. χρήσαιτο.

§ 41. τί πείσονται : cf. note 1, 3, 5.

§ 42. ἡ ... ποιούσα : subj. of ἐστίν ; placed last for emphasis ; fem. agreeing w. the nearest predicate word, ἰσχύς. Cf. οἱ ἄνδρες εἰσιν οἱ ποιοῦντες, κτέ., 3, 2, 18. Render, *it is neither a multitude nor strength that achieves*, etc. — ὥς ... πολύ : see Lex. πολὺς.

§ 43. ἀνθρώποις : emphatic position. See Lex. ἀνὴρ. Dif. in meaning ? — τούτους : antecedent of ὅποσοι δέ ; as οὗτοι μὲν is the antecedent of ὅποσοι μὲν.

§ 44. ἡμᾶς : subj. of εἶναι and παρακαλεῖν (sc. ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι).

§ 45. Ἀλλὰ : cf. §§ 31, 35 ; also note 1, 7, 6. — τοσοῦτον ... ὅσον ... εἶναι, *in so far as I heard that you were*, etc. — βουλοίμην ἂν : potential optat. — ὅτι qualifies πλείστους : cf. note 1, 1, 6.

§ 46. αἰρέσθε : imperat., *do you who need choose*, etc. — συγκαλοῦμεν : cf. note on παρακαλοῦντας, § 24.

§ 47. τὰ δέοντα : subj. of μέλλοιτο and of περαίνοιτο.

## CHAP. II.

The whole army being called together, Chirisophus and Cleanor first address the soldiers briefly ; after them, Xenophon harangues the assembly at considerable length and with great skill : he concludes by proposing the order of march which is approved by all.

§ 1. καταστήσαντας : instead of dat. ; cf. note on λαβόντα, 1, 2, 1. — πρῶτον μὲν : correl. w. ἐπὶ τούτῳ, § 4. Cf. note 3, 1, 13.

§ 2. πρὸς as adv. : see Lex. — οἱ ... Ἀριαῖον : cf. note 2, 4, 2.

§ 3. ἐλθεῖν : supply ἡμᾶς as subj. ; ἄνδρας appos. w. ἡμᾶς. — εἰ δὲ μή : see Lex. εἰ. — ἀλλὰ ... γε, *yet at least*. — ποιήσειαν : force of the optat. ? H. 721. K. § 259. 3. (b.) L. G. ; *may the gods inflict on our enemies*.

§ 4. ἐπὶ τούτῳ, *after him*. — ὁρᾶτε μὲν, ὁρᾶτε δέ : emphatic anaphora. — εἵη : why optat. ? H. 734. ff. K. § 188. — περὶ πλείστου : see Lex. περί. — αὐτός ... αὐτός ... αὐτός : emphat. anaphora. — αὐτοῖς τούτοις, *by these very means*. Cf. 2, 3, 18 ; 2, 5, 27.

§ 5. βασιλέα καθιστάναι: cf. 2, 1, 4. — καὶ ἐδώκαμεν, κτέ.: cf. note on ἐστρατεύσαμεν, 3, 1, 17. Render, *and (to whom) we gave and (from whom) we received*, etc. — καὶ οὗτος, *even this man*. Cf. note on καὶ ταύτας, 1, 10, 18. — Notice the emphat. repetition Κῦρον ... Κύρου ... Κύρου.

§ 6. ἀποτίσαιτο: cf. note on ποιήσκειν, § 3. Force of ἀπο-? Cf. ἀπαιτέω, ἀποθύω. — τοῦτο: obj. of πάσχειν.

§ 7. ὁρθῶς ἔχειν depends on νομίζων. — ἀξιόσαντα agrees w. the subj. of τυγχάνειν: sc. αὐτόν; *that he, having deemed himself worthy of*, etc. ἐν τοῖτοις: i. e. ἐν τοῖς καλλίστοις.

§ 8. διὰ φιλίας: διὰ πολέμου: see Lex. διά. — τοὺς στρατηγούς, ... οἷα πεπόνθασιν: prolepsis. Cf. τῶν βαρβάρων, 1, 1, 5. Lit. *seeing the generals what they suffered*; i. e. *seeing what the generals suffered*. — ὧν: cf. note 1, 3, 10.

§ 9. εὐξασθαι, συνεπεύξασθαι depend on δοκεῖ. — ἀνέτειναν: supply the obj. from the foregoing clause.

§ 10. εἶεν: why optat.? H. 734. ff. K. § 188. — οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων: gen. abs.; subj. indefinite. H. 504. d. K. § 145. Rem. 2; *things being thus*; Lat. *quæ quum ita sint*. — τοὺς θεούς: subj. of εἶναι; anteceded. of οἶπερ. — ὧσι: sc. οἱ μικροί. — βούλονται: sc. οἱ θεοί.

§ 11. ἔπειτα δέ: that which would naturally follow these words is joined by an anacoluthon to the sentence introduced by γάρ. — τὲ ... τέ, *both ... and*: καὶ before ἐκ intens., *even*. — οἱ ἀγαθοί: emphatic position; subj. of σώζονται. — μέν after ἐλθόντων: correl. w. ἔπειτα, § 13. The allusion is to the first Persian invasion, 490 B. C. — παμπλήθει στόλῳ: const.? H. 604. K. § 161. 1. (c.) — ἀφανιούντων: ἀφανίζω. — ἐνίκησαν: in the battle of Marathon.

§ 12. εὐξάμενοι ... ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς: instead of ἔδοξεν, κτέ. we should expect ἐψηφίσαντο or some similar word; but the intervening clauses render the anacoluthon less noticeable. — καταθύσειν depends on εὐξάμενοι. — Force of ἀπο-? Cf. note § 6.

§ 13. ἔπειτα: cf. note on μέν, § 11. — τήν, *the* (well-known), etc. H. 527. a. K. § 148. 1. — καὶ before τότε, *also*. — κατὰ γῆν: in the battles of Plataea and Mycale. κατὰ Σάλατταν: in the battles of Artemisium and Salamis. — ἔστι: H. 406. Rem. b. 1. K. § 16. 1; *it is permitted to behold ... as proofs*, etc. — ἀλλά, *but only*. Cf. 1, 4, 18.

§ 14. οὐ μὲν δὴ: cf. note 1, 9, 13. — ἡμέραι: sc. εἰσίν; which is not comm. expressed in this adverbial formula. — ἀφ' οὗ:

see Lex. ὅς. — *σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς*: the frequent recurrence of this acknowledgment is worthy of note.

§ 15. *πολύ* qualifies the following comparatives.

§ 16. *ὄντες, ὀρώντες*: concessive; and hence *ὁμως*. — *εἰς αὐτούς*, as distinguished from *πρὸς* or *ἐπ' αὐτ.*, denotes a violent attack and pressing in among the enemy. — *ὅτι . . . ὑμᾶς*: expeget. of *πείραν*.

§ 17. *μηδὲ . . . δόξῃτε*, *nor imagine*, etc. Two ways of expressing prohibition? H. 723. a. K. § 177. 5. — *μείον ἔχουν*: see Lex. *μείων*. — *ἔτι* qualifies *κακίονες*. — *πολὺν κρεῖττον* (sc. *ἐστίν*) *ὁρᾷ τοὺς ἑλόντας, κτέ.*

§ 19. *τῶν ἱππέων* depends on the following comparative; *πολύ* qualifies the compar. — *ἐνὶ μόνῳ*, *in one respect alone*.

§ 20. *τοῦτο*, *at this*, viz. *ὅτι, κτέ.*, *because Tissaphernes*, etc. — *κρεῖττον*: sc. *ἐστίν*. — *ἡ κτέ.*, *or (to have as guides) those men whom*, etc. *ἄνδρας*: anteced. in relat. clause. See note on *λαβόντι, κτέ.*, 1, 2, 1.

§ 21. *ἡς*: obj. of *εἶχον*; attracted to the case of the anteced. — *μέτρα*: apposit. w. *ἐπιτήδεια*. *ἀργυρίου*: gen. of price. — *ἔχοντας* agrees w. the implied subj. of *ἀνείσθαι*: sc. *ἡμᾶς*. — *αὐτούς*: intens.; agrees w. the implied subj. of *λαμβάνειν*, *or that we ourselves should take (provisions)*, etc.

§ 22. *ταῦτα*: prolepsis; lit. *if you know these things that they are*, etc. Cf. note on *τῶν βαρβάρων*, 1, 1, 5. — *ἄπορον*: cf. note on *φοβερώτατον*, 2, 5, 9. — *διαβάντες*: nom. agreeing w. the implied subj. of *ἐξαπατηθῆναι*. H. 775. K. § 172. 3. — *ἄρα*: force? See Lex. — *προϊούσι*, *to (those) advancing*. Cf. note on *συνελόντι*, 3, 1, 38.

§ 23. *εἰ . . . διήσουσιν* (*δύημι*), *. . . φανείται, οὐδ' . . . ἀθυμητέον*: force? H. 745. K. § 185. 2. (L) — *μήτε . . . τέ*: cf. note 2, 2, 8. — *οὐδ' ὥς*: cf. note 1, 8, 21. — *ἡμῖν ἀθυμητέον* (sc. *ἐστίν*): H. 804. ff. K. § 168. — *ἄκοντος*: cf. note 1, 8, 17. — *βασιλέως*: repeated for emphasis, instead of a pronoun. — *αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν*: 1, 2, 19. — *τούτων*: *τῶν Περσῶν* implied in *βασιλεύς*. Cf. *οἱ δέ*, 1, 10, 4; *αὐτοῖς*, 3, 1, 29.

§ 24. *ἡμᾶς*: subj. of *εἶναι* and *κατασκευάζεσθαι*. — *ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε*, *I for my part should say*. The regular form of *condit.* (*εἰ μὴ ἐδεδοίkein*) is not expressed; instead of it, *ἀλλὰ δέδοικα*, § 25. — *τοῦ . . . ἐκπέμψειν* limits *ὁμήρους*, *hostages as a pledge that he would send*, etc. — *ἂν . . . ἐποίει, εἰ ἔώρα, κτέ.*: force? H. 746. K. § 185. 2. (2.)

§ 25. ἀλλὰ γάρ, *but* (I do not recommend this) *for*. — ἀπαξ differs how fr. ποτέ? See Lex. — ἀργοί: why nom. w. the infin.? H. 775. K. § 172. 3. — μή: repeated for perspicuity. — οἱ λατοφάγοι: an allusion to Homer, *Odys.* 9. 94. ff.

§ 26. ἐξόν: cf. note 2, 5, 22. — τοὺς ... πολιτεύοντας, *those now living at home without a fortune*, obj. of ὄραν. πλουσίους: predicate adj.; connect w. τοὺς ... πολιτεύοντας. ὄραν depends on ἐξόν. — ἀλλὰ γάρ, *but* (no more on this point) *for*. — δῆλον ὅτι: see Lex. δῆλος.

§ 27. πῶς: connect w. μαχοίμεθα as well as πορευοίμεθα. — συγκατακαῦσαι: sc. δοκεῖ μοι. — ἄγειν depends on ὄχλον. H. 767. K. § 306. 1. (d.) L. G. — εἰς τὸ κτέ., *for*, etc.

§ 28. ἀπαλλάξωμεν, *let us*, etc. H. 720. a. K. § 153. 1. b. (a.) (1.) — Krüg. makes κρατουμένων depend on ἀλλότρια. Matt. supplies ἡμῶν and makes it gen. abs.; *if we are conquered, you know*, etc.

§ 29. ὁρᾶτε γάρ, *since you see*, etc., the reason for the next sentence, δεῖ οὖν, κτέ. — καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι: prolepsis for ὅτι καὶ οἱ πολέμοι. — πρόσθεν ... πρὶν: cf. note 1, 1, 10. — πύλεμον: obj. of ἐξενεγκεῖν (ἐκφέρω). — ἄν: join w. ἀπολέσθαι.

§ 30. πολὺ: connect w. the following comparative.

§ 31. ἣν ... ἀπειθῇ is subordinate to the following condition: *if you will vote, in case any one shall be disobedient, that the one*, etc. — αἰ: see Lex. — ἐντυγχάνοντα: sc. τῷ ἀπειθοῦντι. — οὐδ' ἐνί: more emphatic than οὐδενί; *not even a man*.

§ 32. ἀλλὰ γάρ: cf. § 26. — βέλτιον: sc. δοκεῖ.

§ 33. οἷς, instead of αἷς, attracted to the case of the antecedent. — δοκεῖ μοι ἄριστον εἶναι ὡς τάχ. ψηφίς. α νῦν εἶρ. — ἀνέτειναν: asyndeton denoting haste.

§ 34. ὧν depends on the impers. προσδεῖν, *what it seems to me there is need of in addition*. — ὅπου, (to a place) *where*. Cf. οὐ, 2, 1, 6.

§ 35. εἰ καὶ αὐτοί: the idea εἰ οἱ πολέμοι repeated for perspicuity. Cf. μή, § 25.

§ 36. ποιησαμένους: cf. note on λαβόντα, 1, 2, 1. — τίνα: subj. of ἡγεῖσθαι; both together depend on χρή impers., *who ought to lead*, etc. — τίνας: sc. χρή. — οὐκ ἄν: connect w. δέοι. — τοῖς τεταγμένοις: masc.; spoken of the soldiers.

§ 37. ἐπειδὴ κτέ.: the Lacedæmonians had the hegemony (or chief command) among the Grecian states at this time. Hence

the precedence given to Chirisophus. — τὸ νῦν εἶναι, *for the present*. Cf. note on τὸ ... εἶναι, 1, 6, 9.

§ 38. αἰί: cf. § 31.

§ 39. ἀπόντας: sc. ἡμᾶς. — μεμνήσθω ... εἶναι, *let him remember to be, or let him strive to be, etc.* H. 802. K. § 175. Rem. 4. (e.) The deliberation is closed with most important reflections.

### CHAP. III.

Mithridates comes to the Greeks under the guise of friendship, proffering his advice, while his real object is manifestly to ascertain their plans. The Greeks resolve to listen to no more overtures from the Persians. After crossing the river Zapatas, being annoyed by the enemy's cavalry and light troops, they concert measures to supply this deficiency in their forces.

§ 1. οὗτον: the implied anteced. τοῦτο is obj. of μετεδίδουσαν, and is limited by τῶν περιττῶν; *of the rest whatever any one needed they distributed, etc.*

§ 2. Κύρῳ πιστός: cf. 2, 5, 35. — εὖνους: sc. εἰμί, suggested by ἦν. — ὁρῶν: optat. fr. ὁράω. — ὡς φίλον: in apposit. w. πρὸς με, without the repetition of the prep. — φίλος: opp. to πολέμιος; εὖνους, to ἐχθρός.

§ 4. τίς renders the words which are separated by it emphatic. — πίστεως ἕνεκα: i. e. so that he should say nothing except what had been agreed on with Tissaphernes.

§ 5. διέφθειρον, διέφθειραν: why the change of tense? — ᾤχετο ἀπιών: cf. 2, 4, 24. — ἐτίρωσκον agrees with both subjects, οἱ μὲν and οἱ δέ.

§ 7. βραχύτερα ... ἢ ὡς ἐξικ.: lit. *a shorter distance than so as to reach*, i. e. *too short a distance to reach*.

§ 8. ἐδίωκον has for subj. the anteced. of οἷ.

§ 9. οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζούς: paronomasia.

§ 11. τὰς κόμας: mentioned 3, 2, 34; hence the article.

§ 12. ἡτιῶντο, μαρτυροίη: change of mood in *orat. obliq.* H. 738. K. § 188. 3. 4.

§ 13. ἀληθῆ λέγετε: a brief and lively expression for τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ἐγένετο ἃ λέγετε, *in truth what you say took place*.

§ 14. χάρις: sc. ἔστω. So in Eng. the copula is often omitted; *thanks to the gods, etc.*

§ 15. οἱ ... βάλλοντες: see Lex. βάλλω. — πολύ: made em-

phatic by separation fr. χωρίον. — διώκειν depends on οἶόν τε: sc. ἐστίν. — πεζὸς πεζόν: paronomasia; cf. § 9.

§ 16. ἡμεῖς: made emphatic by standing before εἰ. — σφενδο-νητῶν and ἰππέων depend on δεῖ.

§ 17. διὰ τὸ ... σφενδονᾶν, *from the fact that (the Persians) sling with*, etc.

§ 18. αὐτῶν limits τίνες. — τοῦτῳ, *this one* (any one having a sling). — αὐτῶν (after δῶμεν), *for them*, i. e. for the slings. H. 578. Rem. c. K. § 158. 7. (γ.) — τῷ ... ἐθέλοντι, *to the one enrolled voluntarily to act as slinger* (lit. *to the one enrolled being willing*).

§ 19. τοὺς μὲν τινάς: cf. note on τὰς δέ τινάς, 2, 3, 15. — Κλεάρχῳ: agent. H. 600. K. § 161. 2. (d.) — κατασκευάσωμεν, *prepare*, by equipping with suitable armor.

#### CHAP. IV.

Narrative of several days' march from the level country in the neighborhood of Nineveh into the hilly region bordering on the Carduchian mountains. The Greeks are at first attacked by Mithridates, whom they easily repulse; afterwards by Tissaphernes with a large army, from which they experience considerable annoyance.

§ 1. τῇ ἄλλῃ: see Lex. ἄλλος. Cf. 2, 1, 3. — ἐφ' ἣ: connect in idea w. ἐπιβοῶντο.

§ 2. ἂν ... λάβῃ: subjunct. in *orat. obliq.* after a historical tense, instead of optat. H. 736. 737. K. § 188. 3. 4.

§ 3. παρήγγελτο, εἶρητο: *impers.*; *orders had been given to those of the targeteers*, etc., *who should pursue*: τῶν πελταστῶν, τῶν ὀπλιτῶν limit οὗς. KRÜG., HERT., VOLL. Better to say the anteced. of οὗς. MATTH. Cf. τῶν πολεμίων, 1, 7, 8; τῶν Ἑλλήνων, 2, 2, 14; ἡμῶν, 3, 1, 35; τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, κτέ., 3, 3, 8. οὗς: subj. of διώκειν. — παρροῦσι: particip. agreeing w. ἰππεύσιν; render as adv. *to pursue boldly*. — ὥς w. particip.; see Lex.

§ 4. ἐσήμνη: see Lex. σημαίνω. — ἔθειον: subj. ? the anteced. of οἷς, *those to whom orders had been given ran*, etc. — οἱ δέ: i. e. οἱ πολέμιοι.

§ 5. τοῖς βαρβάροις, *on the side of the barbarians*; dat. incom. depends on ἀπέθανον and ἐλήφθησαν: H. 601. K. § 161. 2. (c.) end. — τῶν ἰππέων limits the subj. of ἐλήφθησαν. — ὅτι qualifies φοβερῶτατον: ὁρᾶν depends on φοβ. H. 767. K. § 171. 2. (d.) Rem.

§ 6. πράξαντες: see Lex.

§ 7. τὸ εὖρος, without μέν, not anticipating ὑψος δέ.



§ 8. βασιλεύς: i. e. Cyrus the Elder. — ἡλιον, κτέ.: Xenophon here reports no doubt the popular tradition. — ἐξέλιπον: sc. τὴν πόλιν.

§ 9. πυραμίς: described by Layard as a conical hill with the ruins of a tower on the summit; at present about 140 feet in height; considered by many as the grave of Ninus.

§ 10. τεῖχος: see Lex. — Μέσπιλα: probably ruins of Nineveh; on the eastern bank of the Tigris, nearly opposite the modern Mosul.

§ 11. ἐλέγετο: the story of the guides. — ἀπώλεσαν, κτέ.: pass. in idea; *were deprived of the government*, hence takes the same const. w. the pass. ὑπὸ Περσῶν.

§ 13. εἰς: cf. note 1, 7, 1. Eng. idiom, *during*. — ἰππίας: anteced. in relat. clause. Cf. note on στρατεύμα, 1, 2, 1. — ἦλθεν: the fact that he went up to Babylon with horsemen was mentioned in 1, 2, 4; cf. also 2, 4, 8. ἔχων is to be repeated in mind as though he had written ἔχων τοὺς ἰππίας οὓς αὐτὸς ἦλθεν ἔχων, *having both the horsemen that he himself came (up to Babylon) with (ἔχων), and the force*, etc. So in the same manner with the next two clauses, οὓς ... βαρβάρους, and οὓς ... ἐβοήθει, repeat the idea of ἔχων, *having the barbarians whom Cyrus*, etc. — ἔχοντος, *having in marriage*. — ἀδελφός: cf. 2, 4, 25.

§ 14. εἶχεν καταστήσας: circumlocution for κατέστησεν.

§ 15. προῖθυμείτο: sc. ἀμαρτάνειν. — οὐδὲ γὰρ ... ῥάδιον ἦν: because the enemy were so near and in so close ranks. — καὶ ὁ Τισσαφ. begins the principal sentence; the preceding is subordinate.

§ 17. καὶ ... Περσικά, *the Persian bows also* (as well as the Cretan). — τοῖς Κρησί depends on χρήσιμα. — ἄνω ἰέντες: so as not to lose their arrows while practising. — πολλά: connect in idea both w. νεῦρα and w. μόλυβδος. Cf. note 3, 1, 2.

§ 19. ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας ... ὁρέων ... γεφύρας (sc. ἀναγκαζούσης, suggested by ἀναγκαζόντων). These contingencies would now occur; for immediately north of Mosul the country becomes more hilly and is intersected by numerous streams of water. — τοὺς ὀπλίτας: subj. of ἐκθλίβεσθαι; depends on ἀνάγκη ἐστίν. — ἅμα: see Lex. — ἀνάγκη: sc. ἐστίν. — εἶναι: subj. ? sc. τοὺς ὀπλίτας.

§ 20. διασχῇ (διέχω): opp. to συγκύπτῃ. — τῶν πολ. ἐπ.: II. 790. a. K. § 176. 1. (a.) — ὁπότε δέοι: H. 729. b. K. § 183. 3. (c.)

§ 21. ἀνά: see Lex. — πεντηκοντῆρας: apposit. w. ἄλλους; *others as commanders of fifties*. Cf. ἄλλο, 1, 5, 5. — οἱ λοχα-

γοί: attended of course with their companies (λόχοι). So also § 23. — παρήγον: sc. τοὺς λόχους. — In Dind.'s ed. οἱ λοχαγοί stands after ὕστεροι.

§ 22. τὸ μέσον = τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, § 20. — ἂν ἐξεπίπλασαν: H. 704. K. § 153. 2. a. (β); subj.; sc. οἱ ἐξ λόχοι, mentioned § 21. — κατὰ λόχους, *in companies of a hundred men*. Each company was in single file; the six companies therefore would make six men abreast. κατὰ πεντηκοστῦς, *in companies of fifty*, each company in single file. The 600 men in this order would form twelve companies, and there would consequently be twelve men abreast (filling a space πλατύτερον). κατ' ἐνωμ., *in companies of twenty-five*, each company in single file. The 600 men in this order would form twenty-four companies, and there would consequently be twenty-four men abreast, thus filling a vacant space (τὸ διέχον) *very wide, πᾶν πλατύ*.

§ 23. οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, *they* (i. e. the main body of the army) *were not*, etc. — τῆς φάλαγγος depends on ποῦ, adv. of place; *if at any point in the phalanx, occasion required it in any respect* (δέοι τι, sc. τούτους ἐπιπαρεῖναι), *these were at hand* (ready for assistance). — σταθμοὺς τέτταρας: as the same order of march continued afterwards (cf. § 28), we may suppose this thought in the mind of the writer: *in this manner they proceeded four stages* (without meeting anything worthy of note).

§ 24. τὴν ὁδὸν ... γιγνομένην depends on εἶδον. — τοῦ ὄρους, *the mountain*, i. e. the one in plain sight; hence the force of the article. — ἄσμενοι: cf. note 2, 1, 16. — τῶν ... ἱππέων: gen. abs. causal.

§ 25. ἀνέβησαν: H. 706. K. § 152. Rem. 6. κατέβαινον: why imperf.? — ὥς ... ἀναβ., *as if to*, etc. — ἔβαλλον ... ἐτόξευον: asyndeton in lively narration. — ὑπὸ μαστίγων: not uncommon among the Persians; a striking sight to the free Greeks.

§ 26. Ἑλλήνων: adj. — οἱ σφενδονῆται, οἱ τοξόται: *emphat. position*.

§ 28. ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν: H. 729. b. K. § 183. 3. (c.)

§ 29. αὐτῶν: i. e. τῶν Περσῶν. — οἱ πολέμοι (at the end of the §) means the Greeks. Xenophon uses the term from the Persian point of view.

§ 30. οἱ μὲν: the main army, in a hollow square. οἱ δέ: the peltasts. — κατά: see Lex. — τὰς κώμας: mentioned § 24; hence the article.

§ 31. ἵπποις : dat. commodi. — τῷ σατραπεύοντι : agent. H. 600. K. § 161. 2. (d.) Each satrap was required to provide for the troops in his own satrapy.

§ 32. φερόντων : sc. αὐτούς ; referring to οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες.

§ 33. κατεσκήνησαν, ἐπεχείρησαν : change of subj. — πολὺ διέ-  
φερν : see Lex. διαφέρω. — χώρας : see Lex.

§ 34. τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ depends on ἀπ- ; σταδίων, on μείον. —  
πονηρόν, Περσικόν : emphat. posit.

§ 35. ὥς ... πολὺ : cf. 3, 1, 42. — τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἔνεκα, εἰ,  
*that they may not flee, if*, etc. An elliptical expression ; supply  
mentally, *which would happen if*, etc. (ὅπερ ἂν γένοιτο, εἰ, κτέ.).  
τοῦ ... φεύγειν : H. 778. ff. K. § 173. — δεῖ : repeated to present  
the difficulties more distinctly. — Ξωρακισθέντα agrees w. the  
subj. of ἀναβῆναι. Cf. note on λαβόντα, 1, 2, 1.

§ 36. ἐκήρυξε : cf. ἐσάλπιγξε, 1, 2, 17.

§ 37. ἀκρωνυχίαν : appos. w. χωρίον. — ὑφ' ἣν, *under which* ;  
implying also the idea of direction or extension : in German, *unter*  
*dem hin*.

§ 39. ἡμῖν : dat. incomm. — ὁ ὑπὲρ ... λόφος, i. e. ἡ ἀκρωνυχία  
ἄρου, § 37. — τούτους : those by whom the eminence had been  
preoccupied.

§ 40. τὰ ὅπισθεν = τὴν οὐράν. — τίς : indef. for *we*.

§ 41. αὐτοῦ : intens., *above their own army itself, just above their*  
*own army*. — ἐγὼ δέ : without the antithetical σὺ μὲν before μένε  
and πορεύου. Xen. thus makes ἐγὼ more emphat. and indicates  
almost a preference to go himself.

§ 42. εἰπὼν : asyndeton denoting haste. — ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν :  
might εἴη be used ? Dif. ? H. 731. a. K. § 188. 3. 4. — οἱ : enclit.,  
dat. of οὗ, depends on σύν in compos. — μακρόν, *a long distance* ;  
i. e. long for the time allowed.

§ 43. ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς κτέ., *and he* (Chirisophus) *took*, etc., to fill  
the place of those dispatched with Xen. — τοὺς τριακοσίους :  
i. e. half of the 600 mentioned § 21. The other half were in the  
rear.

§ 45. διακελευομένων : plur. because στρατεύματος is collective.  
Cf. κόπτοντες, 2, 1, 6.

§ 46. νῦν ... νῦν : cf. note on ὑμεῖς, 3, 1, 37. — τὴν λοιπὴν :  
sc. ὁδόν.

§ 47. ἐξ ἴσου : see Lex. ἴσος. — χαλεπῶς qualifies φέρων.

§ 48. καὶ ὧς : cf. note 1, 8, 16. — ἔχων, *with* (it, i. e. the shield

of Soteridas). — τοῖς ... ἐπομένοις, *and those behind though following* (those in front) *with difficulty, to pass along by* (him).

§ 49. ὁ δέ, *but he*, i. e. Xenophon. — ἀναβάς: sc. ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. — βάσιμα, ἄβαρα: sc. τῷ ἵππῳ. ἦν: subj.? H. 504. d. K. § 145. Rem. 2. — φθάνουσιν ... πολεμίους, *they anticipate the enemy in arriving*, etc.

## CHAP. V.

The Greeks, still harassed by the Persians, arrive at a point where the Carduchian mountains reach the Tigris, and hang precipitous over the river. After considerable deliberation and diligent enquiry from the captives, they resolve to attempt the passage of the mountains.

§ 1. οἱ ἀμφὶ Τις: cf. 2, 4, 2, οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον, note.

§ 2. καὶ γάρ explains the reason why the Greeks were scattered in the plain for plunder. — διαβιβαζόμεναι: temporal.

§ 3. μή, *that*, after a word implying fear. — ἐπιτήδεια: obj. of λαμβάνουιν (sc. οἱ Ἕλληνες), and understood w. καίοιεν (sc. οἱ πολέμοι).

§ 4. ἀπήεσαν ἐκ, κτέ., *returned from rendering assistance*, i. e. to the Greeks scattered through the plain. Cf. § 2. — οἱ Ἕλληνες, i. e. Chirisophus and his men.

§ 5. ὑφιέντας: sc. τοὺς πολεμίους. — ἡμετέρας: predicate. — μὴ καίειν: expegetical of ἄ; *what they stipulated, when*, etc., namely, *that we should not set fire to*, etc. — καίουσι = ποιοῦσι καίοντες: sc. τὴν χώραν.

§ 6. ἡμετέρας: sc. χώρας.

§ 7. σκηνάς: by meton. for *camp*. The tents had been burned, 3, 3, 1. — τοσοῦτος: see Lex. — πειρωμένοις, κτέ., *of (those) trying the depth*. H. 601. a. K. § 161. 2. (d.)

§ 8. κατὰ: distributive; *in companies of*, etc. — δέοιτο: why optat.? H. 731. K. § 188. 3.

§ 9. Ἀσκῶν: tanned skins inflated and sewed together are still used very commonly by the Kourds and Arabs in crossing the Tigris and Euphrates. Cf. διφθέρας, 1, 5, 10. — πρόβατα: apposit. w. ταῦτα, *I see here* (lit. *these*) *many sheep*, etc.; *these sheep* would be ταῦτα τὰ πρόβ. H. 538. K. § 148. 10. (g.) — ἃ ἀποδάρντα καὶ φυσηθέντα: a brief expression for ὧν ἀποδάρντων τὰ δέρματα φυσηθέντα. HERT.

§ 10. ἀπήεσας, ἀφείς: the means, *by*, etc. — διαγ., *having conveyed them* (the inflated skins) *over* (the river).

§ 11. *ἔξει*: see Lex. *ἔχω*. — τοῦ μὴ κατ., *so as not to sink, from sinking*; for μὴ here, see H. 838. K. § 177. 7. — *σχήσει* is much more common than *ἔξει* in this sense.

§ 12. οὐδέν: obj. of ποιεῖν.

§ 13. τοῦμ. = τὸ ἐμ. — [ῆ] omit. Prob. does not belong here. — πρὸς Βαβ. denotes simply the direction, *towards*, etc. — ἔνθεν: see Lex. — ὅμοιοι: see Lex. — *τρέψονται, ἔχουσιν*: notice the change of mood.

§ 15. τά: sc. χωρία. τῆς: sc. ὁδοῦ; *that the regions southward belonged to the way towards*, etc. — ἡ: sc. ὁδός. — φέροι: see Lex. — διαβάντι, *to one having crossed*. H. 601. a. K. § 284. 3. (10.) L. G. — *τετραμένη*: see Lex. *τρέπω*. — ὅτι: repeated to remind the reader of οἱ δ' ἔλεγον.

§ 16. *ἔφασαν*: sc. οἱ ἐαλωκότες. — *στρατιάν*: subj. of ἐμβαλεῖν. *μυριάδ.*: apposit. w. *στρατ.* — *σπείσαιντο* (σπένδομαι): force of the optat.? H. 729. b. K. § 183. 3. (c.) — καί, *also*, i. e. they not only observed the terms of the treaty, but *also*. — ἐπιμυγνύναι depends on *ἔφασαν*. — The reflexives σφῶν and ἐαυτοῦς refer distinctly to the persons speaking, and thus remove the ambiguity arising from the use of so many pronouns in Eng. σφῶν and ἐκείνων: partitive gen., depend on ἐπιμυγνύναι; *that there was intercourse also, both on their part with the Carduchians (ἐκείνους), and on the part of the Carduchians (ἐκείνων) with themselves (πρὸς ἐαυτοῦς)*.

§ 17. *ἔφασαν*: sc. οἱ ἐαλωκότες; *(the captives) affirmed that (the Greeks) having passed through these (τούτους), etc.*

§ 18. ἐπὶ τούτοις, *in respect to these things*. VOLL. — τῆς ὥρας depends on ὁπηνίκα, *at that point of time when, at the very hour when it should also seem expedient*. — καί: they had decided to go; that was one point: they now waited for the moment when it should *also* seem expedient to set out. — τὴν ὑπερβολὴν (see Lex.) ... μῆ: prolepsis. Cf. note on τῶν βαρβάρων, 1, 1, 5. — ἐπειδή, *when = after*. ἡνίκα, *when = at the exact time when*.



# **GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.**





## GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

### A

#### ἄβατος

**ἄβατος**, *ον*, (α priv. βαίνω) *impassable*, 3, 4, 49.

**Ἀβροκόμας**, α, δ, *Abrocōmas*, a general under Artaxerxes, and satrap of Phœnicia.

**Ἀβυδος**, *ου*, ἡ, *Abūdus*, a city of Asia Minor, on the Hellespont.

**ἀγαθός**, ἡ, *όν*, comp. H. 223. 1. K. § 52. *good*, in the widest sense: of soldiers, *brave*; of land, *fertile*.

— τὰ ἀγαθά, subst. *good things*, provisions, 3, 5, 1: ἀγαθόν, *an advantage*, 2, 3, 20.

**ἀγάλλομαι**, (used only in pres. and impf.) *to glory in*, w. dat. or ἐν and dat. 2, 6, 26.

**ἄγαμαι**, f. ἀγάσσομαι, aor. ἡγάσθην, rare ἡγασάμην, *to admire, to esteem*, 1, 1, 9.

**ἀγαστός**, ἡ, *όν*, (ἄγαμαι) *worthy of admiration*.

**ἀγγελία**, ας, ἡ, (ἄγγελος) *announcement*.

**ἀγγέλλω**, reg. liquid verb, *to announce*.

**ἄγγελος**, *ου*, δ, (ἀγγέλλω) a messenger, an envoy.

**ἄγε δή**, *come now!* 2, 2, 10.

**ἀγείρω**, f. ἀγεῶ, aor. ἤγειρα, pass. pf. ἀγήγερμαι, aor. ἠγέρθην, *to bring together, to gather*.

#### ἄγρός

**ἀγένειος**, *ον*, (α priv. γένειον, chin, beard) *beardless*; hence, *young*, 2, 6, 28.

**Ἀγίας**, *ου*, δ, *Agias*, an Arcadian, one of the Grecian generals taken by the Persians after the battle near Cunaxa.

**ἄγκυρα**, ας, ἡ, *an anchor*.

**ἀγνοέω**, ὦ, f. -ήσω or -ήσομαι, (α priv. νοέω) *to be ignorant, not to know*.

**ἀγνωμοσύνη**, ης, ἡ, (α priv. γνώμη) *want of sense*; also, plur. *misunderstandings*.

**ἀγορά**, ᾤς, ἡ, (ἀγείρω) *an assembly*; also, more freq. *a place of assembly, a market-place*; hence, *anything sold in the market-place*, esp. provisions: ἀγορὰν παρέχειν, *to furnish a market, to offer provisions for sale*: οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, *the market-men*: ἀγορὰ πλήθουσα, *the time of full market*, i. e. from 9 o'clock till noon.

**ἀγοράζω**, f. -άσω, (ἀγορά) *to do business in the market-place, to buy in the market*; mid. *to buy for one's self*.

**ἀγορεύω**, f. -εύσω, (ἀγορά) *to speak, to harangue*.

**ἄγριος**, *ία*, *ιον*, (ἄγρός) *wild*; of men, *savage*.

**ἄγρός**, *οὔ*, δ, *a field, the country*,

opp. to the town; also, a residence in the country.

ἄγω, f. ἄξω, pf. ἤχα, and later ἀγῶχα, aor. 2d ἤγαγον, rare ἤξα, pass. pf. ἤγμαι, aor. ἤχθην, to lead, to bring, to carry, to take with one: φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν, to plunder, w. acc.: ἄγεσθαι, to bring to one's self, 1, 10, 17. — ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν, to remain quiet: ἄγε, or ἄγετε, up! come! Intrans. sc. τὸ στράτευμα, to march, 2, 2, 16; 2, 6, 7; sc. ἵππον or ἄρμα, to go, to ride, 3, 4, 49.

ἄγών, ὦνος, δ. (ἄγω), a contest, a game.

ἄγωνίζομαι, (ἄγών) f. -ίσομαι, Att. -ιοῦμαι, to contend, to strive: περὶ τινος ἄγ., to strive for something.

ἄγωνοθέτης, ου, δ. (ἄγών, τίθημι) one who presides at a contest, a judge, an umpire.

ἄδειπνος, ου, (α priv. δείπνον) without supper.

ἄδελφός, ου, δ. a brother.

ἄδεως, adv. (α priv. δέος, fear) without fear.

ἄδηλος, ου, (α priv. δηλός) not plain, uncertain.

ἀδιάβατος, ου, (α priv. διδ, βαίνω) impassable.

ἀδικέω, ῶ, f. -ήσω, (ἄδικος) to act unjustly, to be unjust; w. acc. to injure, to harm: πλείστα ἀδικεῖν, to do the most harm, 2, 6, 27. Pres. often as perf. to have done wrong, to be guilty, 1, 5, 11; 2, 6, 20.

ἀδικία, as, ἡ, (ἄδικος) injustice.

ἄδικος, ου, (α priv. δίκη, justice) unjust, περὶ τινα, towards any one.

ἀδίκως, adv. (ἄδικος) unjustly.

ἄδόλως, adv. (α priv. δόλος, deceit) without deceit, faithfully.

ἄδύνατος, ου, (α priv. δύναμαι) without power, unable; also impossible, impracticable.

ἄδω (Att. contr. fr. αἰδῶ), f. ἄσομαι, rare ἄσω, aor. ἤσα, pass. pf. ἤσμαι, aor. ἤσθην, to sing.

ἀεί and αἰεί, always, continually; also, at any time, or on each occasion, 3, 2, 31 and 38.

ἀετός and αἰετός, ου, δ. an eagle.

ἄθεος, ου, (α priv. θεός) comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος, godless, impious.

Ἀθῆναι, ὦν, αἰ, Athens.

Ἀθηναῖος, αἰα, αἰον, Athenian: οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, the Athenians.

ἄθλον, ου, τό, a prize, 3, 1, 21.

ἀθροίω, f. -οίσω, (ἀθρός) to bring together, to assemble.

ἄθρός, α, ου, assembled, in a body, close together.

ἄθυμέω, ῶ, f. -ήσω, (α priv. θυμός) to be without courage, to be dejected.

ἄθυμητός, ου, (ἄθυμέω) verb. adj., ἄθυμητέον, one must be dejected.

ἄθυμία, as, ἡ, (α priv. θυμός) want of heart, dejection, despondency.

ἄθυμος, ου, (α priv. θυμός) comp. -ότερος, sup. -ότατος, without heart, dejected, despondent, opp. to πρόθυμος: ἄθυμότερος πρὸς τι, less courageous in respect to anything, 1, 4, 9.

ἄθύμως, adv. (ἄθυμος) without heart, despondingly: ἄθύμως ἔχειν, to be without heart, 3, 1, 3.

Αἰγύπτιος, ια, ιον, Egyptian; as subst. an Egyptian.

Αἴγυπτος, ου, ἡ, Egypt.

αἰδέομαι, -οῦμαι, (αἰδώς) f. αἰδέσομαι, pf. ἤδεσμαι, aor. ἤδέσθην, rare ἤδεσάμην, to feel shame or awe, to reverence, to respect, w. acc. 3, 2, 5.

αἰδήμων, *ον*, *g. -ονος*, (αἰδώς) comp. -έστερος, sup. -έστατος, *modest, respectful*, 1, 9, 5.

αἰδοῖον, *ον*, τό, comm. plur. αἰδοῖα, *genitals, pudenda*.

αἰδώς, *δος* or *οὐς*, ἡ, *shame, modesty, reverence, respect*.

αἰετός, see αἰετός.

αἰκίζομαι, *f. -ίσομαι*, Att. -ιοῦμαι, pf. ἤκισμαι, aor. ἤκισάμην, aor. pass., in pass. sense ἤκισθην, (αἰκία, *insult*) to abuse, insult, torment: τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκίζεσθαι, to abuse to the last degree, 3, 1, 18.

αἷμα, *ατος*, τό, *blood*.

Αἰνίανες, *ων*, οἱ, Αἰνιάνες.

αἶξ, αἰγός, *δ* or *ῆ*, (αἰτσω, to spring) a goat.

αἰρετός, ἡ, *όν*, (αἰρέω) taken, seized, chosen: οἱ αἰρετοί, the persons chosen, the deputation, 1, 3, 21.

αἰρέω, *ῶ*, *f. -ήσω*, pf. ἔρηκα, aor. εἶλον, pass. pf. ἔρημαι, aor. ἤρέθην, to take, seize, catch; mid. to take for one's self, hence to choose: αἰρήσομαι ὑμᾶς, I shall choose you, 1, 3, 5.

αἶρω, *ῶ*, *f. -ήσω*, pf. ἔρηκα, aor. ἔρα, pass. pf. ἔρημαι, aor. ἔρηνην, to lift or raise up, 1, 5, 3.

αἰσθάνομαι, *f. αἰσθήσομαι*, pf. ἤσθημαι, aor. ἤσθημην, to perceive, to become aware of, to be informed, *w. g.* or *acc.* 1, 1, 8; 1, 2, 21. (αἰσθάνομαι, to become aware of in any way, πυνθάνομαι, to learn by inquiry.) Cf. Eng. *esthetics*.

αἰσθομαι, old and rare form for αἰσθάνομαι, in some editt. 2, 5, 4.

αἰσχροός, *δ*, *όν*, (αἰσχος, *disgrace*) disgraceful, base, comp. and sup. comm. αἰσχίων, αἰσχιστος. Adv. -ῶς. αἰσχύννη, *ης*, ἡ, (αἰσχος, *disgrace*)

*disgrace, shame*: δι' αἰσχύνην ἀλλήλων, from a sense of shame before one another, etc. 3, 1, 10: ἀνευ αἰσχύνης, without disgrace, 2, 6, 6.

αἰσχύνω, (αἰσχος, *disgrace*) *f. -υνῶ*, etc., to disgrace, put to shame; mid. to feel ashamed, 1, 7, 4: *w.* acc. of a person, ἤσχυνετο τοὺς στρατιώτας, he was bashful before the soldiers, 2, 6, 19: ἤσχυνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν, we were prevented by reverence both for gods and for men from betraying him, 2, 3, 22; to be ashamed before, 2, 5, 39.

αἰτέω, *ῶ*, *f. -ήσω*, to ask, to demand, *w.* two acc. to ask a person for something, 1, 1, 10; 1, 3, 14; *w.* acc. and παρὰ *w.* gen. 1, 3, 16; mid. to demand for one's self, to obtain by request, 2, 3, 18.

αἰτιδομαι, -ῶμαι, (αἰτία, *accusation*) *f. -άσομαι*, dep. mid. to accuse, to blame, *w.* acc. and infin. αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν, having accused (him) of plotting, 1, 2, 20: ἠτιάτο αὐτόν δι, blamed him because, 3, 1, 7.

αἷτιος, *ία*, *ιον*, (αἰτία, *cause*) causing, occasioning, 1, 4, 15: causing harm, hence blame-worthy, to be blamed: τούτου αἷτιος, the cause of this, 2, 5, 22.

αἰχμάλωτος, *ον*, (αἰχμή, *point of a spear*, ἀλίσκομαι, to be taken) taken by the spear, having been captured, 3, 3, 19: as subst. a captive.

ἄκαυστος, *ον*, (α priv. κάω, to burn) unburnt, τὰς ἀκ. κώμας, the villages which had not been burnt.

ἀκήρυκτος, *ον*, (α priv. κήρυξ, a herald) not heralded: πόλεμος ἀκήρυκτος, a war in which no herald is

received with terms of peace, a war without truce.

ἀκινάκης, *ov, δ*, (a Persian word), (*νᾶ*), a short sword, a dagger (such as the Akinakes, a people of Bactria, carried: better adapted to stabbing than striking), 1, 2, 27.

ἀκινδύνος, *ov*, (a priv. κίνδυνος) without danger, safe.

ἀκινδύνως, (*ῶ*), adv. (ἀκινδύνος) without danger, safely.

ἐκλήρος, *ov*, (a priv. κλήρος, a lot) without lot or portion; hence, poor, needy.

ἀκμᾶζω, f. -ᾶσω, (ἀκμή, highest point, acme) to be at the highest point, to be in the prime of life, 3, 1, 25.

ἀκόλαστος, *ov*, (a priv. κολλάω, to chastise) not chastised, unbridled, undisciplined.

ἀκόλουθος, *ov*, following, attending, consistent: οὐκ ἀκόλουθα, not consistent, contradictory. (Eng. anacoluthon, a priv. *v* euphon. ἀκόλουθος.)

ἀκοντίζω, f. -ίσω, Att. -ιῶ, (ἀκόντιον) to hurl a javelin, 3, 3, 7; to hit (with a javelin), w. acc. 1, 8, 27.

ἀκόντιον, *ov*, τό, (dim. fr. ἄκων, a javelin) a dart, a javelin.

ἀκόντισις, *ews, ῆ*, (ἀκοντίζω) the use of the javelin, 1, 9, 5.

ἀκοντιστής, *ov, δ*, (ἀκοντίζω) a javelin thrower, 3, 3, 7.

ἀκούω, f. ἀκούσμαι, pf. ἀκήκουα, aor. ἤκουσα, pass. pf. ἤκουσμαι, aor. ἠκούσθην, to hear, w. acc. or gen. 1, 9, 3; 1, 8, 16; 2, 6, 11; acc. and παρὰ w. gen. to hear something from some one, 1, 2, 5; also acc. of thing and gen. of pers. 2, 5, 16; w. gen.

alone, to hear to, to obey, 2, 6, 11; 3, 5, 16; acc. and infin. 1, 3, 20 and often; w. *ὅτι* or *ὥς* κτέ, 1, 3, 21 and often.

ἀκροβολίζομαι, f. -ίσομαι (ἄκρος, βάλλω) to cast from afar, to skirmish, 3, 4, 18 and 33.

ἀκροβόλοις, *ews, ῆ*, (ἀκροβολίζομαι) act of skirmishing, skirmish.

ἀκρόπολις, *ews, ῆ*, (ἄκρος, πόλις) the upper part of the city, the citadel, 1, 2, 1 and 8.

ἄκρος, *a, ov*, (ἀκή, a point) pointed; hence, highest, extreme.

ἄκρον, *ov*, τό, (ἀκή, a point) highest point, height, 1, 2, 21.

ἄκρωνυχία, *as, ῆ*, (ἄκρος, ὕνυξ, a nail) tip of the nail; hence, a projecting part of anything: ἀκ. ὕρους, a spur of a mountain, 3, 4, 37 and 8.

ἄκων, ἄκουσα, ἄκον, gen. ἄκοντος, ἀκούσης, ἄκοντος, (a priv. ἐκών) not willing: ἄκοντος Κύρου, without the consent of Cyrus, 1, 3, 17.

ἀλαλᾶζω, f. -ᾶξω and -ᾶξομαι, (ἀλαλᾶ, war-cry) to raise the war-cry.

ἀλέξω, act. rare; mid. ἀλέξομαι, f. ἀλεξήσομαι, aor. ἠλεξάμην, to ward off, to defend one's self, 3, 4, 33; w. acc. to avenge one's self on, 1, 8, 6; to requite, 1, 9, 11.

ἀλέτης, *ov, δ*, (ἀλέω, to grind) a grinder: ἀλέτης ὄνος, a mill-stone, 1, 5, 5.

ἄλευρα, gen. -ων, τᾶ, seldom in sing. (ἀλέω, to grind) wheat flour, fine flour, 3, 4, 31. (ἔλφιτα, coarse flour of barley.)

ἀλήθεια, *as, ῆ*, (ἀληθής) truth, opp. to falsehood; reality, opp. to appearance; also honesty, uprightness, 2, 6, 25.

ἀληθεύω, f. -εύσω, (ἀληθής) *to speak the truth*, 1, 7, 18; *to report truly*.

ἀληθής, ἐς, (α priv. and λαθ. stem of λανθάνω) *true*, opp. to false; *real*, opp. to apparent: τὸ ἀληθές, *truth*, 2, 6, 22.

ἀληθινός, ἡ, ὄν, (α priv. and λαθ. stem of λανθάνω) *true*, *genuine*, opp. to counterfeit, 1, 9, 17: στρατευμα ἀλ., *a trustworthy army*.

ἀλίζω, f. -ίσω, (ἔλεις, in crowds) *to assemble*, 2, 4, 3.

ἀλίσκομαι, f. ἀλώσομαι, pf. ἐδλωκα or ἤλωκα, aor. ἐδλων or ἤλων (all the parts are pass. in meaning; used as pass. of αἰρέω) *to be taken*, 3, 4, 17; *to be captured*, 3, 4, 8 and 12.

ἀλλά, conj. (distinguished fr. ἄλλα neut. pl. of ἄλλος by the accent) *but*, yet. H. 863. K. § 322. 6. L. G.

ἄλλαχού, adv. (ἄλλος) *elsewhere*.

ἄλλῃ, adv. (ἄλλος) *elsewhere*.

ἀλλήλων, (gen.) *of one another*.

ἄλλοθεν, adv. (ἄλλος,θεν, from) *from another place*: ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν, 1, 10, 13, *some from one point, others from another, or some one way, some another*.

ἄλλομαι, f. ἀλοῦμαι, aor. ἤλαμην, (aor. 2d ἡλόμην, doubtful in Att.) *to leap, spring*.

ἄλλος, η, ο, *another*: ὁ ἄλλος, *the rest of*: οἱ ἄλλοι, *the others, the rest*: τῇ ἄλλῃ, (sc. ἡμέρᾳ) *on the next day*, 2, 1, 3.—Often joined with other of its own cases, or with adverbs derived from it: ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει, *one says one thing, another says another*: εἵκαζον ἄλλοι ἄλλως, *some conjectured one thing, some another*: ἄλλο τι ἤ, used in questions, *nonne*, 2, 5, 10:

ἄλλοι ... ἄλλοι, *some ... others*, 1, 8, 9.

ἄλλοτε, adv. (ἄλλος, ὅτε) *at another time, at other times*: ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε, *from time to time, now and then*, 2, 4, 26.

ἄλλότριος, ἰα, ἰον, (ἄλλος) *of or belonging to another, foreign*, Lat. *alienus*, 3, 5, 5: πάντα ἀλλότρια, *all things belong to others, are forfeited*, 3, 2, 28.

ἄλλως, adv. (ἄλλος) *in another way, otherwise*: ἄλλως πως, *in any other way*, 3, 1, 20: ἄλλως ἔχειν, *to be otherwise*, 3, 2, 37.

ἀλόγιστος, ον, (α priv. λογίζομαι, *to consider*) *without consideration, unreasonable*, 2, 5, 21.

ἄλφιτον, ον, τό, comm. in plur. ἄλφιτα, *barley-groats*, in gen. *coarse meal*. (ἄλευρα, *fine flour*.)

ἅμα, adv. *at the same time*; sometimes repeated in successive clauses, when in Eng. we may render it but once, with the latter clause; or we may render ἅμα μὲν ... ἅμα δέ, *partly ... partly, or at one time ... at another time*, 3, 4, 19; *with, together with*, w. dat. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, *at break of day*: ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, *at the dawn of the following day*.

ἅμαξα, ης, ἡ, *a wagon, esp. a heavy wagon, a freight wagon* (ἄρμα, *a war-chariot*).

ἁμαξιτός, ὄν, (ἅμαξα, ἱτός, verbal adj. fr. εἰμι) *for the use of wagons*: ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτός, *a wagon-road*.

ἁμαρτάνω, f. ἁμαρτήσομαι, pf. ἡμάρτηκα, aor. ἡμαρτον, *to err*; w. gen. *to miss*, 1, 5, 12; w. acc. περι acc.; also w. περι acc. 3, 2, 20.

ἀμαχεί, adv. (α priv. μάχη) *without battle*.

Ἀμβρακιώτης, ου, δ, an *Ambraciot*. Ambracia was a city in Epirus: now called Arta.

ἀμείνων, ον, comp. of ἀγαθός: *εἰμεινον* often as adv. *better, in a better way*.

ἀμελέω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (α priv. μέλει) *to be careless, negligent*; w. gen. *to neglect*, 1, 3, 11.

ἄμετρος, ον, (α priv. μέτρον) *without measure, immense*, 3, 2, 16.

ἀμήχανος, ον, (α priv. μηχανή, device) of things, *difficult, impracticable, impossible*: ὁδὸς ἀμήχανος, 1, 2, 21: κατὰ ἀμήχανα, *insurmountable misfortunes*, 2, 3, 18; of persons, *perplexed, without expedients*, 2, 5, 21.

ἀμιλλάσθαι, -ῶμαι, f. -ήσομαι, dep. pass. (ἔμιλλα, a prize-contest) *to compete with*: ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, *to vie (with them) for the attainment of the summit*, 3, 4, 44; *to strive, hasten*, 3, 4, 46.

ἄμπελος, ου, ἡ, a *vine*.

ἀμύνω, f. -ύνω, aor. ἤμυνα, *to ward off*; mid. *to keep off from one's self, to defend one's self*, 3, 1, 14; w. acc. 2, 3, 23, *to requite*.

ἀμφί, (akin to ἄμφω, both) prep. in the Anab. only w. gen. and acc. I. w. gen. *concerning, about*. II. w. acc. *about, of place, time, number, occupation*.—οἱ ἀμφί w. a proper name denotes, (a) the attendants of the person: τῶν ἀμφί Κύρου πιστῶν, *of the faithful attendants of Cyrus*, 1, 8, 1; cf. 1, 8, 21. (b) oftener, the person himself with his attendants: οἱ ἀμφί Ἀριαῶν, *Ariæus and*

*his attendants*; cf. 3, 5, 1. In compos. *about, on both sides*.

ἀμφιγνοέω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, impf. ἡμφεγνόουν or ἡμφιγνόουν, (ἀμφί, νοέω) *to halt between two opinions, to be in doubt*, 2, 5, 33.

ἀμφιλέγω, (ἀμφί, λέγω) *to dispute, quarrel*, 1, 5, 11; w. acc. *about something*.

Ἀμφίπολις, έως, ἡ, *Amphipolis*, a city of Thrace, on both sides of the river Strymon; hence the name, ἀμφί-πόλις: now called *Emboli*.

Ἀμφιπολίτης, ου, δ, an *Amphipolitan*.

ἀμφοτερος, έρα, ερον, (ἄμφω) *sel-dom in sing., both, uterque*, 1, 1, 1.

ἀμφοτέρωθεν, (ἀμφοτερος) *on both sides, at both ends*, 3, 5, 10.

ἄμφω, ἀμφοῖν, same in all genders, *both*.

ἄν, a particle which may sometimes be rendered *perhaps*; comm. however, it cannot be translated. It is used, (a) in the apodosis of a sentence, and denotes that the action of the verb which it qualifies is dependent on a condition expressed or implied; (b) in the protasis it is joined to hypothetical relatives or the conj. εἰ (εἰ ἄν, εἰδν, ἦν, ἔν) when the verb is subjunc. and renders the clause less definite in meaning, somewhat like *ever* or *soever* in Eng. It is not joined with the pres. or perf. indic. or the imperat. It is post-positive; and is thus readily distinguished from ἄν (contr. fr. εἰδν), meaning *if*.

ἀνά, prep. in Att. w. acc. only, (a) of place, *up, over, through, on*; (b) of time, *through*; (c) with num-

bers, it denotes distribution, 3, 4, 21: *ἕξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας*, six companies each a hundred men. The phrase *ἀνὰ κράτος* is adverb., with all one's might: *ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος*, riding at full speed, 1, 8, 1; cf. 1, 10, 15. — In compos. *up*, *back*, *again*, and sometimes intensive.

*ἀναβαίνω*, (ἀνά, βαίνω, wh. see) to go up; often of going up from the coast to the interior, 1, 1, 2: *ἀναβάς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον*, having mounted his horse, 1, 8, 3.

*ἀνάβασις*, εὖς, ἡ, (ἀνά, βαίνω) the act of going up, the march upward, 1, 4, 9.

*ἀναβιβάζω*, f. -άσω, (ἀνά, βιβάζω) to cause to go up: *οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν*, did not lead (the army) up, 1, 10, 14.

*ἀναγγέλλω*, (ἀνά, ἀγγέλλω) to bring back a report, 1, 3, 21.

*ἀναγιγνώσκω*, (ἀνά, γιγνώσκω, wh. see) to know again; to read, 1, 6, 4.

*ἀναγκαῖος*, ον, (ἀνάγκη) necessary, unavoidable, 1, 5, 9: *οἱ ἀναγκαῖοι*, kinsmen, 2, 4, 1.

*ἀνάγκη*, ης, ἡ, a necessity: *ἀνάγκη ἐστίν*, or, without *ἐστίν*, it is necessary, it is unavoidable, 1, 6, 8.

*ἀνάγω*, (ἀνά, ἄγω, wh. see) to lead up, 2, 3, 21.

*ἀναζεύγνυμι*, (ἀνά, ζεύγνυμι, wh. see) to yoke up, to prepare to go, to break up the camp, 3, 4, 37.

*ἀναίρῶ*, ὦ, (ἀνά, αἰρέω, wh. see) to take up; hence, sometimes, like *tollo*, to make way with, destroy; sometimes, to raise the voice; esp. of the god who delivered oracles from beneath the earth; hence, to respond, 3, 1, 6: *ἀνείλεν αὐτῷ ὁ*

*Ἀπόλλων*, *Apollo pointed out to him*, etc.

*ἀνακαίω*, (ἀνά, καίω, wh. see) to cause to burn, to kindle, 3, 1, 3.

*ἀνακοινῶ*, ὦ, f. -ώσω, (ἀνά, κοινῶ) to make something common with any one (τινί); mid. to confer with a person concerning something (τινὶ περὶ τινός), 3, 1, 5.

*ἀναλαμβάνω*, (ἀνά, λαμβάνω, wh. see) to take up, to take with one, 1, 10, 6.

*ἀναλέγω*, (ἀνά, λέγω, wh. see) to gather up: *ἀναλεγόμενος*, recounted, related, 2, 1, 17.

*ἀναμιμνήσκω*, (ἀνά, μιμνήσκω, wh. see) to remind a person of something (τινὰ τι), 3, 2, 11.

*ἄνανδρος*, ον, (α priv. ἀνὴρ) unmanly, cowardly, 2, 6, 25.

*ἀναξυρίδες*, ἰδων, αἱ, trousers (such as were worn by the Persians), 1, 5, 8.

*ἀναπαύω*, (ἀνά, παύω, wh. see) to cause to cease, to cause to rest; mid. to rest one's self, to take breath, 1, 10, 16; to rest (for the night), 2, 2, 4; 2, 4, 23; 3, 1, 3.

*ἀναπειθω*, (ἀνά, πείθω, wh. see) to bring over to another opinion, to persuade, 1, 4, 11.

*ἀναπτύσσω*, f. -ύξω, (ἀνά, πτύσσω) to unfold; to fold back, bend around, 1, 10, 9.

*ἀναρίθμητος*, ον, (α priv. ἀριθμέω) not to be counted, innumerable, 3, 2, 13.

*ἀνάριστος*, ον, (α priv. ἔριστον) without breakfast.

*ἀναρχία*, ας, ἡ, (α priv. ἀρχή) want of government.

*ἀνασταυρόω*, f. -ώσω, (ἀνά, σταυ-

ρῶν) to impale, to fasten to a cross, to crucify, 3, 1, 17.

ἀναστρέφω, (ἀνά, στρέφω, wh. see) to turn back, 1, 4, 5; mid. to turn one's self back, to rally, 1, 10, 12.

ἀνατάρττω, (ἀνά, τάρττω, wh. see) to throw into confusion, pass. particip., ἀνατεταραγμένον, in confusion, 1, 7, 20.

ἀνατείνω, (ἀνά, τείνω, wh. see) to extend, τὴν χεῖρα, 3, 2, 9: ἀετὸν ... ἀνατεταμένον, an eagle with expanded wings, (so it is comm. understood,) 1, 10, 12.

ἀνατέλλω, f. -τελλῶ, (ἀνά, τέλλω) to cause to rise up; also intrans. to rise, of the sun, 2, 3, 1.

ἀνατίθημι, (ἀνά, τίθημι, wh. see) to set up; of an offering, to consecrate; to place upon, σκεύη, 3, 1, 30: ἀνατίθεσθαι ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, to place (the baggage) on the beasts of burden, 2, 2, 4.

ἀνδράποδον, ου, τό, (ἀνὴρ, ποῦς) a slave.

ἀνδρείος, εἰα, εἶον, (ἀνὴρ) manly, strong, courageous.

ἀνεγείρω, (ἀνά, ἐγείρω, ἐγερῶ, ἡγείρω, pf. ἐγρήγορα, ἐγήγερμαι, ἡγέρθην) to rouse; pass. to be aroused, esp. from sleep, to awake, 3, 1, 13.

ἀνεῖλον. See ἀναίρεω.

ἀνεῖπον, aor.; pres. ἀναγορεύω, (ἀνά, εἶπον) to cry aloud, proclaim, esp. of a herald, 2, 2, 20.

ἀνεκτίμπλημι, (ἀνά, ἐκ, πίμπλημι, wh. see) to fill up again, 3, 4, 22.

ἄνεμος, ου, ὁ, the wind.

ἀνερωτάω, ᾧ, (ἀνά, ἐρωτάω) to interrogate, to ask plainly, 2, 3, 4.

ἄνευ, prep. w. g., without, 1, 3, 13.

ἀνέχω, (ἀνά, ἔχω, wh. see) to hold up, hold out, endure; mid. to hold one's self, to control one's self, 1, 8, 26 (ἡνέσχετο with double augment): ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος, to endure his being king, 2, 2, 1.

ἀνήκεστος, ου, (α priv. ἀκέομαι, to cure) incurable: ἀνὴκ. κακόν, an irreparable calamity, 2, 5, 5.

ἄνθρωπος, ανδρός, ὁ, a man, (ἄνθρωπος, a human being, either male or female): ἄνθρω often emphatic, implying courage, 1, 7, 4; often joined to another subst. and not translated, ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα, an enemy, 1, 3, 20; cf. 1, 8, 1; often prefixed to another subst. in respectful address, 1, 3, 3 and 9: ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, fellow soldiers! Not always translated when thus used.

ἀνθρώπινος, ινή, ινον, (ἄνθρωπος) human, 2, 5, 8.

ἄνθρωπος, ου, ὁ, a human being, a man; used often contemptuously, opp. to ἀνὴρ, 1, 7, 4; cf. 3, 3, 5. Sometimes, like ἀνὴρ, joined to another noun and not translated.

ἀνιδῶ, ᾧ, f. -άσω, (ἀνία, trouble) to trouble, harass, 3, 3, 19; pass. to be troubled, 1, 2, 11, ἀνιδόμενος.

ἀνίστημι, (ἀνά, ἵστημι, wh. see) to cause to stand up, to scare up, 1, 5, 3; mid. to raise one's self up, to stand up, to rise up, 1, 3, 13.

ἀνίσχω, (ἀνά, ἵσχω, another form of ἔχω) to rise: ἤμα ἡλίου ἀνίσχοντι, at sun-rise, 2, 1, 3.

ἄνοδος, ου, ἡ, (ἀνά, ὁδός) = ἀνάβασις, the way up, the march upward, 2, 1, 1.

ἀνόητος, ου, (α priv. νοέω) without sense, stupid.



ἀνταγοράζω, f. -άσω, (ἀντί, ἀγοράζω) to *buy in return*, 1, 5, 5.

ἀντακούω, (ἀντί, ἀκούω, wh. see) to *hear in return*, 2, 5, 16.

ἀντεπιμελέομαι, οὔμαι, (ἀντί, ἐπιμελέομαι, wh. see) to *take care in return*, 3, 1, 16.

ἀντί, prep. w. gen. *instead of*, 1, 1, 4; *in preference to*, 1, 7, 3; *in return for*, 1, 3, 4.—In compos. *against, in opposition to, in return for*.

ἀντιδίδωμι, (ἀντί, δίδωμι, wh. see) to *give in return*.

ἀντικαθίστημι, (ἀντί, κατά, ἵστημι, wh. see) to *appoint in place of*; *pass. to be etc.*, 3, 1, 38.

ἀντιλέγω, (ἀντί, λέγω, wh. see) to *say or speak in opposition*; w. dat. 2, 5, 29.

ἀντίος, ἰα, ἰον, (ἀντί) *opposite*, 1, 10, 10; w. ἵνα or ἐλαύνειν, *against*, 1, 8, 17 and 24: ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου, *from the opposite side*, 1, 8, 23.

ἀντιπαρασκευάζομαι, (ἀντί, παρασκευάζω), to *prepare in turn*, 1, 2, 5.

ἀντιπάσχω, (ἀντί, πάσχω, wh. see) to *suffer in return*, 2, 5, 17.

ἀντιπέρασ, (ἀντί, πέρασ) *over against, opposite*.

ἀντιποιέω, ᾧ, (ἀντί, ποιέω) to *do in return*, 3, 3, 7; mid. ἀντιποιεῖσθαι τινί τινος, to *strive with any one for anything*, 2, 1, 11; 2, 3, 23.

ἀντιστασιώτης, ου, δ, (ἀντί, στάσις, an insurrection) *one of an opposite party, an opponent*, 1, 1, 10.

ἀντιτάττω, (ἀντί, τάττω, wh. see) w. acc. and dat. to *draw up in a line against*, 2, 5, 19; *pass. to be drawn up in opposition*, 1, 10, 3.

ἀντιτοξεύω, (ἀντί, τοξεύω) to *shoot back*, 3, 3, 15.

ἀντιφυλάττω, (ἀντί, φυλάττω, wh. see) to *guard in turn*; mid. to *guard one's self in turn*, 2, 5, 3.

ἄντρον, ου, τό, a *cave, a grotto*.

ἀνυστός, όν, (ἀνύω, to accomplish) *practicable, possible*: σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστόν, *as silently as possible*, 1, 8, 11.

ἄνω, adv. (ἀνά) comp. ἀνωτέρω, sup. ἀνωτάτω, *above, up, upwards*: πορεύεσθαι ἄνω, to *proceed upward*, i. e. from the coast to the interior, 1, 2, 1: cf. τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν, the *expedition upward*, 3, 1, 8: ἀνωτέρα τῶν μαστῶν, *higher than*, etc. 1, 4, 17. — As prep. w. gen. *above*.

ἄζις, (ι)ης, ἡ, an *axe*, 1, 5, 12.

ἄξιος, ἰα, ἰον, *worthy*, w. gen. πολλοῦ ἄξιος, *worthy of much, valuable*, 1, 3, 12; cf. 2, 1, 14: w. dat. and infin. ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι, that it was not becoming a king to let . . . go; 2, 3, 25. Comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος: ἀξιωτέρας τιμῆς, *more adequate honor*, 1, 9, 29: ἔρχειν ἀξιωτάτος, *most worthy to rule*, 1, 9, 1.

ἀξιοστράτηγος, ου, (ἄξιος, στρατηγός) *worthy to lead*; comp. -ότερος, 3, 1, 24.

ἀξιόω, ᾧ, f. -ώσω, (ἄξιος) to *deem worthy*; w. acc. and inf. 1, 9, 15; w. acc. and gen. 3, 2, 7: — to *demand* (something as reasonable), to *ask*: ἡξίου δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις, he asked that these cities might be given him, 1, 1, 8: cf. 1, 3, 19; 1, 7, 8.

ἄξων, ονος, δ, (ἄγω) an *axle*.

ἄοπλος, ου, (α priv. ὄπλον) *without armor*.

ἀπαγγέλλω, (ἀπό, ἀγγέλλω) to *an-*

nounce, bear tidings, to report : trans. or intrans.

ἀπαγορεύω, (ἀπό, ἀγορεύω) to refuse, deny, renounce ; intrans. to grow weary, 1, 5, 3.

ἀπάγω, (ἀπό, ἄγω, wh. see) to lead away, to lead back, 1, 3, 14 ; apparently intrans. 1, 10, 6 : ἀπήγαγεν (sc. ἐαυτόν, or τὸ στράτευμα), he marched away.

ἀπαίδευτος, ον, (a priv. παιδεύω, to educate) uneducated, ignorant, stupid, 2, 6, 26.

ἀπαιτέω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (ἀπό, αἰτέω) to demand (as something due), 1, 2, 11 ; w. acc. of pers. and thing, 2, 5, 38.

ἀπαλλάττω, (ἀπό, ἀλλάττω, f. ἀλλάξω, pf. ἤλλαξα, aor. ἤλλαξα, pass. or mid. pf. ἤλλαγμαι, aor. pass. ἤλλάγην) to get rid of, 3, 2, 28 : ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, to remove one's self, to withdraw, 1, 10, 8.

ἀπᾶλός, ἡ, ὄν, comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος, tender, 1, 5, 2.

ἀπαμείβομαι, f. -είβομαι, (ἀπό, ἀμείβω) a Homeric word instead of ἀποκρίνομαι, only 2, 5, 15 ; ἀπημείφθη as dep.

ἀπαντάω, (ἀπό, ἀντάω) to go against, to meet, 2, 3, 17 ; 2, 4, 25.

ἅπαξ, once, once for all, 1, 9, 10. (ποτέ, once = on a certain time.)

ἀπαρασκευάστος, ον, (a priv. παρασκευάζω) comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος, unprepared, 1, 5, 9.

ἀπαράσκευος, ον, (a priv. παρασκευή, a preparation) unprepared, 1, 1, 6 ; comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος.

ἅπας, ασα, αν, strengthened form of πᾶς, all together, all, 1, 4, 4 and 17 : πεδίον ἅπαν, all a plain, 1, 5, 1.

ἀπειθέω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (a priv. πείθω) to be disobedient, 2, 6, 4.

ἄπειμι, (ἀπό, εἶμι, wh. see) to go away ; often as fut. to be about to go away, 1, 3, 11 ; 1, 4, 7.

ἄπειμι, (ἀπό, εἶμι, wh. see) to be away, to be absent.

ἀπεῖπον, (ἀπό, εἶπον) defect. aor., referred to ἀπόφηνι or ἀπαγορεύω as pres. ; f. ἀπερῶ, pf. ἀπέληκα, to refuse, deny, renounce ; to be weary, 2, 2, 16.

ἀπέληκα. See ἀπεῖπον.

ἄπειρος, ον, (a priv. πείρα, a trial) comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος, inexperienced, 2, 2, 5 ; w. gen. unacquainted with, 3, 2, 16.

ἀπελαύνω, (ἀπό, ἐλαύνω, wh. see) to drive away, to dislodge, 3, 4, 40 ; intrans. to march away, 1, 4, 5 ; to ride away, 1, 8, 17.

ἀπέρχομαι, (ἀπό, ἔρχομαι, wh. see) to go away, 1, 1, 4 ; to go over, 1, 4, 7 ; 1, 9, 29.

ἀπεχθάνομαι, ἀπεχθήσομαι, ἀπήχθημαι, ἀπηχθόμην, to be hated, to become odious to, w. dat. 2, 6, 19.

ἀπέχω, (ἀπό, ἔχω, wh. see) to hold back or away ; intrans. to be distant, 1, 3, 20 ; w. gen. 2, 4, 10 ;—mid. to hold one's self from, to refrain from, w. gen. 3, 1, 22 ; to refrain from injuring, to spare, w. gen. 2, 6, 10.

ἀπιστέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (a priv. πίστις, faith) not to trust, to distrust, w. dat. 2, 5, 6 ; to disobey, 2, 6, 19.

ἀπιστία, ας, ἡ, (a priv. πίστις, faith) distrust, 2, 5, 4 ; unfaithfulness, perfidy, 2, 5, 21.

ἄπιστος, ον, (a priv. πείθομαι, to trust) unfaithful, distrusted, 2, 4, 7.

ἀπλοῦς, ἦ, οὖν, *simple*: τὸ ἀπλοῦν, *simplicity, honesty*, 2, 6, 22.

ἀπό, prep. w. gen. only, *from, away from*: of place, 1, 8, 10; of time, 1, 7, 18; of origin, 2, 1, 3; of cause, 3, 1, 12; of material, 1, 5, 10; of means, 1, 1, 9, ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, *with these treasures*; cf. 2, 5, 7. In compos. *from, away, back*; w. some verbs it may be rendered, *what is due*.

ἀποβιβάζω, (ἀπό, βιβάζω, f. -άσω) *to cause to go forth*, esp. from a ship, *to land*, 1, 4, 5.

ἀποβλέπω, (ἀπό, βλέπω) *to look away*, 1, 8, 14.

ἀπογινώσκω, (ἀπό, γινώσκω, wh. see) *to turn the attention away from, to abandon the thought of*, w. gen. 1, 7, 19.

ἀποδείκνυμι, (ἀπό, δείκνυμι, wh. see) *to show forth, point out, direct*, 2, 3, 14; *to appoint*, 1, 1, 2; cf. 1, 9, 7.

ἀποδέρω, (ἀπό, δέρω, δερῶ, ἔδαιρα, δέδαρμαι, ἐδάρην) *to take off the hide, to flay*, 3, 5, 9: ἀποδαρέντα, *which having been flayed*.

ἀποδιδράσκω, (ἀπό, διδράσκω, δράσσομαι, δέδρακα, ἔδραν) *to run away, to escape by stealth, to elude*, 1, 4, 8; 2, 2, 13.

ἀποδίδωμι, (ἀπό, δίδωμι, wh. see) *to give away or back*, esp. *to give what is due or promised*, 1, 2, 11; 1, 7, 5: χάριν ἀπ., *to repay a favor*, 1, 4, 15.

ἀποδοκέω, ᾧ, (ἀπό, δοκέω, wh. see) only as impers. ἀποδοκεῖ = nearly οὐ δοκεῖ, *it seems inexpedient*, 2, 3, 9.

ἀποθνήσκω, (ἀπό, θνήσκω, wh. see) In Att. the comp. is much more

comm.) *to die; to be slain*, as pass. of ἀποκτείνω, ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, *was put to death by*, etc., 2, 6, 29.

ἀποθύω, (ἀπό, θύω) *to sacrifice what is due, what has been vowed*, 3, 2, 12.

ἀποικία, as, ἡ, (ἄποικος) *a colony*. ἄποικος, ου, ὁ, (ἀπό, οἶκος, *a house*) *a colonist*.

ἀπόκειμαι, (ἀπό, κείμαι, wh. see) *to lie away, to be laid up*, 2, 3, 15.

ἀποκλίνω, (ι) (ἀπό, κλίνω, κλινῶ, κέκλικα, ἔκλινα; κέκλιμαι, ἐκλίθην) *to incline away, to turn away*, 2, 2, 16.

ἀποκόπτω, (ἀπό, κόπτω, wh. see) *to cut away*, 3, 4, 39.

ἀποκρίνομαι, (ἀπό, κρίνω) ἀποκρινούμαι, ἀποκέκριμαι, ἀπεκρινάμην, *to reply, to answer*, 2, 1, 15 and 22.

ἀποκρύπτω, (ἀπό, κρύπτω, wh. see) *to conceal away; mid. to conceal away for one's self, to conceal*, 1, 9, 19, w. acc. understood.

ἀποκτείνω, (ἀπό, κτείνω, κτενῶ, ἔκτονα, aor. 1st ἔκτεινα, aor. 2d ἔκτανον) *to kill, slay, put to death*, 1, 1, 3; 2, 1, 11.

ἀποκωλύω, (ἀπό, κωλύω) *to hinder from*, w. acc. and gen. 3, 3, 3.

ἀπολαμβάνω, (ἀπό, λαμβάνω, wh. see) *to take back*, 1, 2, 27; *to receive*, 1, 4, 8; *to intercept*, 2, 4, 17.

ἀπολείπω, (ἀπό, λείπω, wh. see) *to leave behind, to abandon*, w. acc. 1, 4, 8.

ἀπόλεκτος, ον, (ἀπό, λέγω, *to select*) *select, choice*, 2, 3, 15.

ἀπόλλυμι, (ἀπό, ἔλλυμι) ἀπολέσω or ἀπολῶ, ἀπολώλεκα, pf. 2d ἀπόλωλα, ἀπώλεσα; mid. ἀπόλλυμαι, ἀπολούμαι, ἀπωλόμην, *to destroy ut-*

terly, to ruin, slay, put to death, 2, 5, 39; 3, 2, 4; to lose w. acc. and ὑπὸ w. gen. 3, 4, 11; intrans. in 2d perf. and 2d plupf. act. and in the mid., to perish, to die, 1, 2, 25; 3, 1, 2: ὑπὸ λιμοῦ, 2, 2, 11.

Ἀπόλλων, ὠνος, δ, Apollo.

Ἀπολλωνίδης, ου, δ, Apolloniðes.

ἀπόμαχος, ον, (ἀπό, μάχη) away from battle, out of the ranks, 3, 4, 32.

ἀπονοστέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἀπό, νόστος, a return) to return, 3, 5, 16.

ἀποπέμπω, (ἀπό, πέμπω, wh. see) to send away or back, 1, 1, 3; 1, 2, 1; to dismiss, 1, 7, 8; to forward, 1, 1, 8; mid. to dismiss, 1, 1, 5.

ἀποπέτομαι, (ἀπό, πέτομαι, wh. see) to fly away or forth.

ἀποπηδάω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἀπό, πηδάω) to leap away, 3, 4, 27.

ἀποπλέω, ὦ, (ἀπό, πλέω, wh. see) to sail away, 1, 3, 14; 1, 4, 7.

ἀπορέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἄπορος, a priv. πόρος) to be without means, to be at a loss, to be perplexed, 1, 3, 8; cf. 1, 5, 13; to be in want, w. gen. 1, 7, 3; cf. 2, 5, 17; mid. like the act., to be at a loss, in doubt, 3, 5, 8.

ἀπορία, as, ἡ, uncertainty, perplexity, 3, 1, 2 and 11; difficulty, 1, 3, 13; 3, 1, 12; want, 2, 5, 9.

ἄπορος, ον, (a priv. πόρος) of places, impassable, 2, 4, 4: ἄπορον, an insurmountable obstacle, 3, 2, 22: ἄπορόν ἐστιν, it is impracticable, 3, 3, 4; of persons, without resources, 2, 5, 21.

ἀπόρητος, ον, (ἀπό, ρητός, that may be spoken, verb. adj. fr. the root of ἐρῶ, f. of φημί) forbidden to be spoken, to be kept secret, 1, 6, 5.

ἀποσκάπτω, (ἀπό, σκάπτω, σκάψω, κτέ.) to dig off, to intercept by trenches: ἀποσκάπτει τι, he is cutting off some (important) point by trenches, 2, 4, 4.

ἀποσκηνέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἀπό, σκηνέω, σκηνή) to encamp away from, 3, 4, 35.

ἀποσπάω, ὦ, (ἀπό, σπάω, σπάσω, ἔσπᾱκα, ἔσπᾱσα, ἔσπασμαι, ἔσπασθην) to draw away, w. acc. 1, 8, 13; mid. to draw one's self away, to withdraw, 1, 5, 3; pass. to be removed from, 2, 2, 12.

ἀποστέλλω, (ἀπό, στέλλω, wh. see) to send away, dismiss, 2, 1, 5.

ἀποστρατοπεδεύω, oftener dep. (ἀπό, στρατοπεδεύω, f. -εύσω) to encamp away from, 3, 4, 34.

ἀποστρέφω, (ἀπό, στρέφω, wh. see) to turn away from; to induce (one) to return, 2, 6, 3.

ἀποστροφή, ἡς, ἡ, (ἀπό, στρέφω) the act of turning away, of flying for refuge, a place of refuge, 2, 4, 22.

ἀποσυλάω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἀπό, συλάω) to strip away from, to rob, τινά τι, 1, 4, 8.

ἀποσώζω, (ἀπό, σώζω, wh. see) to rescue, to conduct away in safety, 2, 3, 18.

ἀποτείνω, (ἀπό, τείνω, wh. see) to stretch out; mid. to exert one's self, to extend: δρέπανα . . . ἀποτεταμένα, scythes extending, 1, 8, 10.

ἀποτειχίζω, (ἀπό, τειχίζω, wh. see) to wall off, to cut off by means of a wall, 2, 4, 4.

ἀποτέμνω, (ἀπό, τέμνω, wh. see) to cut off, 3, 1, 17; pass. 1, 10, 1; w. acc. of remote obj. 2, 6, 1, ἀποτμη-

βέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς. Const. in the act. ἀποτέμνειν τινι τὴν κεφαλὴν.

ἀποτίθημι, (ἀπό, τίθημι, wh. see) to place away, lay up, 2, 3, 15.

ἀποτίνω, (ἀπό, τίνω, τίσω, κτέ.) to pay (what one owes); mid. to get pay (which is due) for one's self, to avenge one's self upon, to punish any one as he deserves, w. acc. 3, 2, 6.

ἀποτρέπω, (ἀπό, τρέπω, wh. see) to turn (anything) away; mid. to turn one's self away, or intrans. turn away, 3, 5, 1.

ἀποφαίνω, (ἀπό, φαίνω, wh. see) to show forth; mid. to show one's self, or something belonging to one's self, make plain, declare: γνῶμην, 1, 6, 9.

ἀποφεύγω, (ἀπό, φεύγω, wh. see) to flee away, escape, 1, 4, 8; 2, 5, 7.

ἀποχωρέω, ᾧ, (ἀπό, χωρέω, ᾧ, -ήσω) to march away or back, to withdraw, 1, 2, 9.

ἀποψηφίζομαι, (ἀπό, ψηφίζομαι, wh. see) to vote otherwise, to vote not (to do a thing), 1, 4, 15; sc. ἔπεσθαι.

ἀπροφασίστως, adv. (α priv. πρόσφασις) without excuse, promptly, 2, 6, 10.

ἄπτω, ἄψω, ἥψα, ἥμμαι, ἥφθην, to fasten on; mid. ἄπτομαι, ἄψομαι, ἥψάμην, to fasten one's self to something, to touch, w. gen. 1, 5, 10.

ἄρα, illative conj., postpos., accordingly, therefore, then, as is likely, denotes a consequence or inference which follows naturally, in accordance with what might have been expected. Cf. H. 865. K. § 324, 3, L. G.

ἄρα, interrog. particle, prepos. In a direct question not translated, as no particle is used in Eng. to indicate a direct question: ἄρ' οὐ ἀντι-

pates an affirmative answer, ἄρα μή, a neg. answer. Cf. H. 828 and 829. K. § 344. 5. (b.) L. G.

Ἀραβία, ας, ἡ, Arabia, 1, 5, 1.

Ἀράξης, ου, ὁ, Araxes, 1, 4, 19.

Ἀρβάκης, ου, ὁ, Arbāces, 1, 7, 12. ἀργός, ὄν, (α priv. ἔργον) without work, idle, 3, 2, 25.

ἀργύριον, ου, τό, silver, a piece of silver, money, 2, 6, 16.

ἄρδω, ἄρσω, to water (cattle or land), 2, 3, 13.

ἀρέσκω, ἀρέσω, ἥρεσα, ἥρεσμαι, ἡρέσθην, to please, w. dat. 2, 4, 2.

ἀρετή, ἧς, ἡ, virtue; goodness, clemency, 1, 4, 9; fidelity, 1, 4, 8; often military virtue, bravery, 2, 1, 12.

ἀρήγω, ἀρήξω, to help, to render assistance, 1, 10, 5.

Ἀριαῖος, ου, ὁ, Ariæus.

ἀριθμός, οὔ, ὁ, number; the act of numbering: ἀριθμὸν ποιεῖν, to make an enumeration, 1, 2, 9; ἀριθμὸς τῆς ὁδοῦ, length of the way, 2, 2, 6.

ἀριστάω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ἄριστον) to take breakfast, 3, 3, 6.

Ἀριστεάς, ου, ὁ, Aristæas.

ἀριστερός, ᾧ, ὄν, left, pertaining to the left: ἡ ἀριστερὰ (with or without χεῖρ), the left hand, 2, 3, 11; 2, 4, 28.

Ἀριστιππος, ου, ὁ, Aristippus.

ἄριστον, ου, τό, breakfast (taken towards noon), 2, 3, 5.

ἀριστοποιέω, ᾧ, (ἄριστον, ποιέω) to prepare breakfast; mid. ἀριστοποιέομαι, οὔμαι, to breakfast, 3, 3, 1.

ἄριστος, η, ου, sup. of ἀγαθός, best: οἱ ἄριστοι, the most distinguished, the noblest, 1, 5, 7; neut. pl. ἄριστα as adv. in the best manner, 3, 1, 6.

ἀρκέω, ὦ, -έσω, *to be sufficient*, 2, 6, 20.

ἄρκτος, ου, ὁ or ἡ, *a bear*: the constellation "Great Bear;" hence, *the north*, 1, 7, 6.

ἄρμα, ατος, τό, *a war-chariot*, 1, 2, 16: ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα, *scythe-bearing chariots*, 1, 7, 10.

ἀρμάμαξα, ης, ἡ, *a covered chariot*, esp. for women of rank, 1, 2, 16 and 18.

Ἀρμενία, ας, ἡ, *Armenia*.

ἄρπαγή, ης, ἡ, *the act of plundering, robbery, rapine*: καθ' ἄρπαγην, *for the purpose of plundering*, 3, 5, 2.

ἀρπάζω, ἀρπάσω, or ἀρπάσομαι, ἡρπακα, ἡρπασμαι, ἡρπασθην, *to rob, to plunder*, 1, 2, 25. Pass. 1, 2, 27: τὰ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, *the slaves which had been carried off*.

Ἀρταγέρσης, ου, ὁ, *Artagerxes*.

Ἀρτάοζος, ου, ὁ, *Artaozus*.

Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, ὁ, *Artaxerxes*, 1, 1; called Mnemon, or Artaxerxes II., reigned from 404 to 361.

Ἀρταπάτας, ου, ὁ, *Artapatas*.

ἄρτῳ, ὦ, -ήσω, *to hang one thing on another, to fasten (something) to (something)*, 3, 5, 10.

Ἀρτεμις, ιδος, ἡ, *Artēmis*, corresponding to the Roman *Diana*.

ἄρτος, ου, ὁ, *bread, a loaf of bread*: ἄρτων ἡμίσεα, 1, 9, 26.

ἀρχαῖος, (ἀρχή), αία, αἶον, *old*, ξένος ἀρχαῖος, 3, 1, 4; Κύρος ὁ ἀρχαῖος, *Cyrus the elder*, 1, 9, 1; τὸ ἀρχαῖον, *as adv. anciently, formerly*, 1, 1, 6.

ἀρχή, ης, ἡ, *beginning; command; government*, 3, 4, 8; *a country under the government of some one*, 1, 5, 9; *province*, 1, 1, 2 and 3.

ἀρχικός, ἡ, ὄν, (ἀρχή), *filled to command*, 2, 6, 8 and 20.

ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἡρξα, ἡρξα rare, ἡργμαί, ἡρχθην, *to begin* (in advance of others), w. gen. ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαλεῖν, *having commenced the passage over*, 1, 4, 15: ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου, 1, 6, 6:—*to be first in anything*; hence, *to lead, govern*: ὁ ἄρχων, *the commander*, 1, 9, 12; 2, 2, 5: ὁ ἄρξας, *the one who has ruled, the former ruler*, 1, 4, 10. — Pass. *to be led, ruled, governed*, 1, 3, 15; 1, 9, 4: οἱ ἀρχόμενοι, *the persons commanded, the common soldiers*, 2, 6, 19. — Mid. *to begin* (one's own work), w. gen. 3, 2, 7; w. infin. 1, 8, 18:— οἱ ἀρχόμενοι, *the commanders*, 2, 6, 12.

ἄρχων, οντος, ὁ. In form, pres. particip. of ἄρχω, wh. see.

ἄρωμα, ατος, τό, *spice*, 1, 5, 1.

ἄσεβεια, ας, ἡ, (ἄσεβής) *impiety*, 3, 2, 4.

ἄσεβής, ἐς, (α priv. σέβομαι, *to reverence*) *impious*, 2, 5, 20.

ἄσθενέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἄσθενής) *to be weak, to be ill*, 1, 1, 1.

ἄσθενής, ἐς, (α priv. σθένος, *strength*) *weak*, 1, 5, 9.

ἄσινῶς, adv. (α priv. σίνομαι, *to harm*) *without harm, without depredation*, 2, 3, 27; sup. ὥς ἂν δυνάμεθα ἀσινέστατα, *doing as little harm as possible*, 3, 3, 3.

ἄσιτος, ου, (α priv. σίτος, *grain*) *without food, having eaten nothing*, 2, 2, 16.

ἀσκέω, ὦ, -ήσω, *to practise, to cultivate*, 2, 6, 25.

ἄσκος, οὔ, ὁ, *a leathern bag or sack*, 3, 5, 9 and 10.

ἄσμενος, η, ον, *glad*, 2, 1, 16; 3, 4, 24. Adv. ἄσμένως, *gladly*.

Ἀσπένδιος, ου, ὁ, *an Aspendian*, *an inhabitant of Aspendus*, a city on the Eurymedon in Pamphylia.

ἄσπῑς, ἴδος, ἡ, *a shield*: παρ' ἄσπίδας, *towards the left*, the shield being carried on the left arm: ἄσπῑς μυρία, 10,000 *shield*, i. e. 10,000 *heavy-armed men*, 1, 7, 10.

ἀστράπτω, -ψω, (ἀστραπή, *lightning*) *to lighten, glisten*, 1, 8, 8.

ἀσφάλεια, ας, ἡ, (ἀσφαλής) *safety*.

ἀσφαλής, ἐς, (α priv. σφάλλομαι, *to stumble, fall*) *firm, sure, safe*. Comp. ἀσφαλέστερος, sup. ἀσφαλέστατος: — ἀσφαλέστατα, *most safely*, 1, 3, 11: ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῃ, *in the safest position*, 1, 8, 22; ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῃ, *in a safer place*, 3, 2, 36.

ἄσφαλτος, ου, ἡ, *asphaltum*, or *bitumen*, used for mortar, 2, 4, 12.

ἀσφαλῶς, adv. (ἀσφαλής) *safely*.

ἄτακτος, ον, (α priv. τάττω) *without order, in disorder*, 1, 8, 2; 3, 4, 19.

ἄταξις, ας, ἡ, (α priv. τάττω) *want of order*, 3, 1, 38.

ἀτέλεια, ας, ἡ, (α priv. τέλος in the sense *tax* or *public burden*) *exemption from a public burden, immunity*, 3, 3, 18.

ἀτιμάζω, ἀτιμάσω, ἡτίμασα, ἡτίμασμαι, ἡτιμάσθην, *to dishonor*: ἀτιμασθεῖς, *having been dishonored*, 1, 1, 4; cf. 1, 9, 4.

αὔ, adv. *back, again*, of place, or time. In a mere logical relation, *on the other hand, in turn, likewise*. It often denotes a simple continuation of the narrative, and is not always rendered easily into Eng.

αὔαινω, αὔανῶ, *to dry*, trans.; mid. αὔαινομαι, αὔανούμαι, *to dry*, intrans.; pass. *to be dried*, 2, 3, 16; imperf. without augment.

αὔθις, adv. lengthened form of αὔ, *again, back, back again*, of place, of time, and in a logical relation.

αὐλίζομαι, (αὐλή, *a court-yard*) αὐλίσσεται, ἡλυσάμεν and ἡλυσθην, *to pass the night*, 2, 2, 17.

αὐλών, ὠνος, ὁ, *a canal*, 2, 3, 10.

αὐξάνω or αὐξω, αὐξήσω, ἡύξησα, *to enlarge*, trans.; pass. *to be enlarged, to grow*.

αὔριον, adv. *to-morrow*.

αὐτίκα, adv. (αὐτός) *immediately, forthwith, on the spot, presently*.

αὐτόθι, adv. = αὐτοῦ, *on the spot, here, there*, 1, 4, 6.

αὐτοκέλευστος, ον, (αὐτός, κελεύω) *self-bidden = unbidden, of one's own accord*, 3, 4, 5.

αὐτόματος, η, ον, (αὐτός, μάομαι, *to desire*) *self-moved, spontaneous*: — ἀπὸ (or ἐκ) τοῦ αὐτομάτου, *spontaneously, of one's own accord*, 1, 2, 17; 1, 3, 13.

αὐτομολέω, ᾧ, f. -ήσω, aor. ἤτομόλησα, (αὐτός, μολεῖν, aor. of βλώσσω, *to go or come*) *to be a deserter, to desert*, 1, 7, 13: οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες, *those who had deserted, deserters*, 1, 10, 6.

αὐτόμολος, ου, ὁ, (αὐτός, μολεῖν, aor. of βλώσσω, *to go or come*), *a deserter*, 1, 7, 2.

αὐτός, ἡ, ὁ. 1st, In the nom. not preceded by the article, and in the oblique cases in apposition with a noun or pronoun; also in the oblique cases standing alone and first in its clause, *self*, Lat. *ipse*. 2d, Preceded

by the article, *the same, idem.* 3d, In the oblique cases, when not in apposition with a noun or pronoun and not first in its clause, *him, her, it, them.*

αὐτοῦ, adv. *here, in this place,* 1, 3, 11; *there, in that place,* 1, 5, 13; 1, 10, 17: often prefixed to a prep. αὐτοῦ παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ, *there with Ariæus,* 2, 2, 1.

αὐτοῦ, Att. for εαυτοῦ, wh. see.

ἀφαιρέω, ᾧ, (ἀπό, αἰρέω, wh. see) to take away; mid. to take away for one's self, 3, 4, 48; w. acc. of a thing and gen. of a person; or oftener w. acc. of person and thing, ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς . . . γῆν, 1, 3, 4, to deprive the Greeks, dwelling in it, of their land.

ἀφανής, ἐς, (α priv. φαίνομαι) not appearing, not plain, 2, 6, 28; out of sight, gone, 1, 4, 7.

ἀφανίζω, ἀφανίσω or ἀφανιῶ, ἡφάνικα, ἡφάνισα, ἡφάνισμαι, ἡφανίσθην, (ἀφανής) to cause to disappear, to render invisible; ὡς ἀφανιοῦντων τὰς Ἀθήνας, as if to annihilate Athens, 3, 2, 11; to obscure, ἥλιον, 3, 4, 8.

ἀφειδῶς, adv. (ἀφειδής, unsparing) unsparingly, comp. ἀφειδέστερον, sup. ἀφειδέστατα, 1, 9, 13, most unsparingly.

ἀφθονία, as, ἡ, (α priv. φθόνος, envy) freedom from envy; hence abundance, 1, 9, 15.

ἀφθονος, ον, (α priv. φθόνος, envy) ungrudging, abundant: ἐν ἀφθόνοισι, in the midst of abundance, 3, 2, 25.

ἀφίημι, (ἀπό, ἵημι, wh. see) to send away, to let go, 1, 3, 19; to suffer to escape, 2, 3, 25: τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον, the one who had let loose the ass, etc. 2, 2, 20; to let, ἀφεικέναι,

2, 8, 13: ἀφεῖς, having let (them) down, 3, 5, 10.

ἀφικνεῖτο: see Addenda, ἀφικνεόμαι.

ἀφιππεύω, f. -εύσω, (ἀπό, ἵππεύω, to ride, ἵππος) to ride away or back, 1, 5, 12.

ἀφίστημι, (ἀπό, ἵστημι, wh. see) to place away, to remove: in the perf., pluperf., fut. perf., and aor. 2d act.; in the pass. and in the fut. mid. to stand away, to withdraw: ἀφιστήκεσαν πρὸς Κύρον, revolted to Cyrus, 1, 1, 6; cf. ἀποστήναι πρὸς, 1, 1, 7: ἀποστάντες, having revolted, 1, 4, 8; w. gen. 2, 6, 27: ἀφιστήξει, will withdraw, 2, 4, 5; cf. 2, 5, 7.

ἄφρων, ον, gen. ονος, (α priv. φρήν) without reason, stupid.

ἀφύλακτος, ον, (α priv. φυλάττω) not guarded, 2, 6, 24.

Ἀχαιός, οὔ, ὁ, an Achaean

ἀχάριστος, ον, (α priv. χαρίζομαι, to gratify, χάρις, favor) unpleasing: οὐκ ἀχάριστα, not unpleasing, right pleasant, 2, 1, 13; unrewarded, 1, 9, 18.

ἀχαρίστως, adv. (ἀχάριστος) without gratitude: ἀχαρίστως ἔχειν, w. dat. to be without gratitude towards any one, 2, 3, 18.

ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι, aor. pass. ἠχθέσθην, (ἄχθος, a burden) to be burdened, to be displeased, w. gen. to be displeased at, 1, 1, 8; to be disquieted, 3, 2, 20.

ἄχρηστος, ον, (α priv. χρηστός, verb. adj. fr. χράομαι) incapable of being used, useless, 3, 4, 26.

ἄχρι, up to, as prep. w. gen.; as conj. until, ἄχρι ἂν w. subjunc. 2, 3, 2. ἀψίνθιον, ον, τό, wormwood, 1, 5, 1.



B

Βαβυλῶν, ὦνος, ἡ, *Babylon*, 2, 2, 6.  
Βαβυλωνία, ας, ἡ, *Babylonia*, 1,  
7, 1.

βάθος, ους, τό, (βαθύς) *depth*, 1, 7,  
14.

βαθύς, εἴα, ὕ, *deep*, 1, 7, 14.

βαίνω, βήσομαι, βέβηκα, ἔβην,  
(f. βήσω, and aor. ἔβησα, are causative) *to go, to walk*, 3, 2, 19.

βακτηρία, ας, ἡ, (akin to βιβάζω) *a stick, a staff*, 2, 3, 11.

βάλανος, ου, ἡ, *an acorn*, or any similarly shaped fruit: ἡ βάλανος ἡ ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος, *the date*, 1, 5, 10; cf. 2, 3, 15.

βάλλω, βαλῶ, βέβληκα, ἔβαλον, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, *to cast, throw*; w. acc. *to cast at, to pelt*, 1, 3, 1; (the object thrown is sometimes expressed, and is put in the dat.): οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες, *the darters*, 3, 3, 15.

βάπτω, βάψω, ἔβαψα, βέβαμμαι, ἐβάφην, *to dip, immerge*, 2, 2, 9.

βαρβαρικός, ἡ, ὄν, *not Grecian, foreign, barbarian*; in the *Anab.* esp. *Persian*: τὸ βαρβαρικόν, *the barbarian army*, 1, 5, 6; 1, 8, 5.

βαρβαρικῶς, adv. *in the Persian language*, 1, 8, 1.

βάρβαρος, ου, ὁ, as subst. *a foreigner, barbarian*, 1, 5, 16.

βάρβαρος, ον, adj. = βαρβαρικός, *foreign, barbarian*, 1, 7, 3; 2, 5, 32.

βαρέως, adv. (βαρύς) *heavily*: βαρέως φέρειν, *to bear impatiently, to take ill*, 2, 1, 4: βαρέως ἤκουσαν, *heard impatiently*, 2, 1, 9.

βασίλεια, ας, ἡ, *a queen, princess*.

βασίλεια, ας, ἡ, (βασίλειω) *a kingdom*: καταστήσθαι εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, *to become established in the kingdom*, 1, 1, 3.

βασίλειον, ου, τό, (βασίλεύς) *a royal structure*, 3, 4, 24; plur. βασίλεια, τὰ, *a royal residence, a palace* (in the plur. as composed of many parts), 1, 2, 7, ff.

βασίλειος, ον, (βασίλεύς) *royal*, 1, 2, 20.

βασίλεύς, ἑως, ὁ, *a king*; esp. *the Persian king*, 1, 1, 5 and 6; w. μέγας, 1, 2, 8, and often.

βασίλικός, ἡ, ὄν, (βασίλεύς) *belonging to a king, royal*, 2, 2, 16; comp. ὠτερος, sup. ὠτατος, 1, 9, 1, *endowed with the most royal qualities*.

βάσιμος, ον, (βαίνω) *passable*, 3, 4, 49.

βέβαιος, α, ον, *firm, constant*, 1, 9, 30.

Βέλεσος, vos, ὁ, *Belësys*.

βέλος, ους, τό, (βάλλω) *something cast, a dart, a missile* (cast from a sling), 3, 3, 16.

βελτίων, βέλτιστος, comp. and sup. of ἀγαθός.

βία, ας, ἡ, *strength, force*, 1, 4, 4: βίᾳ, *by force*, 3, 4, 12.

βιάζομαι, (βία), βιάσομαι, βεβιάσμαι, aor. mid. ἐβιάσάμην, aor. pass. ἐβιδόσθην; *to force, overpower*, w. acc. 1, 4, 5; *to try to compel*, w. acc. and infin. 1, 3, 1.

βιαίως, adv. (βίαιος, *violent*, βία, *violence*) *with force, severely*, 1, 8, 27.

βίκος, ου, ὁ, *a large earthen vessel, a pitcher*, esp. for containing wine, 1, 9, 25.

βίος, ου, ὁ, *life*, 1, 1, 1.

βιοτεύω, (βίος), -εύσω, *to live, to pass one's time*, 3, 2, 25.

βλάβη, ης, ἡ, (βλάπτω) *injury, harm*, 2, 6, 6.

βλακεύω, (βλάξ, *sluggish*), -εύσω, *to be sluggish, indolent, spiritless*, 2, 3, 11.

βλάπτω, βλάβω, ξβλαψα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάφθην or ἐβλάβην, *to harm, injure*, w. acc.

βλέπω, βλέψω, *to look; to incline, to extend*, 1, 8, 10.

βοάω, ὦ, (βοή, *a cry*), -ήσω or -ήσομαι, *to cry aloud, to shout*, 1, 8, 1, ff.

βοήθεια, ας, ἡ, (βοητέω) *help; auxiliary forces*, 2, 3, 19; *the act of rendering assistance*, 3, 5, 4.

βοητέω, ὦ, (βοηθός, *a helper*; βοή, *a cry*, θέω, *to run*), -ήσω, *to help, to go or come for assistance*: βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ w. acc. *to march out against*, 3, 5, 6.

βοιωτιάζω, (Βοιώτιος, *a Boeotian*) *to act like a Boeotian*: τῇ φωνῇ *to imitate a Boeotian in dialect*, 3, 1, 26.

Βοιώτιος, ου, δ, *a Boeotian*. (Boeotia was in central Greece, northwest of Attica.)

βόσκημα, ατος, τό, (βόσχω, *to feed*) *that which has been fed or fattened, fattened cattle*; also in plur. *cattle*, 3, 5, 2.

βουλεύω, (βουλή, *counsel*), -εύσω, *to counsel, advise, plot*: εἰ τι ἐμοὶ κακὸν βουλευοίς, *if you should devise any mischief against me*, 2, 5, 16; mid. *to take counsel with one's self, to deliberate*, 1, 3, 19 and 20; πρὸς ταῦτα, *in respect to these things*: ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, *what it is necessary to do*, 1, 3, 11: ὅπως, *how*, etc. 1, 1, 4: εἰ,

*whether*, etc. 1, 10, 5: τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, *plotting these same things*, 1, 1, 7; w. infin. *to propose*, 3, 2, 8.

βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην and ἡβουλήθην, *to wish*, w. acc. and infin. 1, 1, 1; w. infin. (supplied by the connection) 1, 7, 5. (βούλομαι differs, according to Buttmann, from ἐθέλω, in that the latter implies a more decided choice.)

βοῦς, βοός, δ or ἡ, *an ox or cow*.

βραδέως, adv. (βραδύς, *slow*) *slowly*, 1, 8, 11.

βραχύς, εἶα, ὅ, (of space or time) *short, small*: βραχύ, *a short distance*, 1, 5, 8; βραχύτερα, *a less distance*, 3, 3, 7; ἐπὶ βραχύ, *a short distance*, 3, 3, 17.

βρέχω, βρέξω, ἔβρεξα, βέβρεγμα, ἐβρέχθην, *to wet*, 3, 2, 22; pass. *to be wet*, 1, 4, 17.

βροντή, ῆς, ἡ, *thunder*.

βρωτός, ἡ, ὄν, (βιβρώσκω, *to eat*) *edible*.

βωμός, οὔ, δ, *an elevation*, esp. *an altar*, 1, 6, 7.

## Γ

γάμος, ου, δ, *marriage*: ἐπὶ γάμῳ, *in marriage, as wife*, 2, 4, 8.

γάρ, causal conj. postpos. *for*. See H. 870. K. § 324. L. G. — It is often *exegetical*, i. e. it introduces the full detail of what has been before alluded to. In this use, it is generally not translated into Eng.

γαστήρ, ρός, ἡ, *the stomach, the abdomen*.

Γαυλίτης, ου, δ, *Gauliſes*.

γέ, enclit. at least, even, Lat. quidem. See H. 850. K. § 317. 2. L. G.

γείτων, ονος, ὁ, subst. or adj. a neighbor, or adjacent to, w. gen. or dat. 2, 3, 18; 3, 2, 4.

γέλως, ωτος, ὁ, (γελᾶω, to laugh) laughter, 1, 2, 18.

γενεά, ἀς, ἡ, (γεν. stem of γίνομαι) birth: ἀπὸ γενεᾶς, from one's birth, 2, 6, 30.

γενεῖδω, ᾧ, (γένειον, chin) -ῆσω, to have a beard; hence (opp. to ἀγέ- νειος εἶναι), to be old, 2, 6, 28.

γένος, ους, τό, descent, birth; γένει προσήκων, w. dat. related to by birth, 1, 6, 1.

γέρρον, ου, τό, anything made of wicker-work, esp. a wicker shield, oblong, with wicker frame, and covered with leather; carried esp. by the Persians, 2, 1, 6.

γεροφόρος, ου, ὁ, (γέρρον, φέρω) a bearer of a wicker shield, 1, 8, 9.

γέρων, οντος, ὁ, (akin to γέρας, honor) an old man.

γεύομαι, γεύσομαι, γέγευμαι, ἐγευσάμην, to taste, partake of, w. gen. 1, 9, 26; 3, 1, 3.

γέφυρα, ἀς, ἡ, a bridge: γ. ἐξευ- γμένη πλοίοις, a bridge made of boats, 1, 2, 5.

γῆ, ῆς, ἡ, earth, land, ground: κατὰ γῆν, by land, 1, 1, 7; ἐπὶ γῆς, upon the ground, 3, 2, 19.

γῆλοφος, ου, ὁ, (γῆ, λόφος) a mound of earth, an eminence, a hill, 1, 5, 8; 1, 10, 12.

γῆρας, γῆρας or γῆρως, τό, (cf. γέρων, an old man, and γέρας, honor) old age, 3, 1, 43.

γίνομαι, less comm. γίνομαι, γενή-

σομαι, γεγένημαι or γέγονα, ἐγενόμην, to become, to come into being, to be born, w. gen. or ἀπὸ and gen. 1, 1, 1; 2, 1, 3: to come, to arrive, 1, 8, 8 and 24; ἔξω ἐγένετο, extended beyond, 1, 8, 23; τὴν ὁδὸν γιγ., to lead, 3, 4, 24; ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο, he came to himself, 1, 5, 17: to occur, happen, take place, κρίσις ἐγέν. 1, 6, 5; δρόμος ἐγέν. τοῖς στρατ., a running began to, etc., i. e. the soldiers began to run, 1, 2, 17: to amount to (with numbers), 1, 2, 9; τοὺς γεγενημένους δασμούς, the revenues accruing, 1, 1, 8: to be possible, permitted, 1, 9, 13: to become favorable, λέναι . . . οὐκ ἐγγί- γνετο τὰ ἱερὰ, the sacrifices were not favorable to go, etc. 2, 2, 3; ὅρκους γεγενημένους, that oaths have been exchanged, 2, 5, 3.

γιγνώσκω, less comm. γινώσκω, γνῶσομαι, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνω, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην, to know, become acquainted with, recognize, w. acc. of pers. or thing, often; w. acc. and particip.; w. acc. and infin.: to judge, to approve of, ἃ ἐγίνωσκον, what they judged (best), what they approved of, 1, 3, 13.

Γλοῦς, οὔ, ὁ, Glus.

γνοῦς, 2d aor. act. particip. of γινώσκω.

γνώμη, ῆς, ἡ, (akin to γινώσκω) mind, judgment: τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε, have the conviction, be assured, 1, 3, 6; consent, 1, 3, 13; expectation, 1, 7, 8; γνώμη, on principle, 2, 6, 9; πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην, to direct attention to himself, 2, 5, 29; plan, 1, 8, 10.

γονεῦς, ἑως, ὁ, (akin to γίνομαι) a parent; pl. γονεῖς, 3, 1, 3.

Γοργίας, ου, ὁ, Gorgias, one of the

most celebrated of the Sophists who taught at Athens, 2, 6, 16.

γούν, (γέ, ούν) at least, 3, 2, 17. See H. 850. 2.

γράφω, γράψω, γέγραφα, ἔγραψα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφη or ἐγράφην, to engrave, to paint, to write, 2, 3, 1; 2, 6, 4.

γυμνάζω, -άσω, (γυμνός) to exercise, 1, 2, 7.

γυμνήτης, ου, δ, or γυμνής, ἦτος, δ, (γυμνός) a light-armed soldier = ψιλός (spoken of archers, slingers, darters, and sometimes of targeteers), 1, 2, 3.

γυμνός, ἡ, όν, naked, with no outer garment, 1, 10, 3.

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, a woman, a wife, 1, 2, 12; μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις, with stately wives and maidens, 3, 2, 25.

Γωβρύας, ου, δ, Gobryas.

# Δ

δάκνω, δήξομαι, δέδηχα, ἔδακον, δέδηγμα, ἐδήχθην, to bite, 3, 2, 18 and 35.

δακρύω, -ύσω, (δάκρυ, a tear) to weep, 1, 3, 2.

Δαμάρατος, ου, δ, Damaratus, 2, 1, 3.

Δάνα, ης, ἡ, Dana, 1, 2, 20.

δαπανῶ, ὦ, -ήσω, (δαπάνη, expense) to expend, 1, 3, 3. Intrans. to expend one's resources, 2, 6, 6; ἀμφὶ w. acc. 1, 1, 8.

Δαράδαξ, ακος, δ, Daradax.

Δαρδανεύς, έως, δ, a Dardanian, an inhabitant of Dardanus.

δαρεικός, ου, δ, (properly an adj. with the ellipsis of σπαρτή) a Darc;

a Persian gold coin, first issued by Darius I. (hence the name), having on one side a picture of this king; on the other, that of an archer; worth 20 Attic drachmæ = nearly \$3 50; the monthly pay of a common soldier, 1, 3, 21.

Δαρείος, ου, δ, Darius; known in history as Darius II. or Darius Nothus; was king of Persia from 423 to 404 B. C., 1, 1, 1.

δασμός, ου, δ, (δαίω, δάσσομαι, to divide), revenue, tribute, 1, 1, 8.

δασύς, εἴα, ύ, thick, close, dense, 2, 4, 14.

δέ, inseparable enclit. particle meaning towards.

δέ, conj. postpos., but, and. See H. 862. K. § 322. 2. L. G.

δέδοικα or δέδια (perf. w. pres. meaning), ἐδεδοίκεν or ἐδεδίων (plupf. w. impf. meaning), δέισομαι, ἔδεισα, to fear, w. acc. 3, 2, 5; w. μή and a depend. mood, 3, 2, 25; w. acc. and μή, 1, 7, 7; 3, 5, 18.

δεῖ, impers. δεήσει, ἐδέησε, it is necessary, there is need, w. gen. 2, 3, 5; 3, 2, 33; w. acc. and infin. 3, 2, 30: πολλοῦ, ὀλίγου δεῖ, it lacks much, it lacks little: εἰς τὸ δέον, seasonably, 1, 3, 8.

δεῖδω, used only in 1st pers. sing. = δέδοικα, wh. see.

δεικνυμι or δεικνύω, δείξω, δέδειχα, ἔδειξα, δέδειγμα, ἐδείχθην, to show, point out.

δείλη, ης, ἡ, afternoon, 1, 8, 8; 2, 2, 14; evening, 3, 3, 11, etc.

δειλός, ἡ, όν, (δείδω) timid, cowardly, 3, 2, 35.

δεινός, ἡ, όν, (δείδω) fearful, terrible; as subst. δεινόν, πρό, danger,

peril, 2, 3, 22; plur. 2, 6, 7: ἐκ πάντων δεινῶν, from extreme perils, 3, 2, 11; —τὰ δεινότατα, those things which are most terrible, 3, 1, 13; —skilful, clever, 1, 9, 19; δεινὸς λέγειν, skilful in speaking, eloquent, 2, 5, 15.

δειπνέω, ᾧ, -ῃσω, (δειπνον) to partake of the δειπνον; may be rendered either to dine or to take supper.

δειπνον, ον, τό, the principal meal of the day, taken towards evening, may be rendered dinner or supper.

δειπνοποιέομαι, οὔμαι, -ήσομαι, (δειπνον, ποιέω) to prepare one's supper or to take supper.

δείσας, see δέδοικα.

δέκα, num. indeclin. ten.

δένδρον, ον, τό, a tree.

δεξιὰ, ἄς, ἥ, (fem. of δεξιός, w. χεῖρ understood) right hand: ἐν δεξιᾷ, on the right, 1, 5, 1; —the right hand (offered as a pledge); hence, a pledge, δεξιὰς ἔδωσαν, they gave pledges, 2, 3, 28; δεξιὰν λαβεῖν, to receive a pledge, 1, 6, 6; δεξιὰν φέρειν, to convey a pledge, 2, 4, 1.

δεξιός, δ, ὄν, pertaining to the right hand, on the right: τὸ δεξιόν, the right wing, 1, 2, 15; τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος, the right (portions) of the wing, 1, 8, 4.

δέομαι, δεήσομαι, ἐδεήθην, to need, to want, w. acc. 1, 3, 4; 2, 3, 29; w. gen. of pers. or thing, 1, 9, 21; 3, 5, 9: —to ask, to entreat, w. acc. and infin. 1, 4, 14; w. gen. 1, 4, 15; w. gen. and infin. 1, 1, 10; 1, 2, 14.

δέον, see δεῖ.

δέρμα, ατος, τό, (δέρω, to flay) hide, skin, 1, 2, 8.

δεσμός, οὔ, δ, (δέω, to bind) a band, strap, fetter, 3, 5, 10.

δεσπότης, ον, δ, (akin to δεσπόζω, to rule absolutely) a master, 3, 2, 13.

δεῦρο, adv. hither, here, 1, 3, 19.

δεύτερος, α, ον, second: —δεύτερον or τὸ δεύτερον, the second time, 1, 8, 16; 2, 2, 4.

δέχομαι, δέχομαι, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέξαμην, to receive, w. acc. 3, 4, 32; to accept (= to approve of), 1, 8, 17; to receive (an enemy = to offer resistance, to sustain an attack, to wait to receive), 1, 10, 6 and 11; 3, 1, 42.

δέω, δήσω, ἔδησα, δέδεκα, δέδεμαι, ἐδέθην, to bind, fasten, 3, 4, 35.

δέω, δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, to want, to lack, 1, 5, 14. Cf. δεῖ and δέομαι.

δή, (postpos.) now, accordingly, indeed; see H. 851. K. § 316. L. G. δηλος, η, ον, plain, clear, manifest, δηλός ἐστι often w. a particip.; δηλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος, he was manifestly troubled, or, it was manifest that he was, etc., 1, 10, 6; cf. 1, 5, 9; —δηλον ὅτι (also written δηλονότι), manifestly, clearly, 1, 3, 9; 3, 1, 16.

δηλώω, ᾧ, -ώσω, (δηλος) to make plain, 2, 2, 18; to set forth, to relate, 2, 5, 26; 3, 1, 1.

δήπου, certainly, surely.

διά, prep. w. gen. through, of place, time, means, manner: αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας λέναι, to proceed (in the way of friendship, i. e.) in a friendly manner toward them: διὰ παντός πολέμου, in the way of perpetual war, i. e. in a hostile manner, 3, 2, 8.—w. acc. on account of. In compos. through, asunder, apart; also the

notion of completion. Cf. H. 629. K. § 166.

διαβαίνω, (διδ, βαίνω, wh. see) to go over, to cross, 1, 4, 14, and often.

διαβάλλω, (διδ, βάλλω, wh. see) to calumniate, 1, 1, 3.

διάβασις, εως, ἡ, (διδ, βαίνω) the act of crossing; the means of crossing, 3, 5, 9; the place of crossing, bridge, ford or ferry, 1, 5, 12; a temporary bridge, 2, 3, 10.

διαβατέος, α, ον, (διαβαίνω) that must be crossed, ποταμός, 2, 4, 6.

διαβατός, ἡ, ον, (διαβαίνω) that may be passed, passable, 2, 5, 9; 1, 4, 18.

διαβιδάω, -άσω, (διδ, βιδάω) to transport over, 3, 5, 8; pass. 3, 5, 2.

διαβολή, ἡς, ἡ, (διαβάλλω) calumny, 2, 5, 5.

διαγγέλλω, (διδ, ἀγγέλλω, wh. see) to bear tidings through, to announce, 1, 6, 2; mid. to pass along the word among one another, 3, 4, 36.

διαγελάω, ὦ, (διδ, γελάω, wh. see), to mock, to expose to ridicule, 2, 6, 26.

διαγίγνομαι, (διδ, γίγνομαι, wh. see) to continue, w. a particip. 2, 6, 5; to pass, νύκτα, 1, 10, 19; to subsist, to live, 1, 5, 6: κρέα ἐσθιοντες διε., lived on meat, lit. lived by eating meat.

διδάγω, (διδ, ἄγω, wh. see) to convey over, 2, 4, 28; 3, 5, 10; to pass one's time, 3, 1, 43; 3, 3, 2; to continue, w. particip. 1, 2, 11.

διαδέχομαι, (διδ, δέχομαι, wh. see) to succeed to, to relieve, to take turns, 1, 5, 2.

διαδίδωμι, (διδ, δίδωμι, wh. see) to distribute, 1, 9, 22; 1, 10, 18.

διαθεόμαι, ὦμαι, (διδ, θεόμαι, wh. see) to look through, examine, consider, 3, 1, 19.

διαίρῃω, ὦ, (διδ, αἰρέω, wh. see) to take apart, to destroy, 2, 4, 22.

διδέκμαι, (διδ, κείμαι, wh. see) to be in a state of mind (described in the context), 3, 1, 3; to be disposed, πρὸς τινα, 2, 6, 12; w. dat. φιλικῶς τινι διακεῖσθαι, to be on friendly terms with any one, 2, 5, 27.

διακελεύομαι, (διδ, κελεύω) to exhort, encourage, cheer on, w. dat. 3, 4, 45.

διακινδυνεύω, (διδ, κινδυνεύω) to pass through danger, to expose one's self, 1, 8, 6; 3, 4, 14.

διακόπτω, (διδ, κόπτω, wh. see) to cut through, to cut in pieces, 1, 8, 10.

διαλέγω, (διδ, λέγω, wh. see) to pick out; mid. διαλέγομαι, διαλέξομαι, διείλεγμαι, διελεξάμην or διελέχθην, to converse with, 1, 7, 9; πρὸς τί τινι, 2, 5, 42; to confer with, w. dat. 2, 5, 42; to talk, 2, 6, 23.

διαλείπω, (διδ, λείπω, wh. see) to leave an interval, to be apart, 1, 7, 15; 1, 8, 10.

διανοέομαι, οὔμαι, (διδ, νοέομαι, -ήσομαι) to have in mind, to intend, purpose, 2, 4, 17; 3, 2, 8.

διδνῶια, ας, ἡ, (διδ, νόος) thought, intention.

διαπέμπω, (διδ, πέμπω, wh. see) to send apart, to send in different directions, 1, 9, 27.

διαπολεμέω, ὦ, (διδ, πολεμέω, -ήσω) to continue war, to fight it through, w. dat. 3, 3, 3.

διαπορεύω, (διδ, πορεύω, πόρος) to transport over, 2, 5, 18; mid. διαπο-

πεύομαι (see πορεύομαι), to pass over, 2, 5, 18; to pass through, 3, 3, 3.

διαπράττω, (διά, πράττω, wh. see) to effect; comm. mid. to effect (for one's self), to achieve, accomplish, 2, 3, 29: τί τι καὶ παρὰ τίνος, to obtain anything for any one from any one, 2, 3, 20; παρὰ τίνος, to obtain (one's request) from any one, 2, 6, 2; διαπραγμένους παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι, having obtained (his request) from the king that it should be granted, etc. 2, 3, 25; w. infin. to obtain (one's request) to, etc. 2, 6, 28.

διαρπάζω, (διά, intens. and ἀρπάζω, wh. see) to plunder, to sack, 1, 2, 19 and 26; to take as plunder, 1, 10, 2 and 18.

διασημαίνω, (διά, σημαίνω, wh. see) to signify, to indicate, 2, 1, 23.

διασπᾶω, ᾶ, (διά, σπᾶω, σπᾶσω, ἔσπᾶσα, ἔσπᾶκα, ἔσπασμαι, ἔσπασθην) to draw apart, 3, 4, 20; pass. to be drawn apart, to be widely separated, 1, 5, 9.

διασπείρω, (διά, σπείρω, σπερῶ, ἔσπειρα, ἔσπαρμαι, ἔσπαρην) to scatter, to draw apart, 1, 8, 25; 2, 4, 3, διὰ τὸ διασπάρθαι αὐτῷ τὸ στράτ., because his army has been dispersed.

διατάττω, (διά, τάττω, wh. see) to arrange, draw up, 1, 7, 1.

διατελέω, ᾶ, (διά, τελέω, ᾶ, f. τελέσω or τελῶ, aor. ἐτέλεσα, pf. τετέλεκα, pass. pf. τετέλεσμαι, aor. ἐτετέλεσθην), to continue (the march), 1, 5, 7; often w. particip. 3, 4, 17, χρώμενοι, they continued to use or they continually made use of, etc.

διατίθημι, (διά, τίθημι, wh. see) to dispose, πάντας διατιθεῖς, 1, 1, 5.

διατρίβω, (διά, τρίβω, τρίψω,

ἔτριψα, τέτριφα, τέτριμμαι, ἐτρίβην, less comm. ἐτρίφθην) to spend time, to delay, 1, 5, 9; 2, 3, 9.

διαφερόντως, adv. (διά, φέρω) conspicuously, preëminently, 1, 9, 14.

διαφέρω, (διά, φέρω, wh. see) to differ, w. gen. and acc. from something in respect to, etc. 2, 3, 15; to surpass, excel, 3, 1, 37; impers. πολὺ διέφερεν, it differed much, i. e. it was much more advantageous, etc. w. infin. 3, 4, 33.

διαφθείρω, (διά, φθείρω, φθερῶ, ἔφθειρα, ἔφθαρκα, ἔφθαρμαι, ἐφθάρην) to destroy, ruin; to lead astray, corrupt, 3, 3, 5.

διαχειρίζω, f. -ίσω or -ιῶ, (διά, χειρίζω, to have in the hand, χεῖρ, hand) to manage, accomplish; pass. to be accomplished, 1, 9, 17.

διδάσκαλος, ου, δ, (διδάσκω) a teacher.

διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαί, ἐδιδάχθην, to teach, w. infin. 3, 4, 32; w. ὥς and a finite mood, 2, 5, 6.

δίδωμι, f. δώσω, aor. ἔδωκα, pf. δέδωκα, pass. pf. δέδομαι, aor. ἐδόθην, to give, 1, 2, 27; 1, 6, 6; to grant, 3, 1, 23; 2, 3, 18 and 25; pass. w. ἐκ and gen. given by, 1, 1, 6.

διείργω, -είρξω, (διά, εἶργω) to hold in, to intercept, 3, 1, 2.

διελαύνω, (διά, ἐλαύνω, wh. see) to ride through, 1, 5, 12.

διελών, -όντος, aor. particip. fr. διαιρέω.

διέρχομαι, (διά, ἔρχομαι, wh. see) to go through, w. acc. 3, 5, 17; to march, σταθμούς, 2, 4, 12;—διῆλθε λόγος, a rumor went out, 1, 4, 7.

διέχω, (διά, ἔχω, wh. see) to be

*distant from*, ἀπὸ w. gen. 1, 8, 17; *to be apart from, separated from*, w. gen. 1, 10, 4; *to be separated, to be drawn apart*, 3, 4, 20;—τὸ διέχον, *the intervening space*, 3, 4, 22.

διήμι, (διᾶ, ἴημι) *to allow to pass through*, 3, 2, 23.

διίστημι, (διᾶ, ἴστημι, wh. see) *to cause to stand apart*. In the mid. and in the pf. plupf. and 2d aor. act. intrans. *to stand apart*, 1, 8, 20; *to stand at intervals*, 1, 5, 2.

δίκαιος, αἰα, αἰον, (δικη) *right, just, reasonable*, 1, 3, 5: τὸ δίκαιον, *that which is just, justice*, 2, 6, 18; ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου, *according to justice, in a just manner*, 1, 9, 19; cf. σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ, 2, 6, 18. Comp. -ότερος, sup. -ότατος.

δικαιοσύνη, ης, ἡ, (δίκαιος, δικη) *justice*, 1, 9, 16.

δικαίωτης, όητος, ἡ, (δίκαιος, δικη) *justice*, 2, 6, 26.

δικαίως, adv. (δίκαιος) *justly*.

δικαστής, ου, ό, (δικη) *a judge*.

δικη, ης, ἡ, *justice, a judicial proceeding, a penalty*: μὴ δίκην ἐπιθῆ, *lest he may inflict punishment*, w. gen. *on account of, for*, 1, 3, 10; cf. 3, 2, 8: τὴν δίκην, *the (proper) punishment*, 1, 3, 20; cf. 2, 5, 38 and 41: δίκην δίδοναι, *to give satisfaction = to suffer punishment*, 2, 6, 21.

διότι = διὰ τοῦτο ότι, *because*, 2, 2, 14.

διπλάσιος, α, ον, *twice as much, twice as many*: διπλάσιον, *twice as far as*, w. gen. 3, 3, 16.

δίς, adv. in compos. often δι-, *twice, twofold*.

δισχίλιοι, αι, α, (δίς, χίλιοι) *two thousand*.

διφθέρα, ας, ἡ, (δέφω, *to tan*) *a tanned skin*, 1, 5, 10.

διφθέρινος, η, ον, (διφθέρα) *made of tanned skin, leathern*, 2, 4, 28.

δίφρος, ον, ό, (syncop. fr. διφόρος, fr. δίς, φόρος, φέρω) *a seat in a chariot (carrying two persons, the driver and the warrior)*, 1, 8, 10.

διώκω, διώξω or διώζομαι, ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα, -γμαί, -χθην, *to pursue*, 1, 4, 8; verb. adj. διωκτέος.

διώξις, εως, ἡ, (διώκω) *the act of pursuing, pursuit*.

διωρυξ, -υχος, (διορύττω, *to dig through*) *a trench, canal*.

δόγμα, ατος, τό (δοκέω) *a thing decided on, a resolution*: δόγμα ποιήσασθαι, *to pass a resolution*, 3, 3, 5.

δοκέω, ώ, δόξω, έδοξα, δέδογμαί, *to seem, to seem good, to appear*, 1, 3, 12; 1, 4, 15;—often impers. *it seems; it seems good, or expedient*, 1, 7, 1; 1, 2, 1:—τὰ δόξαντα, *the things that have been resolved on*, 1, 4, 20; cf. τὰ δεδογμένα, *the things determined*, 3, 2, 39;—*to think, to imagine*, 1, 8, 2.

δοκιμάζω, άσω (δοκιμος, *approved*, perh. fr. δέχομαι) *to approve of; pass. to be chosen and approved of*, 3, 3, 20.

δόλιος, α, ον, and os, ον, (δόλος, *a snare, deceit*) *deceitful, treacherous*, 1, 4, 7.

Δόλοπες, ων, οι, *Dolopians*.

δόξα, ης, ἡ, (δοκέω) *opinion, expectation*: παρὰ τὴν δ., *contrary to expectation*, 2, 1, 18.

δορκός, άδος, ἡ, (δέρκομαι, *to pierce with the eye*) *a gazelle*, 1, 5, 2.

δόρηστος or δόρπιστος, ου, ό, (δόρπον, *supper*) *supper-time*, 1, 10, 17.



(Both forms of the word are sometimes written oxytone.)

δόρυ, δόρατος, τό, *a spear*.

δοῦλος, ου, ὁ, *a slave*;—*a subject*, in opp. to a king; esp. *a subject* of the Persian king, 1, 9, 29; 2, 5, 38.

δουπέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (δοῦπος) *to make a loud noise*, 1, 8, 18.

δοῦπος, ου, ὁ, *noise, tumult*, 2, 2, 19.

δρεπανηφόρος, ου, (δρέπανον, φέρω) *scythe-bearing*, 1, 7, 10 and 11.

δρόμος, ου, ὁ, (δέδρομα, pf. 2d of τρέχω) *the act of running*: δρόμῳ δεῖν, *to run hastily*, 1, 8, 18: δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατ., lit. *a running began to the soldiers*, i. e. *the soldiers began to run*, 1, 2, 17.

δύναμαι, δυνησομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην or ἡδυηθήην (rare ἐδυνάσθην), impf. ἐδυνάμην or ἡδυνάμην, *to be able*, w. infin. 1, 3, 2, and often; w. infin. understood, 1, 6, 7: *to have power*, 2, 6, 21; *to signify, to mean*, 2, 2, 13; *to be worth*, w. accus. 1, 5, 6. Often used with a superlative to denote the idea *possible*: ὥς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, *as much as he was able*, or *as much as possible*, 1, 1, 6: ὥς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους, *as many as possible*, 1, 6, 3.

δύναμις, εως, ἡ, (δύναμαι) *ability, power*, 2, 5, 11; *military power, forces*, 1, 3, 12; plur. 1, 5, 9: εἰς δύναμιν, *according to one's ability*, 2, 3, 23; *insufficient power* = *weakness*, 1, 6, 7.

δυνάστης, ου, ὁ, (δύναμαι) *a ruler, a chief man, an influential man*, 1, 2, 20.

δυνατός, ἡ, ὁ, (δύναμαι) *powerful*, 1, 9, 24; *capable, able*, 2, 6, 19:

in pass. sense, *possible*, 1, 3, 15; 2, 6, 8. Comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος.

δύνω, imperf. ἔδυνον, other tenses supplied from δύομαι, f. δύσομαι, pf. δέδυμαι, aor. ἔδυσάμην, *to go down* (of the sun), *to set*, 2, 2, 3 and 13. (δύω, δύσω, ἔδυσα are causative, *to immerse, to sink*; but δέδυκα and the 2d aor. ἔδυν are intransitive, like δύομαι and δύνω.)

δύο, two, gen. and dat. δυοῖν, or δύο as indeclin. 1, 2, 23, and often.

δύομαι, see δύνω.

δυσ-, inseparable prefix, meaning *hard, ill, difficult*.

δύσβατος, ου, (δυσ-, βαίνω) and δυσδιάβατος, ου, (δυσ-, διά, βαίνω) *difficult to pass*.

δυσπόρευτος, ου, (δυσ-, πορεύω) *difficult to pass*, 1, 5, 7: πηλοῦ ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσ-, *mud difficult for the wagons to pass*.

δύσπορος, ου, (δυσ-, πόρος) *difficult to pass*, 2, 5, 9.

δύσχρηστος, ου, (δυσ-, χρηστός, verb. adj. fr. χράομαι) *difficult to be used, nearly useless*, 3, 4, 19.

δυσχωρία, as, ἡ, (δυσ-, χώρα) *ruggedness of country*, 3, 5, 16.

δύω, see δύνω.

δώδεκα, indeclin., *twelve*.

δῶρον, ου, τό, (δίδωμι) *a gift, present*.

## E

ἐάν, (εἰ, ἂν) *if*, only w. the subjunc. Other forms are ἤν, ἄν.

ἐαρίσω, -ίσω, (ἐαρ, spring) *to pass the spring*, 3, 5, 15.

ἐαυτοῦ or αὐτοῦ, ἐαυτῆς or αὐτῆς, reflex. pron. of *himself, of her-*

*self*, etc., limiting a noun with the article, it stands between the two, 1, 5, 12, etc.: τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, *those of himself, his own men*, 1, 2, 15: τὰ ἑαυτῶν, *their own affairs*, 3, 1, 16.

εἶω, εἶσω, εἶασα, εἶακα, imperf. εἶων, aor. pass. εἶάθην, f. mid. as pass. εἶασομαι, *to let, suffer, permit*: εἶα Κῦρος, 1, 4, 7.

ἐγγύς, adv. *near*; comp. ἐγγυτέρω, sup. ἐγγύτατα or ἐγγυτάτω.

ἐγκέλευστος, ον, (ἐν, κελεύω) *bidden, incited*, 1, 3, 13.

ἐγκέφαλος, ου, δ, (ἐν, κεφαλῇ) *the brain*:—*the edible pith* (of young palm shoots), 2, 3, 16.

ἐγκρατής, ἐς, (ἐν, κράτος) *powerful over, master of*, w. gen. 1, 7, 7.

ἐγχειρίσω, -ίσω, Att. -ῶ, (ἐν, χεῖρ) *to put into the hand, to entrust*, w. acc. and dat. 3, 2, 8.

ἐγώ, I: πρὸς με (instead of πρὸς ἐμέ), 3, 3, 2.

ἐγωγε, I at least, I for my part, 1, 4, 8.

ἐξευγμένη, see ζεύγνυμι.

ἐθελοντής, οὔ, δ, (ἐθέλω) *a volunteer*; as adj. *voluntary*, 1, 6, 9.

ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα, *to be willing, to consent; to wish, to desire*, 1, 3, 8.

ἔθνος, οὖς, τό, *a nation*: κατ' ἔθνη, *nation by nation*, 1, 8, 9.

εἰ, conj. *if*, w. the indic. and opt.; εἰ καί, *although*: καὶ εἰ, *even if*: εἰ μὴ, *unless, except*: εἰ δὲ μὴ, *but if not, otherwise*: εἴπερ γε, *if at least*.—In an indirect question, *whether*: εἴτε . . . εἴτε, *whether . . . or*, 2, 1, 14;—εἴ τις, εἴ τι, *like ὅστις, ὅτι, whoever, whatever*, 1, 5, 1; 1, 6, 1.

εἰδέναι, see οἶδα. Addenda.

εἶδον, see ὁράω.

εἶδος, οὖς, τό, (same root with εἶδον) *form, appearance*.

εἰκάζω, (εἰκός) εἰκάσω, εἶκασα or ἤκασα, εἶκασμαι or ἤκασμαι, εἰκάσθην, *to make like, compare*; hence, *to estimate, to conjecture*, 1, 6, 1 and 11; 1, 10, 16.

εἰκός, ὅτος, τό, (neut. particip. fr. εἶκα, for εἶοικς) *likely, probable, reasonable*: εἰκότα λέγειν, *to speak what is reasonable*, 2, 3, 6; ὥς τὸ εἰκός, sc. ἐστίν, *as it is reasonable* (to suppose), 3, 1, 21; εἰκός, sc. ἐστίν, *it is likely*, 3, 1, 13; οἶον εἰκός . . . γίνεσθαι, *as was natural*, etc., 2, 2, 19. So often with an ellipsis of ἐστίν or ἦν.

εἴκοσι, *twenty*.

εἰκότως, adv. (εἰκός) *reasonably, naturally*.

εἴω, εἴξω, *to yield, give way*.

εἴω, see εἶοικα.

εἶλον and εἰλόμην, see αἰρέω.

εἰμί, f. ἔσομαι, impf. ἦν, *to be, to exist*; often w. gen. *to be of, to belong to*, 1, 1, 6, ἦσαν Τισσαφέρνους; w. dat. τί σφισιν ἔσται, *what should be to them*, i. e. *what they should have*, 1, 7, 8; w. a particip. ἦν δυναμένη, *a circumlocution for ἐδύνατο*, but more emphatic, 2, 2, 13;—impers. ἔστω (for the accent see H. 406. Rem. b. K. § 16. 1.), ἦν, *it is possible, was possible*, 1, 4, 4; 1, 5, 2 and 3. Prefixed to a relat. pron. or adv. it imparts an indefinite meaning, ἔστι δ' ὅστις, *now and then one however*, 1, 8, 20: ἦν οὖς, *some*, 1, 5, 7; cf. 2, 5, 18: ἔσθ' ὅτε, *sometimes*, 2, 6, 9. Cf. H. 812. K. § 182. Rem. 2.

εἶμι, imperf. ἔειν or ἦα, *to come or go*; pres. indic. infin. and partic. chiefly fut. in meaning, 1, 3, 6, *ἰόντος*, *about to go*; also w. pres. meaning, *ἰόντος*, *passing*, 1, 8, 16. — verb. adj. *ἰτέον*, *must go*, 3, 1, 7.

εἴπερ, (εἰ, *πέρ* intens.) *if indeed, if really*.

εἶπον, (comm. referred to *φημί* as pres., wh. see; the forms *εἰπάτω* and *εἶπατε* fr. the 1st aor. are also comm.) *to speak, to say, to tell, to bid, to propose*, 1, 3, 14.

εἰργα or εἰργω, εἴρω or εἴρω, etc., *to include, to exclude, to hinder, to prevent; to be shut up, to be envied*, 3, 1, 12.

εἶρηκα, see *φημί*.

εἰρήνη, ης, ἡ, *peace*: εἶρ. ἄγειν, *to preserve peace*, 2, 6, 6.

εἰς, sometimes ἐς, prep. w. acc. only, *into, to, among, at, against, until, towards, for, of place, time, measure and number, aim or purpose*. In compos. same as alone. See H. 620. K. § 165. 2. — εἰς *δύναμιν*, *according to*, etc. 2, 3, 23: εἰς *πόλεμον*, *in respect to*, etc. 1, 9, 14; cf. εἰς *δικαιοσύνην*, 1, 9, 16.

εἷς, μία, ἓν, *one, a single one*.

εἰσάγω, (εἰς, ἄγω, wh. see) *to lead into*, *πρός* or *εἰς* τι.

εἰσβάλλω, (εἰς, βάλλω, wh. see) *to cast into, to effect an entrance into*, 1, 2, 21; of rivers or canals, *to empty into*, 1, 7, 15.

εἰσβολή, ης, ἡ, (εἰς, βολή, *the act of throwing*, fr. βάλλω) *an incursion; an entrance, a pass*, 1, 2, 21.

εἴσωμι, (εἰς, εἶμι, wh. see) *to go into*: εἰσῆσαν παρ' αὐτόν, *entered into his presence*, 1, 7, 8.

εἰσελαύνω; (εἰς, ἐλαύνω, wh. see) *to march into*, 1, 2, 26.

εἴσομαι, see *οἶδα*.

εἰσπηδάω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (εἰς, πηδάω) *to leap into*, 1, 5, 8.

εἰσπίπτω, (εἰς, πίπτω, wh. see) *to fall into, to press into*, 1, 10, 1.

εἴσω, adv. (εἰς) *within*; as prep. w. gen. εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, *within the mountains*, 1, 2, 21; cf. 1, 4, 5.

εἴτα, adv. *then, thereupon, after that*: *πρῶτον μὲν ... εἴτα δέ*, 1, 2, 16.

εἴτε ... εἴτε, (Lat. *sive ... sive*) *whether ... or, either ... or*.

ἐκ, before a vowel ἐξ, w. gen. only, opp. to εἰς, *out of, from, away from, of place, time, origin, source, cause, material, inference*: ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου, *by unjust means, unjustly*, 1, 9, 16: ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου, *justly, on the principles of justice*, 1, 9, 19: ἐκ τούτου, *hereupon*, 1, 3, 13: ἐκ τούτων, *in consequence of these things, in these circumstances*, 1, 3, 11. See H. 624. K. § 163. 4. In comp. *out of, from*; also intens.

ἐκασταχόσε, adv. (ἐκαστος) *in every direction*: τοὺς ἐκασταχόσε φάσκοντας εἰδέναι, *those affirming that they knew the way in every direction*, 3, 5, 17.

ἐκαστος, η, ον, *every, every one, each, each one*, 1, 2, 15: plur. τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἐκαστοῖς, *to the several commanders*, 1, 1, 6.

ἐκάστοτε, adv. (ἐκαστος) *every time, invariably*, 2, 4, 10.

ἐκάτερος, α, ον, *each of two, each*, 1, 8, 27.

ἐκατέρωθεν, adv. (ἐκάτερος) *from both sides, on both sides*, 1, 8, 18.

ἐκατέρωσε, adv. (ἐκάτερος) *in both directions*, 1, 8, 14.

ἐκατόν, *a hundred*.

ἐκβαίνω, (ἐκ, βαίνω, wh. see) *to go out, go forth*.

ἐκβάλλω, (ἐκ, βάλλω, wh. see) *to cast out, drive out, banish*, 1, 1, 7; *to expel*, 1, 2, 1; *to throw away*, 2, 1, 6.

Ἐκβάτανα, ὡν, τὰ, *Ecbatāna*, the capital of Media, 2, 4, 25; the summer residence of the Persian king, 3, 5, 15.

ἐκγονος, ου, ὅ, (ἐκ, γίγνομαι) *descendant*, 3, 2, 14.

ἐκδεῖρω or ἐκδέρω, (ἐκ, δαίρω or δέρω, f. δερῶ, aor. ἔδειρα, pass. pf. δέδαρμαι, aor. ἔδαρην.—δαίρω is considered Ionic, yet Dindorf reads δαίρειν, 1, 2, 8,) *to strip off the skin, to flay*.

ἐκεῖ, adv. *there, in that place*.

ἐκεῖνος, η, ο, *that, that one: οἱ ἐκεῖνου, those of that one, i. e. his men*, 1, 2, 15; cf. 1, 3, 1; rendered as a pers. pron. ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον, *to ask him*, 1, 3, 18, and often.

ἐκεῖσε, adv. *thither, to that place*.

ἐκθλίβω, -ψω, (ἐκ, θλίβω, *to press*) *to press out, crowd out* (of their ranks), 3, 4, 19 and 20.

ἐκκαλύπτω, (ἐκ, καλύπτω, καλύψω, ἐκάλυψα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην) *to uncover: τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας, the shields uncovered*, 1, 2, 16.

ἐκκλησία, ας, ἡ, (ἐκ, καλέω) *an assembly*, 1, 3, 2.

ἐκκλίνω, (ἐκ, κλίνω, κλινῶ, etc.) *to bend out, to give way*, 1, 8, 19.

ἐκκομίζω, (ἐκ, κομίζω, wh. see) *to bear out, to carry forth*, 1, 5, 8.

ἐκκόπτω, (ἐκ, κόπτω, κόψω, etc.) *to cut down*, 1, 4, 10; 2, 3, 10.

ἐκκυμαίνω, (ἐκ, κυμαίνω, -ανῶ, κῦμα, *a wave*) *to bend out*, 1, 8, 18.

ἐκλέγω, (ἐκ, λέγω, wh. see) *to pick out, choose, select*, 3, 3, 19.—Mid. 2, 3, 11.

ἐκλείπω, (ἐκ, λείπω, wh. see), *to leave, forsake, abandon*, 1, 2, 24.

ἐκπέμπω, (ἐκ, πέμπω, wh. see) *to send out, send forth*, 3, 2, 24.

ἐκπίμπλημι, (ἐκ, πίμπλημι, wh. see) *to fill out*, 3, 4, 22.

ἐκπίνω, (ἐκ, πίνω, f. πίομαι, pf. πέπωκα, aor. ἔπιον, pass. pf. πέπομαι, aor. ἐπόθην) *to drink up*, 1, 9, 25.

ἐκπίπτω, (ἐκ, πίπτω, wh. see) *to fall out, to fall down* (of trees), 2, 3, 10: τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας, *those who had been banished*, 1, 1, 7.

ἐκπλέω, (ἐκ, πλέω, πλεῖσσομαι or πλευσσοῦμαι, ἐπλευσα, πέπλευσμαι, ἐπλεύσθην) *to sail out, to set sail*, 2, 6, 2.

ἐκπλεως, ὡν, (ἐκ, πλέως, *full*) *full, filled out*, 3, 4, 22.

ἐκπλήττω, (ἐκ, πλήττω, πλήξω, ἐπληξα, πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήχθην, comm. ἐπλήγγην, but ἐκπλήττω and καταπλήττω have -επλάγγην) *to strike out, to deprive one of his senses by a sudden shock, to terrify*; pass. *to be terrified*, 1, 5, 13; 2, 2, 18; *to be stupefied with terror*, 1, 8, 20; *to be astonished*, 2, 4, 26.

ἐκποδών, adv. (ἐκ, root ποδ. fr. ποῦς, and ὦν) *out of the way: ἐκποδών ποιεῖσθαι, to put out of the way*, 1, 6, 9. Opp. to ἐμποδών.

ἐκπωμα, ατος, τό, (ἐκ, πίνω) *a drinking-cup*.

ἐκφαίνω, (ἐκ, φαίνω, wh. see) *to*

make plain: πόλεμον ἐκφ., to declare war, 3, 1, 16.

ἐκφέρω, (ἐκ, φέρω, wh. see) to carry forth: πόλεμον πρὸς τινα ἐκφ., to carry on war against, 3, 2, 29; to relate, report, 1, 9, 11.

ἐκφεύγω, (ἐκ, φεύγω, wh. see) to escape, 1, 3, 2; 1, 10, 3.

ἐκόν, οὔσα, ὄν, g. ὄντος, voluntary, of one's own accord, 1, 1, 9; 2, 4, 4, οὐ . . . ἐκόν γε βουλῆσεται, he will never consent voluntarily, etc.

ἐλαιον, ου, τό, (ἐλαία, an olive-tree) olive-oil, or genr. oil.

ἐλάττων, ου, g. ὀνος, (comp. of μικρός) smaller.

ἐλαύνω, f. ἐλῶ, aor. ἤλασα, pf. ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἤλασθην (ᾶ) late ἐλήλασμαι, ἤλασθην, to drive, to ride, sc. ἵππον or ἄρμα, 1, 5, 15; to march, sc. στρατεύμα, 1, 5, 13: ἐλῶντα εἰς, to march or drive into, 1, 8, 10: ἐλαύνει ἀντίος, marches against, 1, 8, 24: ἤλασε, he marched, 1, 2, 23.

ἐλάφειος, ου, (ἐλαφος, a deer) of a deer: ἐλάφεια, sc. κρέα, venison, 1, 5, 2.

ἐλαφρός, ᾶ, ὄν, (akin to ἐλαφος, a deer) light, quick, agile.

ἐλέγχω, ἐλέγξω, ἡλεγξα, ἐλήλεγμαι and ἡλεγμαι, ἡλέγχθην, to question, convict, 3, 5, 14, 2, 5, 27.

ἐλελίζω, -ξω, (ἐλελεῦ, the war-cry) to raise the war-cry, 1, 8, 18. Cf. ἀλαλάζω.

ἐλευθερία, ας, ἡ, (ἐλεύθερος), freedom, liberty, 1, 7, 3.

ἐλεύθερος, α, ου, (ἐλευθ, root of ἐλευσομαι and ἡλθον), free, 2, 5, 32.

ἐλθεῖν, see ἔρχομαι.

Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὁ, a Greek; plur. οἱ Ἕλληνες, as adj. 1, 10, 7.

Ἑλληνικός, ἡ, ὄν, (Ἕλλην) Grecian: τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, the Grecian force, 1, 2, 1.

Ἑλληνικῶς, adv. (Ἑλληνικός) in the Greek language, 1, 8, 1.

Ἑλλησποντιακός, ἡ, ὄν, situated on the Hellespont, 1, 1, 9.

Ἑλλήσποντος, ου ὁ, (Ἑλλης πόντος, sea of Helle. See Class. Dic., art. Helle) the Hellespont, 1, 1, 9.

ἐλπίζω, ῖσω or -ιῶ, etc. (ἐλπίς) to hope.

ἐλπίς, ἰδος, ἡ, hope: ἐλπίδας λέγειν, to express hopes, 1, 2, 11.

ἐμαντοῦ, ἡς, reflex. pron. 1st pers., of myself.

ἐμβαίνω, (ἐν, βαίνω, wh. see) to go in, to enter in; εἰς w. acc. 1, 3, 17; 1, 4, 7.

ἐμβάλλω, (ἐν, βάλλω, wh. see) to cast in; of a river, ἐμβ. εἰς, to empty into, 1, 2, 8; to make an attack, 1, 8, 24: πληγὰς ἐμβ., to inflict blows, to strike: ἵπποις ἐμβ. χιλόν, to give forage to horses, 1, 9, 27: ἐμβ. εἰς, to make an incursion among, 3, 5, 16 and 17.

ἐμβρόντητος, ου, (ἐμβροντάω, ἐν, βροντή, thunder) thunder-struck; hence, destitute of reason, insane, mad, 3, 4, 12.

ἐμπαλιν, (ἐν, πάλιν) back, back again, 1, 4, 15: εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, back again, 3, 5, 13.

ἐμπεδῶ, ῶ, (ἐν, πέδον, ground) to fix in the ground, make firm; hence, to keep, observe, 3, 2, 10.

ἐμπεύρω, adv. (ἐμπειρος, experienced, acquainted with, ἐν, πείρα, a trial): ἐκ πάντων τῶν ἐμπεύρω αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων, of all those personally acquainted with him, 2, 6, 1.

ἐμπίπλημι, (ἐν, πίμπλημι, wh. see: μ of the simple verb is dropped in this comp., except in the augmented forms, where it may be rejected or retained) *to fill, fill up*, 1, 10, 12; *to satisfy*, 1, 7, 8.

ἐμπίπτω, (ἐν, πίπτω, wh. see) *to fall in, or among*; w. dat. *to occur to*, 3, 1, 13.

ἐμποδῶν, adv. (ἐν, ποδί fr. ποῦς, ὦν) *in the way*: τί ἐμποδῶν, *what is in the way, what hinders*, 3, 1, 13.

ἐμποιέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ἐν, ποιέω, *to create or produce in*, w. dat. *to inspire* (a feeling or conviction) *in*, *to impress upon*, w. dat. 2, 6, 8 and 19.

ἐμπόριον, ου, τό, (ἐν, πόρος) *a place of trade, a trading post*, 1, 4, 6.

ἐμπροσθεν, adv. (ἐν, πρόσθεν) *before*, w. gen. *in front of*, 1, 8, 23; as adj. ἐν τῷ ἐμπροσθεν λόγῳ, *in the foregoing narrative*, 2, 1, 1.

ἐμφανής, ἐς, (ἐν, φαίνω) *plain*: ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ, *openly, plainly*, 2, 5, 25.

ἐν, prep. w. dat. only, Lat. in, w. ablative: of place, *in, at, among*; of time, *in, during*; of state, condition, means, *in, under, with*. See H. 627. K. § 164. 1.

ἐναντίος, ἰα, ἰον, (ἐν, ἀντίος) *opposite, opposed to*, w. gen. or dat. 3, 2, 10: οἱ ἐναντίοι, *the enemy*.

ἐνδεia, as, ἡ, (ἐν, δέω, *to want*) *need, want*, 1, 10, 18.

ἐνδέκατος, η, ον, *eleventh*.

ἐνδέω, (ἐν, δέω, *to want*, wh. see) *to be in want of*.

ἐνδηλος, ον, (ἐν, δηλος) *plain, manifest*, 2, 4, 2.

ἐνδον, (ἐν) *within*: οἱ ἐνδον, *those within*, 2, 5, 32.

ἐνδύω, (ἐν, δύω, wh. see) *to put on*, 1, 8, 3.

ἐνεδρεύω, f. -εύσω, (ἐνέδρα, an *ambush*: ἐν, ἔδρα, *the act of sitting*) *to lie in wait*, 1, 6, 2.

ἐνείμι, ἐνέσσομαι, ἐνῆν, (ἐν, εἰμι) *to be in*: ἐνῆν, sc. τοῦτ' ἂν τόπῳ, 1, 5, 1 and 2; cf. 2, 4, 21 and 22: ἐνῆν ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ, 1, 6, 3.

ἐνεκα, also before vowels ἐνεκεν, *on account of, for the sake of, for*, w. gen. and comm. after the case, 2, 3, 20; between the adj. and subst. 1, 4, 5 and 8; separated fr. the governed case, 1, 9, 21.

ἐνεκεν, see ἐνεκα.

ἐνεήκοντα, *ninety*.

ἐνθα, adv. (ἐν) *demonstrative, there*, 1, 9, 5; *relative, where*, 1, 8, 1; of time, *then, thereupon*: ἐνθα δὴ, *then indeed*, 1, 8, 2; 2, 1, 10.

ἐνθάδε, adv. (ἐνθα) *here*, 3, 3, 2; *hither, here*, 2, 1, 4.

ἐνθεν, adv. (ἐν) *whence*, 1, 10, 1: = ἐκεῖσε ἐνθεν, *to a place from which*, 2, 3, 6: = ταύτας ἐξ ὧν, *those from which*, 3, 5, 13: ἐνθεν μὲν ... ἐνθεν δέ, *on the one side, ... on the other side*, 2, 4, 22.

ἐνθυμέομαι, οὔμαι, f. -ήσομαι, pf. ἐντεθύμηναι, aor. ἐνεθυμήην, (ἐν, θυμός), *to have in mind, to consider*, w. acc. 2, 4, 5; 3, 1, 20 and 43.

ἐνθύμημα, ατος, τό, (ἐνθυμέομαι) *a thought, conception*, 3, 5, 12.

ἐνιαυτός, οὔ, δ, *a year*: κατ' ἐνιαυτόν, *annually*, 3, 2, 12.

ἐνιοι, αι, α, (ἔστιν οἱ, ἐνι οἱ) *some, some persons*, 2, 4, 1.

ἐνίοτε, adv. (ἔστιν ὅτε, ἐνι ὅτε) *sometimes*, 3, 1, 20.

ἐννέα, *nine*.

ἐννοέω, ὦ, f. ἤσω, (ἐν, νοέω) to have in mind, to consider, reflect, 2, 4, 19: ἐννοῶ ὅτι, 2, 4, 5; to plan, find out, 2, 2, 10; mid. (w. aor. pass. in mid. sense) to consider, 3, 1, 3 and 41; to consider with fear, to fear, w. μή, 3, 5, 8.

ἐννοια, as, ἡ, (ἐν, νοῦς) a thought, reflection, 3, 1, 13.

ἐνοικέω, ὦ, f. ἤσω, (ἐν, οἰκέω) to dwell in, to inhabit, w. acc. 1, 3, 4; of ἐνοικοῦντες, the inhabitants, 1, 2, 24; 1, 5, 5.

ἐνορᾶω, ὦ, (ἐν, ὁράω, wh. see) to see, discover, 1, 3, 15.

ἐνοχλέω, ὦ, f. ἤσω, (ἐν, ὄχλῳ, ὄχλος, a crowd) to annoy, disturb, w. dat. 2, 5, 13; 3, 4, 21.

ἐντάττω, (ἐν, τάττω, wh. see) to draw up in, to insert, enrol; pass. to be enrolled, 3, 3, 18.

ἐνταῦθα, adv. (ἐν) of place, there, in that place, 1, 2, 9; to that place, thither, there, 1, 10, 13 and 17; of time, at that time, then, 1, 7, 10.

ἐντείνω, (ἐν, τείνω, τενῶ, ἔτεινά, τέτακα, τέταμαι, ἐτάθην) to stretch, strain, extend: πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις, they extended blows to one another, i. e. they smote one another, 2, 4, 11.

ἐντελής, ἐς, (ἐν, τέλος) complete, full: μισθὸν ἐντελῆ, 1, 4, 13.

ἐντερον, ου, τό, (ἐντός) an intestine; plur. intestines, bowels, 2, 5, 33.

ἐντεῦθεν, adv. (ἐνθα) hence, thence, 1, 2, 7, etc.; of time, then, thereupon, 3, 1, 31.—Illative, accordingly.

ἐντίθημι, (ἐν, τίθημι, wh. see) to place in; mid. ἐνθέμενοι, having placed (on board), 1, 4, 7.

ἐντίμος, ου, (ἐν, τιμή) honored.

ἐντίμως, adv. (ἐντίμος) with honor; ἐντίμως ἔχειν, to be held in honor, 2, 1, 7.

ἐντός, (ἐν) within, of place or time, w. gen. 2, 1, 11.

ἐντυγχάνω, (ἐν, τυγχάνω, wh. see) to fall in with, to meet, w. dat. 1, 2, 27; 1, 8, 1 and 10.

Ἐνυάλιος, ου, δ, (Ἐννώ, the goddess of war) Enyalíus, the Warlike, an epithet of Ares, 1, 8, 18.

ἐνωμοτάρχης, ου, δ, (ἐνωμοτία, ἄρχω) a leader of an ἐνωμοτία, an enomotarch, 3, 4, 21.

ἐνωμοτία, as, ἡ, (ἐνώματος, sworn, ἐν, ὄμνυμι) an enomoty, the fourth part of a lochus, about 25 men, 3, 4, 22.

ἕξ, see ἕκ.

ἕξ, six.

ἐξαγγέλλειν, (ἕξ, ἀγγέλλω, wh. see) to publish, announce, report, 1, 6, 5; w. acc. and dat. 1, 7, 8; w. ὡς, 2, 4, 24.

ἐξάγω, (ἕξ, ἄγω, wh. see) to lead out, w. acc. 1, 6, 10; pass. οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη, was not even thus induced, etc. 1, 8, 21.

ἐξαιρέω, ὦ, (ἕξ, αἰρέω, wh. see) to take out, 2, 1, 9; 2, 3, 16; to take away, remove, w. acc. and gen. 2, 5, 4; to select, choose, 2, 5, 20.

ἐξαιτέω, ὦ, f. ἤσω, (ἕξ, αἰτέω) to demand; mid. to rescue by entreaty, ἐξαιτησαμένη, 1, 1, 3.

ἐξακισχίλιοι, αι, α, six thousand.

ἐξακόσιοι, αι, α, six hundred.

ἐξαπατάω, ὦ, f. ἤσω, (ἕξ, ἀπατάω, fr. ἀπάτη, deceit) to deceive, cheat, 2, 6, 22.

ἐξαπίνης = εξαίφνης, adv. (ἕξ,

αἰφνης, suddenly) suddenly, unexpectedly, 3, 3, 7; 3, 5, 2.

ἐξεῖναι, see ἔξεστι.

ἐξελαύνω, (ἐξ, ἐλαύνω, wh. see) to drive out, 1, 3, 4: sc. πῶδα, ἄρμα, ἵππον, στράτευμα, to go, to ride, to march: ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει, thence he marches, 1, 2, 5 and often.

ἐξελέγχω, (ἐξ, ἐλέγχω, wh. see) to prove, convict, 2, 5, 27.

ἐξέρχομαι, (ἐξ, ἔρχομαι, wh. see) to go out or forth, ἐξελεθεῖν, 1, 3, 17.

ἔξεστι, impers. (ἐξ, εἰμι) it is permitted: ἔξεστι ψεύδεσθαι, one may be deceived, etc. 2, 6, 28; ἐξόν, acc. abs., it being permitted, while it is or was permitted, 2, 5, 22; 2, 6, 6; 3, 1, 14.

ἐξέτασις, εως, ἡ, (ἐξετάζω, to examine closely) an examination; a military inspection or review: ἐξ. ... ἐποίησεν, 1, 2, 9; cf. 1, 2, 14.

ἐξήκοντα, sixty.

ἐξικνέομαι, οὔμαι, ἐξίξομαι, ἐξικόμην, (ἐξ, ἰκνέομαι) to come up to, to reach, 1, 8, 19; 3, 4, 4; of persons, 3, 3, 15; w. gen. 3, 3, 7.

ἐξίστημι, (ἐξ, ἵστημι, wh. see) to place out or away. In the intrans. parts (see ἵστημι), to stand away, to withdraw, 1, 5, 14.

ἐξόν, see ἔξεστι.

ἐξοπλίζομαι, -ίσομαι, etc. (ἐξ, ὀπλίζω, to arm, ὄπλον, a piece of armor) to arm one's self completely, 1, 8, 3; 2, 1, 2.

ἐξοπλισία, as, ἡ, (ἐξοπλίζομαι) full military equipment: ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ, in full equipment, under arms, 1, 7, 10.

ἐξορμάω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ἐξ, ὀρμάω) to

incite, animate, 3, 1, 24. Intrans. to set out, to proceed, 3, 1, 25.

ἔξω, adv. (ἐξ) without, out of doors, on the farther side, 1, 4, 4; on the outer side, 2, 2, 4: ἔξω εἶναι, to be away or abroad, 2, 6, 3: οἱ ἔξω, those without, 2, 5, 32.—Prep. w. gen. out of, without, on the farther side of, 1, 4, 5; beyond, 1, 8, 13 and 23; out of, 2, 6, 12.

ἔξωθεν, (ἐξω) from without, without, separate from, w. gen. 3, 4, 21.

ἔοικα, pf. 2d as pres.; ἐφκειν, plupf. as impf. to be like, to resemble, w. dat. 2, 1, 13; impers. ὡς ἔοικε, as it seems, 2, 2, 18.

ἐορτή, ἡς, ἡ, a festival.

ἐπαγγέλλω, (ἐπί, ἀγγέλλω, wh. see) to announce; mid. to announce one's self, to promise, offer, 2, 1, 4.

ἐπαινέω, ᾧ, f. -έσω, comm. -έσομαι, aor. ἐπήνεσα, pf. ἐπήνεκα, pass. pf. ἐπήνημαι, aor. ἐπηνέθην, to praise, applaud, 1, 3, 7; 3, 1, 45; to thank, 1, 4, 16.

ἐπαίτιος, ον, (ἐπί, αἰτία, accusation) liable to accusation: ἐπαίτιόν τι, some ground of accusation, 3, 1, 5.

ἐπακολουθέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ἐπί, ἀκολουθέω) to follow after, 3, 2, 35.

ἐπάν, (ἐπεί, ἄν) w. subjunc. when, 1, 4, 13.

ἐπαναχωρέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ἐπί, ἀνάχωρέω) to go back, 3, 5, 13; retreat, 3, 3, 10.

ἐπεγγελάω, ᾧ, (ἐπί, ἐν, γελάω, γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα, aor. pass. ἐγελάσθην) to deride, insult, w. dat. 2, 4, 27.

ἐπεί, conj. (ἐπὶ) of time, when, after, 1, 1, 1; 1, 2, 1 and often; as



often as, 1, 5, 2; 1, 8, 20;—causal, since, 1, 3, 5 and 6; for, 3, 1, 31.

ἐπειδάν, conj. (ἐπειδή, ἄν) w. subjunc. when, after, 1, 4, 8; 2, 3, 29: ἐπειδάν τάχιστα, as soon as, 3, 1, 9.

ἐπειδή, (ἐπεί, δὴ) of time, when, after, 1, 2, 17; 1, 7, 16; causal, since, inasmuch as, 1, 9, 24.

ἐπεῖδον, see ἐφορᾶω.

ἐπειμι, (ἐπί, εἰμί, wh. see) to be upon, ἐπὶ, 1, 2, 5.

ἐπειμι, (ἐπί, εἰμι, wh. see) to advance, march forward, 1, 2, 17; 1, 6, 2: ἡ ἐπιοῦσα ἔως, the following morning, 1, 7, 1; cf. 1, 7, 2.

ἐπεῖπερ, (ἐπεί, περ intens.) since, inasmuch as, 2, 2, 10.

ἐπειτα, (ἐπί, εἶτα) then, after that, thereupon, 1, 3, 10: ὁ ἐπειτα χρόνος, the following time, the future, 2, 1, 17.

ἐπέρομαι, pres. and impf. not used in Att.; instead of it, ἐπερωτῶ, (ἐπί, ἔρομαι, also not used in pres. and imperf. in Att.; cf. ἐρωτᾶω) f. ἐπερήσομαι, aor. ἐπηρόμην, to ask in addition, ask again, enquire of, w. acc. 3, 1, 6.

ἐπέχω, (ἐπί, ἔχω, wh. see) to hold upon, to hold back, w. gen. to keep from something, 3, 4, 36.

ἐπήκοος, ον, (ἐπί, ἀκούω) that hears or can hear: ἐπήκοον, a place of hearing, a hearing distance, 2, 5, 38; 3, 3, 1.

ἐπηρόμην, (ἐπί, ἠρόμην) see ἐπέρομαι.

ἐπί, prep. w. gen. on, upon, 1, 2, 21: of a river, on the banks of; towards, 2, 1, 3: denoting extent upon, ἐπὶ τεττάρων, four deep, 1, 2,

15: ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν, by themselves, alone, 2, 4, 10; in the time of, ἐφ' ἡμῶν, in our time, 1, 9, 12;—w. dat. on, at, over, with, in the power of, ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, 1, 1, 4; on account of, ἐπὶ τούτῳ, on this account, 3, 1, 27: denoting purpose, for, ἐπὶ τούτῳ, for this purpose, 1, 3, 1; cf. 1, 6, 10; 2, 4, 5 and 8; after, ἐπὶ τούτῳ, after this one, 3, 2, 4; cf. 2, 5, 41:—w. acc. on, upon (with the idea of motion towards); to, towards: also in a hostile sense, against; for, after, to obtain; extension upon, over, 1, 7, 15. See H. 641. K. § 167. 3.

ἐπιβάλλω, (ἐπί, βάλλω, wh. sec) to cast on, 3, 5, 10.

ἐπιβουλεύω, (ἐπί, βουλεύω, -εύσω, etc.) to plot against, w. dat. 1, 1, 8 and 6; to lay plans to obtain, 2, 6, 24.

ἐπιβουλή, ἡς, ἡ, (ἐπί, βουλή) a design against, a plot, 1, 1, 8.

ἐπιγίγνομαι, (ἐπί, γίγνομαι, wh. see) to fall upon, to make an attack, 3, 4, 25.

ἐπιδείκνυμι, (ἐπί, δείκνυμι, wh. see) to show, exhibit, 1, 2, 14; to set forth, 1, 3, 13 and 16; to show, prove, 3, 2, 26; 1, 9, 7;—mid. to show one's self, 1, 9, 10 and 16; w. ὅτι, 2, 6, 27.

ἐπιδεῖν, see ἐφορᾶω.

ἐπιδιώκω, (ἐπί, διώκω, wh. see) to pursue, 1, 10, 11.

ἐπιθυμέω, ᾧ, f. -ήσω, (ἐπί, θυμός) to desire, strive after, wish, w. infin. 1, 9, 12; w. gen. 1, 9, 21.

ἐπιθυμία, ας, ἡ, (ἐπί, θυμός) desire, 2, 6, 16.

ἐπικάμπω, (ἐπί, κάμπω, f. -ψω)

to bend, to wheel around (for the purpose of flanking an enemy), 1, 8, 23.

ἐπίκειμαι, (ἐπί, κείμαι, wh. see) to press upon, attack.

ἐπικίνδυνος, ον, (ἐπί, κίνδυνος) dangerous; comp. -ότερος, 1, 3, 19.

ἐπικρύπτω, (ἐπί, κρύπτω, wh. see) to conceal; mid. to conceal (for one's own benefit), 1, 1, 6.

ἐπικυρώ, ὦ, f. -ώσω, (ἐπί, κυρώ, to make valid) to confirm, ratify, sanction, 3, 2, 32.

ἐπιλανθάνομαι (ἐπί, λανθάνω, wh. see) to forget, w. gen. 3, 2, 25.

ἐπιλέγω, (ἐπί, λέγω, wh. see) to say in addition, 1, 9, 26.

ἐπιλείπω, (ἐπί, λείπω, wh. see) to fail, w. acc. 1, 5, 6; pass. τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον, the part left behind, 1, 8, 18.

ἐπίλεκτος, ον, (ἐπί, λέγω) select: οἱ ἐπίλεκτοι, chosen men.

ἐπιμέλεια, as, ἡ, (ἐπιμελής) care, attention, 1, 9, 24 and 27.

ἐπιμελόμαι, οὔμαι, and ἐπιμέλομαι, ἐπιμελήσομαι, ἐπιμεμέλημαι, ἐπεμελήθην, (ἐπί, μέλομαι) to care for, attend to, w. gen. 1, 1, 5; 3, 2, 37; to observe carefully, 1, 8, 21.

ἐπιμελής, ἐς, (ἐπί, μέλομαι) careful: comp. ἐπιμελέστερος, 3, 2, 30.

ἐπιμέλομαι, see ἐπιμελέομαι.

ἐπιμίγνυμι, (ἐπί, μίγνυμι, wh. see) to mingle with, have intercourse with, 3, 5, 16.

ἐπινούω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (ἐπί, νοέω, νόος) to have in mind, to intend, w. infin. 2, 2, 11; w. acc. 2, 5, 4.

ἐπιορκέω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (ἐπιορκος, perjured; ἐπί, ὅρκος an oath) to swear falsely, to be guilty of perjury, 2, 5, 38 and 41; to swear falsely by,

w. acc. of obj. sworn by, θεούς, 2, 4, 7; 3, 1, 22.

ἐπιορκία, as, ἡ, (same root as the foregoing word) perjury.

ἐπιπάρειμι, (ἐπί, παρὰ, εἰμι) to be near at hand (for assistance), 3, 4, 23.

ἐπιπάρειμι, (ἐπί, παρὰ, εἰμι) to march along in a parallel direction, 3, 4, 30.

ἐπιπίπτω, (ἐπί, πίπτω, wh. see) to fall upon, to attack, w. dat. 1, 8, 2.

ἐπίπονος, ον, (ἐπί, πόνος, labor) laborious; comp. ἐπιπονώτερος, α, ον, 1, 3, 19.

ἐπιπρυντος, ον, (ἐπί, ῥέω to flow) overflowed, well-watered, 1, 2, 22.

ἐπισάπτω, (ἐπί, σάπτω, -ξω, to pack) to load on: of a horse, to saddle, 3, 4, 35.

Ἐπισθένης, οὐς, δ, Episthēnēs.

ἐπισιτίζομαι, f. -ίσομαι or -ιοῦμαι, aor. ἐπεσιτισάμην (ἐπί, σιτίζω to feed, σῖτος corn) to take provisions, to provision one's army, 1, 4, 19; 1, 5, 4.

ἐπισιτισμός, ου, δ, (ἐπισιτίζομαι) the act of taking in provisions: ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἕνεκα, for the purpose of obtaining provisions, 1, 5, 9.

ἐπισκέπτομαι, seldom used in pres. and impf., but furnishes the f. etc. of ἐπισκοπέω.

ἐπισκοπέω, ὦ, (ἐπί, σκοπέω, wh. see) to inspect, 2, 3, 2; to ascertain by inspection, 3, 3, 18.

ἐπίσταμαι, impf. ἠπιστάμην, f. ἐπιστήσομαι, aor. ἠπιστήθην, to be acquainted with, to know, w. acc. 1, 3, 12; to know how, w. infin. 1, 3, 15; 3, 3, 16.

ἐπίστασις, εως, ἡ, (ἐφίστημι, ἐπί, ἵστημι) a stopping, a halt, 2, 4, 26.

ἐπιστατέω, ὦ, impf. ἐπεσάτουν, (ἐπί, ἴστημι) to act 'as commander, govern, command, 2, 3, 11.

ἐπιστήμη, ἡς, ἡ, (ἐπίσταμαι) acquaintance, knowledge, science.

ἐπιστήμων, ον, (ἐπίσταμαι) acquainted with, conversant with, w. gen.

ἐπιστολή, ἡς, ἡ, (ἐπιστέλλω, to send to) a letter, 1, 6, 3.

ἐπιστρατεία, ας, ἡ, (ἐπί, στρατεία fr. στρατεύω) an expedition against, 2, 4, 1.

ἐπιστρατεύω, -εύσω, (ἐπί, στρατεύω fr. στρατός, an army) to make an expedition against, to march against, 2, 3, 19.

ἐπισφάττω, -ξω, (ἐπί, σφάττω to slay) to slay upon, w. acc. and dat. 1, 8, 29;—mid. ἐαυτὸν ἐπι-, that he slew himself upon, sc. Cyrus, 1, 8, 29.

ἐπιτάττω, (ἐπί, τάττω, wh. see) to enjoin upon. Pass. impers. w. infin. φ ἐπέτακτο, on whom it had been enjoined, 2, 3, 6.

ἐπιτήδειος, ον, also α, ον, suitable, proper: ἐπιτήδαιοι, persons who are suitable, 1, 3, 18; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, things that are suitable or serviceable, provisions, 1, 5, 10 and often: τὸν ἐπιτήδειον, sc. παῖσθαι, the one who was suitable, i. e. the one who deserved it, 2, 3, 11.

ἐπιτίθημι, (ἐπί, τίθημι, wh. see) to place upon; mid. to place one's self upon, to fall upon, attack, 2, 4, 19 and 24; w. dat. 2, 4, 3 and 16.

ἐπιτρέπω, (ἐπί,τρέπω, wh. see) to turn (anything) to, commit to; to allow, suffer, permit, w. dat. and infin. 1, 2, 19;—mid. to commit one's self to, 1, 9, 8.

ἐπιτυγχάνω, (ἐπί, τυγχάνω, wh. see) to fall upon, light upon, find, w. dat. 1, 9, 25.

ἐπιφαίνομαι, (ἐπί, φαίνω, wh. see) to show one's self, appear, 3, 3, 6; w. dat. 2, 4, 24.

ἐπιφέρω, (ἐπί, φέρω, wh. see) to carry upon or against;—mid. to rush upon, 1, 9, 6.

ἐπιφορέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἐπί, φορέω = φέρω) to carry upon, 3, 5, 11.

ἐπίχαρις, ι, (ἐπί, χάρις) pleasing: τὸ ἐπίχαρι, that which is agreeable, the art of pleasing, 2, 6, 12.

ἐπιχειρέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἐπί, χεῖρ) to lay the hand upon, undertake, attempt, w. infin. 3, 4, 27.

ἐπιχωρέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἐπί, χωρέω) to move forward, advance: ἐπιχ. ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα, that the whole phalanx should advance, 1, 2, 17.

ἐποικοδομέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (ἐπί, οἰκοδομέω fr. οἶκος, a house, and δέμω, to build) to build upon, 3, 4, 11.

ἐπομαι, ἔψομαι, impf. εἰπόμην, aor. ἐσπόμην, to follow, w. dat. 1, 3, 6; 3, 1, 25; w. σὺν and dat. 1, 3, 6; to pursue, 1, 8, 19.

ἐπτά, seven.

ἐπτακόσιοι, αι, α, seven hundred.

Ἐπύαξα, ἡς, ἡ, Εργαζα, wife of Syennesis.

ἐρᾶω, ὦ, aor. pass. ἠράσθην, as act. to love, to desire earnestly, w. gen. 3, 1, 29.

ἐργάζομαι, ἐργάσομαι, εἰργασμαι, εἰργασάμην, aor. pass. εἰργάσθην, to work; of agricultural labor, to till, 2, 4, 22.

ἔργον, ου, τό, a work, deed, action: τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, those exercises pertaining to war, 1, 9, 5.

αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον, *the event itself*, 3, 3,  
12: τὸ ἔργον, *the execution*, 3, 5,  
12: ἔργω, *in fact, by deed, in action*,  
1, 9, 10; 3, 2, 32.

ἐρεῖν, see φημί.

ἐρημία, as, ἡ, (ἐρημος) *a desert, wilderness, solitude*.

ἐρημος, on, also η, on, *deserted, πό-  
λις ἐρήμη*, 1, 5, 4; *in a desert coun-  
try, σταθμούς ἐρήμους*, 1, 5, 1 and  
5; *unprotected, without defence*, 3,  
4, 40: ἄμαξαι ἐρ., *empty wagons*, 2,  
1, 6; w. gen. ὁμῶν ἐρημος ὢν, *being  
bereft of you*, 1, 3, 6.

ἐρίζω, -ίσω, (ἐρις, *strife*) *to strive*,  
w. dat. *to contend with*, 1, 2, 8.

ἐρμηνεύς, ἑως, δ, (Ἑρμῆς, *the god  
of eloquence*) *an interpreter*, 1, 8,  
12.

ἐρῶμαι, (prob. used in Att. only in  
aor. ἠρόμην and f. ἐρήσομαι, for a  
pres. cf. ἐρωτάω) *to ask, enquire*:  
ἐπελ... ἡρῶν, *but since you enquired  
thus*, 3, 1, 7: ἐρέσθαι, 2, 3, 20.

ἐρρωμένος, η, on, (pf. pass. particip.  
fr. ῥώννυμι, *to strengthen*) *strengthen-  
ed, increased*, 2, 6, 11; as adj.  
comp. ἐρρωμενέστερος, *stronger*, 3,  
1, 42.

ἐρύκω, -ξω, *to keep back, to avert*,  
3, 1, 25.

ἐρύμα, ατος, τό, (ἐρύομαι, *to de-  
fend*) *a means of defence, a fortifi-  
cation*: ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, *to serve as a  
fortification*, 1, 7, 16.

ἐρυμός, ἡ, ὄν, (ἐρύομαι, *to defend*)  
*strongly fortified* (either by nature  
or by art), 1, 2, 8: τὰ ἐρυμνά, *the  
defensible positions, the strong holds*,  
3, 2, 23.

ἐρχομαι, f. ἐλεύσομαι, comm. εἰμι,  
pf. ἐλήλυθα, aor. ἦλθον, *to go or*

*come*, παρὰ τινα, *into the presence of  
any one*, 1, 4, 3: ἐπὶ τινα, *against  
any one*, 2, 5, 39: πρὸς τινα, *to any  
one* (in a friendly manner), 1, 1, 10;  
(in a hostile manner), 1, 3, 20: εἰς  
λόγους, *to enter into a conference*, 2,  
5, 4: ἐπὶ πᾶν ἐρχεσθαι, *to use every  
means*, 3, 1, 18; w. acc. of cognate  
meaning, 2, 2, 10; 3, 1, 6.

ἐρῶ, see φημί.

ἐρως, ὠτος, δ, (akin to ἐρᾶω) *love*,  
*earnest desire*, 2, 5, 22.

ἐρωτάω, ᾶ, -ήσω, aor. ἠρόμην, *to  
ask, enquire*, 3, 1, 7.

ἐς, Ionic and Att. for εἰς.

ἐσθής, ἦτος, ἡ, (ἔννυμι, *to clothe*,  
cf. Lat. *vestis*) *clothing, apparel*, 3,  
1, 19.

ἐσθίω, (strengthened fr. ἔδω) f.  
ἔδομαι, pf. ἐδήδοκα, aor. ἐφαγον;  
pass. pf. ἐδέδεσμαι, aor. ἠδέσθην, *to  
eat*.

ἐσπέρα, as, ἡ, *evening, the west*, 3,  
5, 15.

ἔστε, (ἐς, ὅτε) adv. or conj., spoken  
of time or place; 1. *to, up to, until*.  
2. *so long as, so long*: τοσοῦτον  
χρόνον... ἔστε, *until*, 1, 9, 11.

ἔσχατος, η, on, *last, extreme*: πόλιν  
ἐσχάτην, *a frontier city*, 1, 2, 10 and  
19; cf. 1, 4, 1: τὰ ἔσχατα πάσχειν,  
*to suffer the most extreme penalty*,  
2, 5, 24; cf. 3, 1, 18.

ἐσχάτως, adv. (ἔσχατος) *extreme-  
ly*, 2, 6, 1.

ἔσωθεν, (ἔσω = εἰσω, θεν) *within*:  
τὸ ἔσωθεν, *the one within*, 1, 4, 4.

ἕτερος, α, on, *an other* (of two),  
*other*, 1, 4, 2: ὁ ἕτερος, *the other*,  
*the next*, 3, 4, 25.

ἐτι, adv. of time, *yet, still, longer*:  
μήποτε ἐτι, *never afterwards, never*

again, 1, 1, 4; with the comparative, intens.; w. a neg. no more, no longer.

ἔτοιμος, η, ον, also ος, ον, ready, willing, prepared, 1, 6, 3.

ἔτοιμως, adv. (ἔτοιμος), readily, at once, 2, 5, 2.

ἔτος, ἔτεος, -ους, τό, a year, τριάκοντα ἔτη, 2, 3, 12; cf. 2, 6, 20.

εὖ, adv. well, fortunately, 1, 7, 5 and 7.

εὐδαιμονέστερον, see εὐδαιμόνως.

εὐδαιμονία, ας, ἡ, (εὐδαίμων) happiness, prosperity.

εὐδαιμονίζω, -ίω, (εὐδαίμων) to account (any one) happy, w. acc. 2, 5, 7; w. acc. of pers. and gen. of thing for which he is accounted happy, 1, 7, 3.

εὐδαιμόνως, adv. (εὐδαίμων) happily; comp. εὐδαιμονέστερον, 3, 1, 41.

εὐδαίμων, ον, gen. ονος, (εὖ, well, δαίμων, a divinity, fate, fortune) happy, fortunate, prosperous, πόλιν εὐδαίμονα, 1, 2, 6;—of men, rich, wealthy, 1, 5, 7. Comp. εὐδαιμονέστερος, sup. εὐδαιμονέστατος, 1, 5, 7.

εὐδῆλος, ον, (εὖ, δῆλος) very plain, 3, 1, 2.

εὐειδής, ἐς, (εὖ, εἶδος, an appearance) fine looking; comp. εὐειδέστερος, sup. εὐειδέστατος, 2, 3, 3.

εὐελπίς, εὐέλπι, (εὖ, ἐλπίς, hope) hopeful, confident, 2, 1, 18.

εὐεπίθετος, ον, (εὖ, ἐπί, τίθημι) easy of attack: εὐεπίθετον ἦν τοῖς πολεμίοις, it was easy for the enemy to make an attack, 3, 4, 20.

εὐεργασία, ας, ἡ, (εὖ, ἔργον) good treatment, a benefit, 2, 5, 22.

εὐεργετέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (εὖ, ἔργον) to

confer benefits, to show a kindness, 2, 6, 17.

εὐεργέτης, ου, ὁ, (εὖ, ἔργον) a benefactor, 2, 5, 10.

εὐζῶνος, ον, (εὖ, ζώνη) well-girded and prepared for battle, light-armed, esp. of bowmen and slingers, 3, 3, 6.

εὐήθεια, ας, ἡ, (εὐήθης) goodness of disposition, simplicity; in a bad sense, stupidity, 1, 3, 16.

εὐήθης, ες, (εὖ, ἥθος, character) good-hearted; in a bad sense, stupid, silly, 1, 3, 16.

εὐθυμος, ον, (εὖ, θυμός) cheerful, courageous; comp. εὐθυμότερος, 3, 1, 41.

εὐθύς, adv. immediately, forthwith, 1, 8, 26: εὐθύς ἐπειδή, as soon as, 3, 1, 13; w. a particip. εὐθύς παῖδες ὄντες, immediately while children, even from childhood, 1, 9, 4; cf. 2, 6, 16.

εὐθύωρος, ον, (εὐθύς, ὥρα) straight forward; εὐθύωρον, adv. directly, immediately, 2, 2, 16.

εὐμεταχείριστος, ον, (εὖ, μετά, χεῖρ) easy to manage, 2, 6, 20.

εὐνοία, ας, ἡ, (εὐνους, εὖ, νόος) goodwill, friendship, 1, 8, 29.

εὐνοϊκῶς, adv. (εὐνους, fr. εὖ, νόος) in a friendly manner: εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ, that they might be friendly to him, 1, 1, 5.

εὐνοος, ον, contr. εὐνους, εὐνουν, (εὖ, νόος, νοῦς, mind) well-disposed, friendly, 1, 9, 20 and 30; w. dat. 2, 4, 16.

εὐοπλος, ον, (εὖ, ὅπλον) well-armed; comp. -ότερος, sup. -ότατος, 2, 3, 3.

εὐπετῶς, adv. (εὐπετής, easy; fr. εὖ, πίπτω) lit. falling well; hence,

without trouble, easily, 2, 5, 23; 3, 2, 10.

εὐπορος, ον, (εὖ, πόρος) *easy of passage, easy*, 2, 5, 9.

εὐπρακτος, ον, (εὖ, πράττω) *easily done, practicable*; comp. εὐπρακτότερος, 2, 3, 20.

εὕρημα, ατος, τό, (εὕρισκω) *a thing found, a windfall*: εὕρημα ἐποίησάμην, *I counted it a happy event*, 2, 3, 18.

εὕρισκω, εὕρησσω, εὕρηκα, εὕρον, εὕρημαι, εὕρέθην, mid. f. εὕρησομαι, aor. εὕρόμην, *to find, invent, discover*, 2, 3, 21; mid. *to find for one's self, to obtain or try to obtain*, 2, 1, 8.

εὕρος, εος, ους, τό, (εὕρύς) *width, breadth*, 1, 2, 5 and 23.

εὕρύς, εἷα, ὕ, *wide, spacious*.

εὕτακτος, ον, (εὖ, τάττω) *well arranged, orderly, well disciplined*, 2, 6, 14; comp. εὕτακτότερος, 3, 2, 30.

εὕταξία, ας, ἡ, (εὖ, τάττω) *good order, discipline*, 1, 5, 8.

εὕτολμος, ον, (εὖ, τολμάω) *of good courage, brave*, 1, 7, 4.

εὕτυχέω, ῶ, -ήσω, (εὕτυχής; εὖ, τύχη, fortune) *to be fortunate, to be successful*, 1, 4, 17.

εὕτυχία, ας, ἡ, (εὕτυχέω) *success, prosperity*.

Εὐφράτης, ου, ὁ, *Euphrates*.

εὕχη, ῆς, ἡ, (εὕχομαι) *a wish, a prayer*, 1, 9, 11.

εὕχομαι, εὕξομαι, ηὕξάμην or εὕξάμην, ηὕγμαι, *to wish, to pray*, 1, 4, 7 and 17; 1, 9, 11; *to vow*, 3, 2, 9.

εὐώνυμος, ον, (εὖ, ὄνομα, *Æolic for ὄνομα*) *having a good name, honored*; hence as a euphemism for *left, per-*

*laining to the left hand*, since ἀρίστερος, the proper word for *left*, was of evil omen; esp. w. κέρας expressed or understood, τὸ εὐώνυμον, *the left wing*, 1, 2, 15; 1, 8, 4 and 9 and 23.

ἔφεδρος, ου, ὁ, (ἐπί, ἔδρα, *a seat*) *one sitting by*, denotes properly the athlete, who, when the number of combatants was uneven, had no one matched against him, and who consequently waited to contend with fresh strength against the already exhausted victor. Hence, secondarily, *a dangerous antagonist*: τὸν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον, *the most formidable antagonist*, 2, 5, 10.

ἐφέπομαι, (ἐπί, ἔπομαι, wh. see) *to follow after*, 3, 4, 3; of an enemy, *to press upon, attack*, 2, 2, 12.

Ἐφεσος, ου, ἡ, *Ephesus*.

ἐφίστημι, (ἐπί, ἵστημι, wh. see) *to cause to stand upon, to cause to halt, to stop*, 1, 8, 15; 2, 4, 25; *to place over, to appoint*, 3, 4, 21; pass. *to be appointed*, 3, 3, 20; intrans. parts (see ἵστημι) *to stand upon, to stand still, to halt*, 1, 5, 7; 2, 4, 26; *to be built upon or in*, 1, 4, 4.

ἐφοδος, ου, ἡ, (ἐπί, ὁδός) *the act of going to, approach*, 2, 2, 18; *a way to or upon*, 3, 4, 41.

ἐφοράω, ῶ, (ἐπί, ὁράω, wh. see) *to look upon; to live to see, to experience*, τὰ χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδόντας, 3, 1, 13.

ἐφορος, ου, ὁ, (ἐφοράω) *an overseer, an ephor* (a Spartan magistrate), 2, 6, 3.

ἐχθιστος, η, ον, (sup. of ἐχθρός) *most hostile*; as subst. *a most bitter enemy*, 3, 2, 5.

ἔχθρα, as, ῥ, *enmity, hatred*, 2, 4, 12.

ἐχθρός, ᾧ, ὄν, *hostile*, 1, 3, 20.

ἐχθρός, οὔ, ὁ, a *personal enemy*, Lat. *inimicus*: (πολέμιος, an *enemy in war*, a *public enemy*, Lat. *hostis*): χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ῥ, a *most harsh personal enemy to him with whom he may be at war*, 1, 3, 12.

ἐχϋρός, ᾧ, ὄν, (ἐχω) *capable of being held*: ἐχυρὸν χωρίον, a *strong hold*, a *fortress*, 2, 5, 7.

ἔχω, impf. εἶχον, f. ἔξω or σχήσω, pf. ἔσχηκα, aor. ἔσχον (optat. σχολήν, imperat. σχές), pf. pass. or mid. ἔσχημαι, aor. pass. ἔσχεθην, aor. mid. ἐσχόμην, f. mid. ἔξομαι or σχήσομαι, to *have*, 1, 1, 2; to *occupy*, 1, 2, 15; to *hold, restrain, keep*, 3, 5, 11; to *have the ability, to be able*, 2, 1, 9; 2, 2, 11.—Intrans. to *have one's self, to exist, to be*, 1, 3, 9; 2, 2, 21; often w. an adv. εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν, to *be well disposed*, 1, 1, 5; cf. 1, 5, 16; 2, 1, 7: ἐμπείρως ἔχειν, to *be well acquainted*, 2, 6, 1;—mid. w. gen. to *hold to*; hence, to *be next*, Πρόξενος ἐχόμενος, *Proxenus being next*, 1, 8, 4; cf. 1, 8, 9;—pass. to *be held, ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἔχεσθαι, to be constrained by necessity*, 2, 5, 21.

ἐψητός, ῥ, ὄν, (ἔψω) *boiled*: ὕξος ἐψητόν, a *sour drink made by boiling*, 2, 3, 14.

ἔψω, f. ἐψήσω, to *boil, to seethe*.

ἔως, ἔω, ῥ, *early dawn*, 2, 4, 24: εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω, on the *following morning*, 1, 7, 1; the *east*, πρὸς ἔω, 3, 5, 15.

ἔως, adv. as *long as, while*, 1, 3, 11; *until*, 2, 1, 2.

## Z

Ζαπάρας, ου, or Ζάβατος, ου, ὁ, Ζαπάτας, or *Zabatus*; Syriac *Zaba* = *wolf*, hence the later Greek name Λύκος; now the greater *Zab*, 2, 5, 1.

ζᾶω, ᾧ, ζάεις ζῆς, ζάει ζῆ, impf. ζῶν, ζῆς, also ζῆν, f. ζήσω and ζήσομαι, aor. ζήσα, pf. ζήκα (less used than corresponding forms of βιόω), to *live*, 1, 5, 5; 3, 2, 25.

ζεύγνυμι, ζεύξω, ζεύξα, ζεύγμαι, ἐζεύχθην or ἐζύγην, to *join, to put together*: γέφυρα ἐζευγμένη, a *bridge constructed*, etc. 1, 2, 5; cf. 2, 4, 24: τὴν δ' ἐζευγμένην πλοίοις ἑπτὰ, the *other (canal) being spanned with (a bridge of) seven boats*, 2, 4, 13; to *fasten*, 3, 5, 10.

ζεύγος, ους, τό, (ζεύγνυμι) a *yoke of cattle, a team*, 3, 2, 27.

Ζεὺς, Διός, ὁ, *Zeus* (Lat. *Jupiter*), 3, 1, 12: Ζεὺς ξένιος, *Zeus, protector of the rights of hospitality*, 3, 2, 4: Ζεὺς σωτήρ, *Zeus, preserver*, 1, 8, 16; cf. 3, 2, 9.

ζηλωτός, ῥ, ὄν, (ζηλόω, to *envy*) to *be envied*, 1, 7, 4.

ζητέω, ᾧ, ἤσω, to *seek, seek for, ask for*, 2, 3, 2.

ζώνη, ης, ῥ, (ζώννυμι, to *bind*) a *girdle, belt*, 1, 4, 9; 1, 6, 10.

ζῶς, ῥ, ὄν, (ζᾶω) *living, alive*, 3, 4, 5.

## H

ῥ, conjunc. or, Lat. *aut*: ῥ ... ῥ, *either ... or*: εἰ ... ῥ, *whether ... or*: πότερα ... ῥ, *whether ... or*: sometimes in direct questions where it follows a more general question and suggests an answer thereto, 2,

4, 3; preceded by *πότερον* in a direct disjunctive question, 3, 2, 21.—After a comparative, *than*, 1, 2, 4 and 11; also after *ἄλλος*, *than*.

*ῆ*, adv. (distinguished fr. foregoing by the accent) has two principal uses: 1. In a question, where in Eng. the idea is denoted by the inflection of the voice, not by an interrog. word. 2. Intens. *truly, indeed*; w. *μήν*, *certainly, surely*, 2, 3, 26.

*ῆ*, relat. adv. (properly a dat. sing. fem. of *ὅς*, sc. *ὅδῳ*) in *what way, where*, 3, 4, 37; w. a superlat. and *δύναμαι*, *ῆ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα*, as *quickly as possible*, 1, 2, 4: *ῆ δυνατόν μάλιστα*, as *much as possible*, 1, 3, 15.

*ῆγαγον*, see *ἄγω*.

*ἡγεμών*, *ὄνος*, *ὁ*, (*ἡγέομαι*) a *leader, a guide*, 1, 3, 14; 2, 4, 10 and often; a *commander* (of an army), 1, 7, 12.

*ἡγέομαι*, *οὔμαι*, *-ήσομαι*, dep. mid. (*ἔγω*) *to lead, to guide, to conduct*, 2, 2, 8; 2, 4, 5; w. dat. 2, 2, 8; w. gen. 1, 7, 1; 1, 9, 31: *τὸ ἡγούμενον*, the *part* (of an army) *taking the lead, the van*, 2, 2, 4; *to act as commander, to issue orders*, 1, 8, 22; 3, 1, 26:—*to think* (Lat. *ducere*), w. acc. and infin. 1, 2, 4; cf. 3, 1, 25.

*ῆδέως*, adv. (*ῆδύς*) comp. *ῆδιον*, sup. *ῆδιστα*, *gladly, cheerfully*, 1, 2, 2; 1, 4, 9; 2, 5, 15: *ῆδιστ' ἀν ἀκούσαιμι*, *I should be extremely pleased to hear*, etc.

*ῆδη*, adv. (perh. *ῆ*, *δή*), *already, now, at once*, Lat. *jam*.

*ῆδιον*, *ῆδιστα*, see *ῆδέως*.

*ῆδομαι*, (*ῆδος*, *pleasure*) dep. pass. f. *ῆσθήσομαι*, aor. *ῆσθην*, *to be pleased*, 1, 2, 18; w. dat. *to be pleased with*, 1, 9, 26; 2, 6, 28.

*ῆδονή*, *ῆς*, *ῆ*, (*ῆδομαι*, *ῆδύς*) *pleasure, enjoyment; object of pleasure, gratification*, 2, 6, 6; *delicious flavor*, 2, 3, 16.

*ῆδύς*, *εἶα*, *ύ*, comp. *ῆδιων*, sup. *ῆδιστος*, *sweet, pleasant, delicious*, 1, 9, 25: *κρέα ῆδιστα*, *most delicious meat*, 1, 5, 4.

*ῆκιστα*, sup. adv. comp. *ῆττον*, in the *least degree, least of all*, 1, 9, 19.

*ῆκω*, *ῆξω*, comm. pf. in meaning, *am come, am here, have arrived* (cf. *σέχομαι*, *am gone*), the impf. *ῆκον* often as aor. 1, 2, 6; 2, 3, 17:—infin. as pres. *to come*, 2, 1, 3; 2, 2, 1:—*to come back, return*, 2, 1, 9 and 15, and often.

*Ἡλείος*, *ου*, *ὁ*, an *Ellean*, a native of Elis.

*ῆλεκτρον*, *ου*, *τό*, *electron, amber*, 2, 3, 15. It denotes also a metallic compound of four parts gold and one silver.

*ῆλίβατος*, *ον*, (*ῆλεός* *astray, βαλνω to go*) *precipitous*, 1, 4, 4. (It is chiefly poetic.)

*ῆλίθιος*, *α*, *ον*, (*ῆλός*, *crazy*) *silly, stupid*: *τὸ ῆλίθιον*, *stupidity*; *τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ῆλιθίῳ*, *the same thing with stupidity*, 2, 6, 22.

*ῆλικία*, *ας*, *ῆ*, (*ῆλιξ*) *age, time of life*, 1, 9, 6; 3, 1, 14 and 25.

*ῆλικιώτης*, *ου*, *ὁ*, (*ῆλιξ*) an *equal in age, a comrade*, 1, 9, 5.

*ῆλιξ*, *ικος*, *ὁ*, *ῆ*, adj. in the *prime of life*.

*ῆλιος*, *ου*, *ὁ*, the *sun*, w. *δύεσθαι*, 1, 10, 15; *ἀνίσχην*, 2, 1, 3; *δύνειν*, 2, 2, 3 and 13; *ἀνατέλλειν*, 2, 3, 1. *ῆλωκα*, cf. *ἄλίσκομαι*.

*ῆμελημένως*, adv. (fr. pf. pass.



particip. of ἀμελέω, to be careless) carelessly, 1, 7, 19.

ἡμέρα, as, ἡ, a day: τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, on this day, 1, 5, 16; ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, at break of day, 2, 1, 2.

ἡμέτερος, α, ον, (ἡμεῖς) our: τὰ ἡμέτερα, our affairs, 1, 3, 9.

ἡμι-, (ἡμισυ) often in comp. half, Lat. semi-.

ἡμιβρώτος, ον, (ἡμι- βρωτός, fr. βιβρώσκω, to eat) half-eaten, 1, 9, 26.

ἡμιδαρεικόν, οὔ, τό, (ἡμι- δαρεικός) a half daric, 1, 3, 21.

ἡμιδεής, ἐς, (ἡμι- δέω, to want) half full (strictly half empty), 1, 9, 25.

ἡμιόλιος, ον, (ἡμι- δλος) once and a half: ἡμιόλιον οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον, a half more than that which they formerly received, 1, 3, 21.

ἡμίονος, ον, δ, (ἡμι- ὄνος) a mule.

ἡμιωβόλιον, ον, τό, (ἡμι- ὀβολός) a half obolus.

ἡμισυς, εια, υ, half, 1, 8, 22: ἔρτων ἡμισυα, half loaves of bread (lit. halves of loaves, etc.), 1, 9, 26.

ἡν = ἔάν, if.

ἡνίκα, adv. when, comm. w. indic. 1, 8, 1 and 8 and 17; also w. subjunc. 3, 5, 18.

ἡνίοχος, ον, δ, (ἡνία reins, ἔχω to hold) one who holds the reins, a driver (of a chariot), 1, 8, 20.

ἡνπερ, (ἡν, πέρ) a strengthened form of ἡν, wh. see.

ῥῆπερ, (ῥ, πέρ) a strengthened form of ῥ, where, in the very place where, 2, 2, 21.

ἡρόμην, see ἔρομαι.

ἡσυχῇ or ἡσυχῇ, (ἡσυχος, quiet) quietly, 1, 8, 11.

ἡσυχία, as, ἡ, (ἡσυχος, quiet) rest, quiet: ἡσ- ἄγειν, to keep quiet, 3, 1, 14; καθ' ἡσυχίαν, quietly, undisturbed, 2, 3, 8.

ἡττώμαι, ὦμαι, (ἡττων) f. ἡττηθήσομαι, sometimes ἡττήσομαι, aor. ἡττήθην, to be weaker (than another, τινός), to be inferior to, w. gen. 2, 3, 23; often as pass. of νικάω, to be conquered, 1, 2, 9; 2, 4, 19; pres. as pf. 2, 4, 6; 3, 2, 17.

ἡττων, ον, irreg. comp. of κακός, sup. ἡκιστος, weaker, inferior:—adv. ἡττον, less, 2, 4, 2; sup. ἡκιστα, least, least of all, 1, 9, 19.

Θ

θάλαττα, ης, ἡ, the sea: ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν, from sea to sea, 1, 2, 22; κατὰ θάλατταν, by sea.

θάλπος, εος, ους, τό, warmth, heat; often plur. θάλαπη φέρειν, to bear heat, 3, 1, 23.

θάνατος, ον, δ, (θνήσκω, θανεῖν) death: ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, for death, to signify (his) death, 1, 6, 10.

θανατώω, ὦ, -ώσω, (θάνατος) to condemn to death; pass. to be, etc. 2, 6, 4.

θαρραλέος, α, ον, (θάρρος) bold, confident, courageous, 3, 2, 16. Comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος.

θαρραλέως, adv. (θαρραλέος) courageously, confidently, 1, 9, 19: θαρραλέως ἔχειν, to be courageous, 2, 6, 14.

θαρρέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (θάρρος) to be confident, to be of good courage, 1, 3, 8; 3, 2, 20.

θάρρος, εος, ους, τό, courage.

θαρρύνω, (θάρρος) aor. ἐθάρρυνα, to encourage, 1, 7, 2.

θαρύπας, ον, δ, Tharypas.

ῥᾶπτον, adv. comp. of ταχύ and ταχέως, sup. τάχιστα, *more quickly, sooner*, 1, 5, 8 and 9.

ῥαυμάζω, ῥαυμάσομαι, rare ῥαυμάσω, ῥαυμάσασα, τεθαύμακα, *to wonder at*, w. acc. 2, 5, 33; *to wonder, to be surprised*, ὅτι, 1, 10, 16; 2, 1, 2; εἰ, 3, 2, 35; πότερα ... ἤ, 2, 1, 10; τίς, w. indic. 1, 8, 16.

ῥαυμάσιος, α, ον, (ῥαυμάζω) *wonderful, admirable*, 3, 2, 15; (ironically), 3, 1, 27. Comp. ὥτερος, sup. ὥτατος.

ῥαυμαστός, ἡ, ὄν, (ῥαυμάζω) *wonderful, strange*, 1, 9, 24.

Θᾶψακος, ου, ἡ, Thapsacus; also Θᾶψακηνοί, ὧν, οἱ, *the inhabitants of Thapsacus*.

ῥεδομαι, ὦμαι, ῥεδοσομαι, ῥεθεασμένην, τεθέσμαι, (akin to ῥέα, *a sight*) *to behold, to witness*, 1, 5, 8; 1, 9, 4; *to gaze, to look on* (with surprise), 3, 5, 13.

ῥεῖος, εἶα, εἶον, (ῥεός) *divine*; ῥεῖον, *a divine token, a sign from the gods*, 1, 4, 18.

ῥέλω, f. ῥελήσω, pf. τεθέληκα, *a shortened form of ῥέθελω, to be willing*, 3, 2, 16.

ῥεν, inseparable particle, meaning *from*.

ῥεός, οὔ, δ or ἡ, *a god or goddess*, 3, 1, 5; 3, 2, 12: σύν τοῖς ῥεοῖς, *with the help of the gods*, 3, 1, 23 and 42.

ῥεοσέβεια, as, ἡ, (ῥεός, σέβομαι, *to revere*) *piety*, 2, 6, 26.

ῥεραπεύω, (ῥεράπων) *to take care of, provide for*, 1, 9, 20; *pass. to be cared for, to be courted*, 2, 6, 27.

ῥεράπων, οντος, δ, *an attendant*, 1, 8, 28.

ῥερίζω, (ῥέρος, *summer*) f. -ίσω or -ιῶ, *to pass the summer*, 3, 5, 15.

Θετταλία, as, ἡ, *Thessaly*.

Θεσσαλός, οὔ, δ, *a Thessalian*.

ῥέω, f. ῥεύσομαι, (for other tenses see τρέχω) *to run*, 2, 2, 14.

ῥεωρέω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (ῥεωρός, *an observer*) *to observe, to view, to witness*, 1, 2, 10; *to review* (in a military sense) 1, 2, 16; *intrans. to be a spectator*.

Θῆβαι, ὧν, αἱ, *Thebes*.

Θηβαῖος, ου, δ, *a Theban*.

ῥηράω, ὦ, f. -άσω or -άσομαι, (ῥήρα *a chase, ῥήρ an animal*) *to hunt*, ῥηρῶεν, 1, 5, 2.

ῥηρίον, ου, τό, (ῥήρ, *akin to ῥέω to run*) in form dimin. but not in meaning, *a wild animal, game*, 1, 2, 7.

ῥησαυρός, οὔ, δ, *a treasure, or a place for treasure*.

ῥηήσκω, θανούμαι, τέθνηκα, ἔθανον, (ἀποθνήσκω is more comm.) *to die, to be slain* (as a pass. of ἀποκτείνω) 2, 1, 3; 2, 5, 38: τεθνηκότα, 1, 6, 11.

ῥηητός, ἡ, ὄν, (ῥηήσκω) *mortal, subject to death*, 3, 1, 23.

ῥυμβος, ου, δ, *noise, uproar, tumult*, 2, 2, 19; *a confused sound* (occasioned by human voices), 1, 8, 16.

Θρᾶξ, Θρακός, δ, *a Thracian*, 1, 1, 9; as adj. *Thracian*, 1, 2, 9.

ῥρόνος, ου, δ, *a throne*, 2, 1, 4.

ῥυγᾶτηρ, τρός, ἡ, *a daughter*.

Θύμβριον, ου, τό, *Thymbrium*.

θυμός, οὔ, δ, *soul, spirit, heart*; feelings of the soul, *desire, anger*, etc.

θυμόομαι, οὔμαι, (θυμός) ὠσομαι, τεθύμωμαι, *to be angry*, w. dat. 2, 5, 13.

θύρα, as, ἡ, a door : ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις, at the doors of the king, i. e. at court, 1, 9, 3; ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας, going to his doors, 1, 2, 11; cf. 2, 1, 8; ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις, at his doors (denoting close proximity), 2, 4, 4, etc.

θύσια, as, ἡ, (θύω) a sacrifice.

θύω, θύσω, τέθυκα, ἔθυσα, to sacrifice, 3, 2, 9; to celebrate with sacrifices, τὰ Λύκαια, 1, 2, 10; w. dat. of pers. to whom, 3, 1, 6; mid. to sacrifice (for one's own benefit), to sacrifice (in order to consult the omens), 1, 7, 18 and often.

θωρακίζω, -ίσω, (θώραξ) to arm (a person) with a breastplate; mid. to put on (sc. one's own body) a breastplate, 2, 2, 14; pass. to be armed with breastplate, to wear a breastplate, 2, 5, 35; 3, 4, 35.

θώραξ, ἄκος, δ, a breastplate, 1, 8, 6 and 26; ἱππικός, a cavalry breastplate, 3, 4, 48.

# I

ἰδομαι, ὤμαι, ἰδομαι, ἰασμην, to heal; of a wound, to dress, 1, 8, 26.

ἱατρός, οὐ, δ, (ἰδομαι) a physician, a surgeon, 1, 8, 26; 3, 4, 30.

ἰδεῖν, see ὁρᾶω.

ἴδιος, ἴα, ον, also ος, ον, one's own, private : τὸ ἴδιον as subst. εἰς τὸ ἴδιον, for one's private use, 1, 3, 3; ἰδίᾳ, by one's self, privately.

ἰδιότης, ἦτος, ἡ, (ἴδιος) peculiarity, 2, 3, 16.

ἰδιώτης, ον, δ, (ἴδιος) a private person (in opp. to one holding office); a common soldier, a private (in opp. to a commander), 1, 3, 11; 3, 2, 32.

ἰδρώω, ὤ, -ώσω, (ἰδρός or ἰδρός, perspiration) to perspire, to sweat, 1, 8, 1.

ἰδών, see ὁρᾶω.

ἱερεῖον, ον, τό, (ἱερός) a victim for sacrifice.

ἱερόν, οὐ, τό, (ἱερός) anything sacred; a temple, a victim for sacrifice : τὰ ἱερά, the entrails of a victim, 2, 1, 9; the omens from the entrails of a victim, 1, 8, 15.

ἱερός, δ, ὄν, sacred.

ἱερώνυμος, ον, δ, (ἱερός, ὄνυμα Ἄολ. for ὄνομα) Hieronymus.

ἵημι, ἤσω, pf. εἶκα, aor. ἤκα, (in other moods and in dual and plur. aor. 2d ἤτον, κτέ.) pf. pass. or mid. εἶμαι, aor. pass. εἶην, aor. mid. εἶμην, to throw, send, hurl, 1, 5, 12; 3, 4, 17;—mid. to cast one's self, to hasten : ἔεντο κατὰ w. gen. they hastened down, etc. 1, 5, 8; ἔετο ἐπὶ w. acc. he rushed against, etc. 1, 8, 26; ἔεσθαι ἐπὶ w. acc. to hasten towards, 3, 4, 41.

ἵθι, imperat. of εἶμι.

ἱκανός, ἡ, ὄν, (ἱκάνω, to arrive at) enough, sufficient, adequate, competent, 1, 9, 20; authorized, 2, 3, 4; w. infin. ἱκανοὶ φυλάττειν, sufficient to, etc. 1, 2, 1; able, w. infin. 1, 3, 6; cf. 2, 6, 8 and 16; empowered, 2, 3, 4. Comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος.

ἱκανῶς, adv. (ἱκανός) sufficiently.

ἱκόνιον, ον, τό, Iconium, the chief city of Lycaonia.

ἱλεως, ον, propitious.

ἱλη, ης, ἡ, a company; esp. a company of horse : κατ' ἱλας, in companies of horse, 1, 2, 16.

ἱμάτιον, ον, τό, a garment; prop-

erly the outer garment, the inner being called χιτῶν.

ἵνα, conj. *that, in order that*; w. the subjunc. (a) after the pres. 2, 2, 12; (b) after the fut. 1, 3, 15; (c) after the imperf. or aor. 2, 5, 36; 1, 4, 18;—w. the optat. after the imperf. or aor. 2, 3, 13 and 21; 1, 10, 18.

ἵππαρχος, ου, ὁ, (ἵππος, ἔρχω) *a commander of the horse.*

ἵππασία, ας, ἡ, (ἵππάζομαι, *to drive a horse*) riding, 2, 5, 33.

ἵππεύς, ἑως, ὁ, (ἵππος) *a horseman*: τοὺς ἵππείας, 1, 5, 13.

ἵππικός, ἡ, ὁ, (ἵππος) *pertaining to a horse or to a horseman*: δύναμις ἵππική, *cavalry*, 1, 3, 12.

ἵπποδρόμος, ου, ὁ, (ἵππος, δρόμος) *a race, or race-course*: *a race-course for horses, a hippodrome*, 1, 8, 20.

ἵππος, ου, ὁ, *a horse*: ἐφ' ἵππου θηρεύειν, *to hunt on horseback*, 1, 2, 7; ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχεῖσθαι or ἔχειν, *to ride on horseback*, 3, 4, 47 and 49.

Ἰσθμός, ου, ὁ, *the Isthmus*; esp. *the isthmus of Corinth*, 2, 6, 3.

ἰσόπλευρος, ον, (ἴσος, πλευρά) *equilateral*, 3, 4, 19.

ἴσος, η, ον, *equal, like*: ἐν ἴσῳ, *in an even line*, 1, 8, 11; ἐξ ἴσου εἶναι, *to be on an equality*, 3, 4, 47; ἴσον κρατεῖν, *to rule alike or equally*, 2, 5, 7.

Ἰσσοί, ὦν, οἱ, Issi (comm. called Issus), 1, 2, 24.

ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστηκα, ἔστησα, ἔστην, fut. perf. ἑστήξω, perf. pass. or mid. ἑσταίμαι, aor. pass. ἑστάθην, aor. mid. ἑστησάμην, *to cause to stand, to place*: στήσας τὸ ἄρμα, *having caused his chariot to halt*,

1, 2, 17; cf. 1, 10, 14;—but in the act. the perf., pluperf., 2d aor. and fut. perf. are intrans. *to stand*; also the perf. and pluperf. are in meaning pres. and imperf.: ἑστώς, *standing*, 1, 3, 2; ἑστάσαν (syncop. pluperf. 3d plur.) *they used to stand*, 1, 5, 2; cf. 1, 5, 13; ἑστησαν (2d aor.) *they stood*, 1, 8, 5.—Mid. *to place one's self, to stand*, 1, 10, 1; aor. *to place or set up* (for one's self).

ἱστῖον, (τ) ου, τό, (ἱστός, *a mast*, fr. ἵστημι) *a sail*, 1, 5, 3.

ἰσχυρός, ὁ, ὁ, (ἰσχύς, *strength*) *strong, powerful*, 1, 5, 9; 2, 5, 22.

ἰσχυρῶς, adv. (ἰσχυρός) *strongly, exceedingly, violently*. Comp. ἰσχυρότερον, *more vigorously*, 3, 2, 19.

ἰσχύς, ὅς, ἡ, (root ἵς, Lat. vis) *strength, military force*, 1, 8, 22.

ἴσως, adv. (ἴσος, *like*) *perhaps*, 2, 4, 4.

ἰτέος, verb. adj. fr. εἶμι.

ἰχθύς, ὅς, ὁ, *a fish*.

ἵχνιον, ου, τό, (in form, dimin. of ἵχνος) *a track*, 1, 6, 1.

ἵχνος, εος, οὖς, τό, *a track*, 1, 7, 17.

Ἰωνία, ας, ἡ, *Ionian*, on the western coast of Asia Minor.

Ἰωνικός, ἡ, ὁ, *belonging to Ionian*, *Ionian*, 1, 1, 6.

## K

καθέζομαι, (κατά, ἕζομαι) f. καθεδούμαι, impf. ἐκαθεζόμην or καθεζόμην, *to sit down, to seat one's self*, 3, 1, 33; *to halt*, 1, 5, 9.

καθεύδω, (κατά, εὐδω) f. καθευδήσω, impf. ἐκάθευδον, *καθηύδον* or καθεύδον, *to sleep*, 1, 3, 11.

καθηδυναθῆω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (κατά,

ἡδύς, πάθος or παθεῖν, aor. 2d of πᾶσχω) to squander, to waste in pleasures, 1, 3, 3.

καθῆκω, (κατά, ἔκω) f. -ήξω, to come or go down, to extend down, eis w. acc. 1, 4, 4; ἀπὸ w. gen. 3, 4, 24.—Impers. it belongs to, w. dat. οἷς καθήκει, to whom it belongs, whose duty it is, 1, 9, 7.

κάθημαι, impf. ἐκαθήμην or καθήμην, (κατά, ἔμαι) to sit, to be encamped 1, 3, 12.

καθίζω, (κατά, ἵζω) f. καθιώ, aor. ἐκάθισα and καθίσα, to cause to sit down, to seat, 2, 1, 4; to place, 3, 5, 17.

καθίστημι, (κατά, ἵστημι, wh. see) to place down, to settle, to arrange, 1, 10, 10; 2, 3, 3; to station, 3, 2, 1; to appoint, 3, 1, 39; 3, 2, 5; to conduct, to bring, 1, 4, 13.—In the intrans. parts (see ἵστημι) to become settled, established; in the mid. (except the aor.) intrans. κατέστη eis τὴν βασιλείαν, became established in the kingdom, 1, 1, 3: ὡς καταστησόμενων τούτων, on the ground that these things would be settled, 1, 3, 8; καθίστασθαι eis τὴν τάξιν, to take one's place in his rank 1, 8, 3; eis τὴν μάχην καθ. to enter into the battle, 1, 8, 6.

καθοράω, ᾧ, (κατά, ὁράω, wh. see) to look down upon; to descry, 1, 8, 26; to observe, 1, 10, 14.

καί, copulative conjunc. has three principal renderings, and, also, even; used to connect either single words or clauses. See H. 855. ff. K. § 321. L. G. Καίναί, ᾧν, ai, Cænæ, or Kænæ, 2, 4, 28.

καίπερ, (καί, πέρ) although, 1, 6, 10. καιρός, ου, ὁ, the proper measure;

comm. of time, a fitting time, an opportunity, 3, 1; 36: ἐν τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ, on this occasion, 1, 7, 9; 1, 8, 14; a crisis, a critical situation, 3, 1, 44: ἐν καιρῷ, opportunely, seasonably, 3, 1, 39.

καίτοι, (καί, τοί) and indeed, 1, 4, 8; although.

καίω, Att. κάω, f. καύσω, aor. ἔκαυσα, pf. κέκαυκα, pf. pass. or mid. κέκαυμαι, aor. pass. ἐκαύθην, to burn, 1, 6, 1 and 2.

κακόνοος, ου, contr. -ους, -ουν, (κακός, νοῦς) ill-disposed, evil-minded, 2, 5, 16 and 27.

κακός, ἡ, ὁ, comp. κακίων, sup. κάκιωτος, bad, base, evil: κακίους περὶ w. acc. baser towards, etc. 1, 4, 8; cowardly (opp. to ἀγαθός, brave); μὴ κακίους εἶναι, that we be not more cowardly, i. e. less daring, less courageous, or perh. as Krüg., less faithful, 1, 3, 18; κακῶ εἶναι, to be cowardly, 3, 2, 31; τοὺς κακοὺς, the cowardly, 1, 9, 15; cf. 2, 6, 30.

κακοῦργος, ου, ὁ, (κακός, ἔργον) an evil-doer, a knave, 1, 9, 13.

κακῶς, adv. (κακός) badly, ill: κακῶς τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων, our affairs being in a bad condition, 1, 5, 16; κακῶς ἀποθνήσκειν, to die miserably, 3, 1, 43; κακῶς πάσχειν, to suffer severely, 3, 3, 12; κακῶς ποιεῖν w. acc. of pers. to do harm to, to treat ill, 1, 4, 8.

κάλαμος, ου, ὁ, a reed, 1, 5, 1.

καλέω, ᾧ, f. καλέσω or καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, ἐκέκληκα, ἐκέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην, to call, to summon, 1, 2, 2; 1, 7, 18;—pass. to be called, named, 1, 2, 8 and 13;—mid. to summon (to one's self), 3, 3, 1.

καλλιερῆω, ὦ, ἦσα, (καλός, ἱερόν)  
to obtain favorable omens in a sacri-  
fice.—Mid. to obtain (for one's self)  
favorable omens, 3, 4, 22.

κάλλος, οὖς, τό, beauty.

καλλωπισμός, οὖ, δ, (καλλωπίζω,  
to make the face beautiful, to adorn  
one's self; fr. καλός, ὥψ the face)  
personal adorning, 1, 9, 23.

καλός, ἡ, ὄν, comp. κάλλιον, sup.  
κάλλιστος, beautiful, 1, 2, 22 and  
often: τὰ κάλλιστα, the most beauti-  
ful (equipments), 3, 2, 7; τὸ καλόν,  
honorable conduct, honor, 2, 6, 18;  
καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός, honorable and  
good, 2, 6, 19 and 20; κάλλιστόν τε  
καὶ ἄριστον, most honorable and best,  
2, 1, 9; favorable, propitious, καλὰ  
ἱερά, 2, 2, 3.

καλῶς, adv. (καλός) comp. κάλλιον,  
sup. κάλλιστα, beautifully, well, no-  
bly, honorably, favorably: καλῶς  
ἔχειν, to be well; καλῶς πράττειν, to  
fare well, to be fortunate.

κάμνω, καμῶμαι, κέκμηκα, ἔκῃμον,  
to be weary, fatigued, 3, 4, 47; to be  
faint, exhausted; to be ill.

κἄν = καὶ ἔν (= ἐάν) and if, 1, 8,  
12.

κάνδυσ, οὖς, δ, an outer garment,  
over-coat (a Persian and Median gar-  
ment with sleeves), 1, 5, 8.

κᾶπειτα = καὶ ἔπειτα.

καπηλεῖον, οὖς, τό, (κάπηλος, a  
huckster) an inn: οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα  
ἔχοντες, the inn-keepers, 1, 2, 24.

καπίθη, ἡς, ἡ, a capithe (a Persian  
measure containing two χοίνικες), 1,  
5, 6.

καπνός, οὖ, δ, smoke.

Καππαδοκία, ας, ἡ, Cappadocia.

κάπρος, οὖς, δ, a wild boar, 2, 2, 9.

καρδία, ας, ἡ, the heart, 2, 5, 23.

Καρδοῦχοι, ὡν, οἱ, Carduchi, or  
Carduchians.

καρπός, οὖ, δ, fruit, corn.

καρπῶω, ὦ, ὠσω, (καρπός) to bear  
fruit.—Mid. to gather the fruits  
from, w. acc. 3, 2, 23.

Κάρσος, οὖς, δ, Carsus, a river of  
Cilicia.

κάρφη, ἡς, ἡ, hay, 1, 5, 10.

Καστωλός, οὖς, δ, Castolus: Καστω-  
λοῦ πεδίον, the plain of Castolus, 1,  
1, 2.

κατὰ, prep. w. gen. or acc. down,  
opp. to ἀνά: (1) w. gen. 1, 5, 8;  
(2) w. acc. of place, down along, or  
simply along, 3, 4, 30; also near, 1,  
10, 7; to (after a verb of motion),  
1, 10, 6; against, 1, 8, 12; against  
or upon, 1, 8, 26; after, in pursuit  
of, 3, 5, 2: κατὰ γῆν, κτέ., by land,  
etc. 1, 1, 7; opposite to, over against,  
1, 5, 10; 1, 8, 21; cf. 1, 10, 5;—of  
time, at, during; of other relations,  
according to, 2, 2, 8; in, καθ' ἡσυχίαν,  
in quiet, quietly, 2, 3, 8: τὸ  
κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, so far as this man  
is concerned, 1, 6, 9; distributive,  
κατὰ ἔθνη, nation by nation, 1, 8, 9;  
κατὰ μῆνα, monthly, 1, 9, 17; cf. 3,  
2, 12; κατὰ ἵλας, κτέ., in companies  
of horse, etc. 1, 2, 16. In compos.  
down, against; and intens.

καταβαίνω, (κατὰ, βαίνω, wh. see)  
to go down (from the interior towards  
the coast, opp. to ἀναβαίνω), 2, 5, 22.

κατάβασις, εὖς, ἡ, (καταβαίνω) the  
act of going down, the descent, 3, 4,  
37 and 9; opp. to ἀνάβασις.

καταγγέλλω, (κατὰ, ἀγγέλλω, wh.  
see) to give information of (anything,  
acc.) against (a person, gen.), 2, 5, 38.

καταγελᾶω, ὦ, (κατά, γελᾶω, -δω and -δομαι) *to laugh at, to deride*, w. gen. 2, 6, 23; *to despise*, 2, 6, 30; *to mock, to go unpunished*, 1, 9, 13; 2, 4, 4.

κατάγω, (κατά, ἔγω, wh. see) *to lead down; to restore* (to one's native land), 1, 1, 7; 1, 2, 2.—Mid. *to march down, to arrive* (at), ἐπὶ w. acc. 3, 4, 36.

καταδαπανᾶω, ὦ, -ήσω, (κατά, δαπανᾶω) *to expend, to consume*, 2, 2, 11.

καταδύω, (κατά, δύω, see δύνω) pf. plupf. and 2d aor. act. intrans., other tenses of the act. causative; *to cause to enter into, to sink*, w. acc. 1, 3, 17;—mid. and intrans. tenses of the act. *to sink*, 3, 5, 11.

καταθεδομαι, ὦμαι, (κατά, θεδομαι, -δομαι) *to look down upon, to take a view*, 1, 8, 14.

καταθύω, (κατά, θύω, θύσω) *to sacrifice*, 3, 2, 12.

καταισχύνω, (κατά, αἰσχύνω, f. αἰσχυνῶ) *to disgrace*, w. acc. 3, 1, 30; *to be unworthy of*, 3, 2, 14.

κατακαίνω = κατακτείνω, (κατά, καίνω, κανῶ, κέκονα, ἐκᾶνον) *to slay*, κατέκᾶνον, 1, 6, 2; 1, 9, 6.

κατακαίω, (κατά, καίω, wh. see) *to burn down*, 1, 4, 10; *to consume by burning, to burn up*, 3, 3, 1.

κατάκειμαι, (κατά, κείμαι, wh. see) *to lie down, to lie still*, 3, 1, 13, ff.

κατακηρύττω, (κατά, κηρύττω, wh. see) *to proclaim, to enjoin*, 2, 2, 20.

κατακλείω, (κατά, κλείω, κλείσω, ἐκκλεις, κέκλεικα, κέκλεισμαι and κέκλειμαι, ἐκκλείσθην) *to shut up, to enclose*, 3, 4, 26; pass. 3, 3, 7.

κατακόπτω, (κατά, κόπτω, wh. see)

*to chop down, to cut in pieces*, 1, 8, 24; 1, 10, 9; pass. *to be cut down or cut in pieces*, κατακοπῆναι, 1, 2, 25; κατακεκόψεσθαι, 1, 5, 16.

κατακτείνω, (κατά, κτείνω, wh. see) *to kill, to slay*, 2, 5, 10.

καταλαμβάνω, (κατά, λαμβάνω, wh. see) *to seize upon, to occupy*, 1, 3, 14; 1, 10, 16; *to light upon, to find*, 3, 1, 8; w. acc. and particip. 1, 10, 18; *to overtake*, 2, 2, 12; 3, 3, 8 and 15; pass. *to be taken, caught*, 1, 8, 20; 3, 5, 2.

καταλέγω, (κατά, λέγω, wh. see) *to speak of, to recount*, 2, 6, 27: εὐεργεσίαν κατέλεγεν ... ὅτι, *he recounted it as a benefit, that, etc.*

καταλείπω, (κατά, λείπω, wh. see) *to leave, leave behind*, 3, 5, 5; pass. *to be left, abandoned, left behind*, 3, 1, 2; 3, 3, 19.

καταλεύω, (κατά, λείω, fr. λεύς, Doric for λᾶας, a stone) *to stone to death*.—Pass. aor. κατελεύσθην, *to be stoned to death*, 1, 5, 14; καταλευσθῆναι.

καταλλάττω, (κατά, ἀλλάττω, ἀλλάξω, ἡλλαξα, ἡλλαχα, ἡλλαγμαί, ἡλλάχθην comm. in Att. ἡλλάγην) *to change, to change* (a person) *from enmity to friendship, to reconcile*; pass. *to be reconciled*, καταλλαγείς, 1, 6, 1.

καταλύω, (κατά, λύω, wh. see) *to dissolve, to abolish*: καταλύσαι πρὸς w. acc. *to come to an agreement with*, 1, 1, 10; sc. τὴν πορείαν, *to put an end to the march, to halt*, 1, 8, 1; 1, 10, 19.

καταμανθάνω, (κατά, μανθάνω, wh. see) *to learn, learn thoroughly*, w. acc. 1, 9, 3; *to become acquainted*

with, 2, 3, 11; to reflect upon, consider, 3, 1, 44.

κατανόω: see Addenda.

καταντιπέρας, (κατά, ἀντί, πέρας a limit) opposite, w. gen. 1, 1, 9.

καταπέμνω, (κατά, πέμνω, wh. see) to send down (from the interior to the sea-coast), 1, 9, 7.

καταπετρόω, ὦ, f. -ώσω, (κατά, πέτροω, πέτρος a stone) to stone to death; pass. to be stoned to death, 1, 3, 2.

καταπηδάω, ὦ, f. -ήσω, (κατά, πηδάω) to leap down, 1, 8, 3.

καταπίπτω, (κατά, πίπτω, wh. see) to fall down, to fall off (from a horse), 3, 2, 19.

καταπράττω, (κατά, πράττω, wh. see) to accomplish: εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν, if he should successfully accomplish, 1, 2, 2.

κατασκέπτομαι, (κατά, σκέπτομαι, wh. see) to look carefully at, to inspect, w. acc. 1, 5, 12.

κατασκευάζω, (κατά, σκευάζω, wh. see) to prepare, put in order, regulate, 1, 9, 19; to equip, 3, 3, 19.

κατασκηνέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (κατά, σκηνέω, σκηνή) to encamp, 3, 4, 32 and 33.

κατασκηνός, ὦ, -ώσω, (κατά, σκηνός, σκηνή) to encamp, 2, 2, 16.

κατασπάω, (κατά, σπάω, σπάω, pf. and aor. pass. assume σ) to draw down. Pass. 1, 9, 6, κατεσπασθη, was drawn down.

καταστρατοπεδεύω, -εύσω, (κατά, στρατοπεδεύω, στρατόπεδον) to place in camp; mid. to place one's self in camp, to encamp, 3, 4, 18.

καταστρέφω, (κατά, στρέφω, wh. see) to turn down; mid. to subdue, subjugate, 1, 9, 14.

κατατείνω, (κατά, τείνω, wh. see) to stretch (anything) tight, to exert one's self, to persist, 2, 5, 30.

κατατέμνω, (κατά, τέμνω, wh. see) to cut down and along; of ditches, to dig; in the pass. κατετέμνητο, had been dug, 2, 4, 13.

κατατίθημι, (κατά, τίθημι, wh. see) to place down; mid. to place down (for one's self): οὐκ ... κατεθέμην ἐμοί, I did not hoard (them, i. e. the daries) up for my own private use, 1, 3, 3; παρ' οἷς τὴν φιλίαν ... κατεθέμεθα, with whom, having concluded a friendship, we have laid it up (for safe keeping), 2, 5, 8.

κατατιτρώσκω, (κατά, τιτρώσκω, wh. see) to wound severely, 3, 4, 26.

καταφανής, ἐς, (κατά, φαίνομαι to appear) clearly seen, in plain sight, 1, 8, 8; 2, 3, 3.

καταφεύγω, (κατά, φεύγω, wh. see) to flee for refuge, 1, 5, 13.

καταφρονέω, ὦ, (κατά, φρονέω, φρήν mind) to despise, 3, 4, 2.

κατεῖδον, see καθοράω.

κατεργάζομαι, (κατά, ἐργάζομαι, wh. see) to accomplish, achieve, 1, 9, 20; 2, 6, 22.

κατέχω, (κατά, ἔχω, wh. see) to hold down, hold back, restrain, 3, 1, 20: to compel; pass. 2, 6, 13, κατεχόμενοι, being compelled.

κατιδεῖν, 2d aor. infin., see καθοράω.

κάτω, adv. (κατά) opp. to ἄνω, w. a verb of motion downwards; rest, down, below: οἱ κάτω, those who dwell on the coast.

καῦμα, ατος, τό, (καίω) heat, 1, 7, 6.

Καύστρου πεδίον, the plain of Caýstrus, or Caýstru-pedium, 1, 2, 11.



κάω, see καίω.

κέγχρος, ου, δ or ἡ, *millet*, 1, 2, 22.

κεῖμαι, κείσομαι, ἐκείμην, *to lie, to be laid*, 2, 4, 12; *to lie (dead)*, 1, 8, 27.

Κελαιναί, ὦν, αἱ, *Celænae*, 1, 2, 7, ff.

κελεύω, -εύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην, *to order*, w. acc. and infin. 1, 5, 8 and 13; *to bid, exhort, tell*, 1, 9, 27; *to urge, advise*, 1, 4, 14.

κενός, ἡ, ὄν, *empty, vacant*, 3, 4, 20; w. gen. *without*, 1, 8, 20; *idle, unfounded*, φόβος, 2, 2, 21.

κεντέω, ὦ, -ήσω (akin to κέντρον, *a sting*) *to goad, to torture*; pass. 3, 1, 29.

κεράμινος, η, ον, (κέραμος, *clay*) *of or pertaining to potter's ware*: πλίνθοις κεραμίνας, *of burnt bricks, or of potter's bricks*, 3, 4, 7.

Κεραμῶν ἀγορά, ἡ, *Ceramion-agōra*, or, *the market of the Ceramians*, 1, 2, 10.

κεράννυμι, κεράσω, Att. κερῶ, ἐκέρασας, κέρακα, κέραμαι, ἐκράθην or ἐκεράσθην, *to mix, mingle*; κέρσας, 1, 2, 13.

κέρας, κέρατος, and κέρως, τό, *a horn, a trumpet*, 2, 2, 4; *the wing of an army*, 1, 8, 4 and often.

κερδαίνω, κερδᾶνῶ, ἐκέρδᾶνα, κεκέρδηκα, (κέρδος) *to gain*, 2, 6, 21.

κερδαλέος, α, ον, (κέρδος) *profitable, lucrative*; comp. -ώτερος, 1, 9, 17.

κέρδος, εος, ους, τό, *gain, earnings*: τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος, *the monthly earnings*, 1, 9, 17.

κεφαλαγής, ἐς, (κεφαλή, *head*) *to cause a headache*, 2, 8, 15.

κεφαλῇ, ἧς, ἡ, *the head*.

κηδεμών, ὄνος, δ, (κῆδος, *care*) *a guardian, protector*, 3, 1, 17.

κήρυξ or κήρυξ, ὕκος, δ, *a herald*, 2, 2, 20; 3, 1, 46; *a messenger, an envoy*, 2, 1, 7; 2, 3, 1 and 2.

κηρύττω, -ξω, ἐκήρυξα, (κήρυξ) *to proclaim*; impers. *proclamation is made through a herald*, 3, 4, 36.

Κιλικία, ας, ἡ, *Cilicia*.

Κίλιξ, Κίλικος, δ, *a Cilician*.

Κίλισσα, ης, ἡ, *a Cilician woman*.

κινδυνεύω, -εύσω, (κίνδυνος) *to be in danger, to incur danger*, 1, 1, 4; 1, 4, 14.

κίνδυνος, ου, δ, *danger*, w. infin. 2, 5, 17.

κινέω, ὦ, -ήσω, *to move*, trans. w. acc. 3, 4, 28.

Κλεάνωρ, ορος, δ, *Cleānor*.

Κλέαρχος, ου, δ, *Clearchus*.

κνημίς, ἴδος, ἡ, (κνήμη, *the part of the leg between the ankle and the knee*) *a leggin, a greave*, 1, 2, 16.

κογχυλιάτης, ου, δ, (κόγχη, *a shell*) *containing petrified shells*: λίθου κογχυλιάτου, *of shelly stone*, 3, 4, 10.

κοινῇ, adv. (κοινός) *in common, jointly*, 3, 3, 2.

κοινός, ἡ, ὄν, *common*, 3, 1, 43.

κολάζω, κολάσομαι, (rare κολάσω) *to chastise*, 2, 5, 13; 2, 6, 9.

κόλασις, εως, ἡ, (κολάζω) *chastisement*.

Κολοσσαί, ὦν, αἱ, *Colossæ*.

κομίζω, κομίσω or κομιῶ, κτέ., *to carry*. Mid. *to carry one's self, to travel*, 3, 2, 26.

κονιορτός, οὔ, δ, (κόνις, *dust*, ὕρνυμι, *to excite*) *a cloud of dust*, 1, 8, 8.

κόπρος, ου, δ, *dung, faeces*, 1, 6, 1.

κόπτω, -ψω, ἔκοψα, κέκοφα, κέκομαι, ἐκόπην, *to strike and cut, to chop, to slaughter*, 2, 1, 6.

Κορσώτῃ, ἥς, ἡ, *Corsöle*.

κορυφή, ἥς, ἡ, *the highest point, the summit*, 3, 4, 41.

κοσμέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (κόσμος) *to arrange, to marshal*, 3, 2, 36; *to adorn*, in pass. κοσμηθῆναι, *to be adorned*, 1, 9, 23.

κόσμος, ου, ὁ, *order; ornament*, 1, 9, 23.

κοῦφος, η, ον, *light*, 1, 5, 10.

κράνος, εος, ους, τό, *a helmet; κράνη χαλκᾶ*, 1, 2, 16. The κράνος was without a crest (λόφος), and thus differed from the κόρυς, according to Theisz.

κρατέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (κράτος) *to be strong, to be conqueror*, 2, 1, 10; *to be victorious*, 3, 2, 39; w. gen. *to have power over, to rule*, 2, 5, 7; *to conquer*, 3, 4, 26.

κράτιστα, adv. (in form, neut. plur. of κράτιστος) *in the best manner; most bravely*, 3, 2, 6; 3, 3, 3. Positive εὖ, comp. κρεῖττον.

κράτιστος, η, ον, sup. adj. (positive ἀγαθός, comp. κρείσσω or κρείττων) (fr. κράτος) *most powerful, most eminent, noblest*, 1, 5, 8; 2, 2, 8; *most distinguished, best*, 1, 9, 2 and 18, ff.: κράτιστον, sc. ἐστίν, *it is best*, 3, 4, 41.

κράτος, εος, ους, τό, *strength, power*: διώκειν κατὰ κρ., *to pursue vigorously*, 1, 8, 19; ἐλαύνειν ἀνὰ κρ., *to ride at the top of one's speed*, 1, 8, 1; φεύγειν ἀνὰ κρ., *to flee precipitously*, 1, 10, 15.

κραυγή, ἥς, ἡ, (κράζω, *to scream*) *a cry*, 1, 5, 12; σὺν κραυγῇ, *with an*

*outcry, with shouting*, 1, 2, 17; κραυγὴν ἀνέχεσθαι, 1, 8, 11; κρ. ποιεῖν, 2, 2, 17.

κρέας, ως, τό, plur. τὰ κρέα, *flesh, meat*, 1, 5, 2, ff.

κρείττων, ον, gen. ονος, comp. adj. (pos. ἀγαθός, sup. κράτιστος) *better*, ὁδὸν κρείττω, 2, 2, 10; *more powerful*, 1, 2, 26; 2, 5, 19; *more useful*, 3, 1, 4.

κρεμάννυμι, κρεμῶ, (-άσω), ἐκρέμασα; pass. or mid. pres. κρεμάννυμαι or κρέμαμαι, pf. κεκρέμαμαι (late), aor. pass. ἐκρεμάσθην, f. mid. κρεμήσομαι, aor. mid. ἐκρεμασάμην, *to hang* (trans.) 1, 2, 8; pass. *to be suspended*, κρέμονται, 3, 2, 19.

κρήνη, ης, ἡ, *a fountain*, 1, 2, 13.

κρηπίς, ἴδος, ἡ, *a foundation*, 3, 4, 7 and 10.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ, *a Cretan*; comm. plur. Κρηῖτες, Κρητῶν, οἱ, *Cretans*.

κριθῇ, ἥς, ἡ, *barley*, comm. plur. 1, 2, 22.

κρίνω, κρίνῶ, ἔκρινα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην, *to judge, decide*, 1, 9, 5 and 20 and 28; *to estimate*, 1, 9, 30.

κρίος, οὐ, ὁ, (κέρας, κεράς, *horned*) *a ram*.

κρίσις, εως, ἡ, (κρίνω) *the act of deciding, a trial*, 1, 6, 5.

κρύπτω, κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, κέκρυμαι, ἐκρύφθην, *to conceal, to hide*, w. two acc. 1, 9, 19; *to conceal* (by keeping silence), 1, 4, 12.

κτάομαι, -ᾶμαι, κτήσομαι, κέκτημαι or ἔκτῃμαι, ἐκτῃσάμην, *to get, to acquire*, 1, 9, 19; pf. *to have acquired = to possess*, 1, 7, 3.

κτείνω, κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, pf. ἀπέκτο-

να, and in all the parts, the comp. ἀπο- is far more comm. *to kill*, *to slay*, 2, 5, 32.

Κτησίας, ου, δ, *Ctesias*, a Greek physician at the Persian court, 1, 8, 26 and 27.

Κύδνος, ου, δ, *Cydnius*, a river in Cilicia.

κύκλος, ου, δ, *a circle*: κύκλω, *in a circle, round about*, 3, 1, 2 and 12; ἡ κύκλω χώρα, *the surrounding country*, 3, 5, 14; sometimes not in a strict sense, where only the greater part of the circuit round is denoted, 1, 5, 4; *a wall around*, 3, 4, 7 and 11.

κυκλῶ, ᾧ, -ώσω, (κύκλος) *to surround*; pass. *to be surrounded*, 1, 8, 13.

κύκλωσις, εως, ἡ, (κυκλῶ, κύκλος) *the act of surrounding*: ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν, *as if for the purpose of surrounding (them)*, 1, 8, 23.

κῦμα, ατος, τό, *a wave, billow*.

κύπτω, -ψα, *to stoop*.

Κυρεῖος, εἰα, εἶον, or Κύρειος, α, ον, *belonging to Cyrus*: τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον, *the camp of Cyrus*, 1, 10, 1; οἱ Κύρειοι, *the soldiers of Cyrus*, meaning the Persians who had been in his service, 3, 2, 17.

Κῦρος, ου, δ, *Cyrus*: Κῦρος δ ἀρχαῖος, *Cyrus the elder*, 1, 9, 1; elsewhere in the *Anabasis* Cyrus the younger (δ νεώτερος) is meant.

κύων, κυνός, δ or ἡ, *a dog*.

κωλύω, -ύσω, *to hinder, prevent*; w. acc. and gen. *to hinder a person from doing anything*, 1, 6, 2; w. acc. and infin. 1, 7, 19: τί κωλύει, *what hinders*, 1, 3, 16.

κάμη, ης, ἡ, *a village*, 2, 3, 13.

## Λ

λαγχάνω, λήξομαι, εἴληχα, ἔλαχον, εἴληγμαι, ἐλήχθην, *to obtain by lot*; in genr. *to obtain*, w. gen. 3, 1, 11.

λάβω or λάθρα, (root λαθ-, found in λανθάνω) *secretly*; w. gen. *without the knowledge of*, 1, 3, 8.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, ου, δ, *a Lacedæmonian*.

Λακεδαιμών, ονος, ἡ, *Lacedæmon*, called also Sparta, the chief city of Laconia.

λακτίζω, -ίσω, ἐλάκτισα, λελάκτικα, λελάκτισμαι, ἐλακτίσθην, (λάξ, adv. *with the heel*) *to kick*; pass. 3, 2, 18.

λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, εἴληφα, ἔλαβον, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, *to take*; *to levy*, λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας, 1, 1, 6; *to take = to find*, ὅπως ... λάβοι βασιλέα, *that he might find the king as unprepared as possible*, 1, 1, 6; cf. 2, 3, 21; *to receive*, δῶρα, 1, 9, 22; *to take hold of*, 1, 6, 10; *to get possession of*, 1, 7, 9; *to seize*, 3, 4, 41.

λαμπρός, α, όν, (λάμπω) *bright*; comp. -ότερος, sup. -ότατος.

λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ, (λαμπρός, λάμπω) *splendor*, 1, 2, 18.

λάμπω, -ψω, ἔλαμψα, ἐλάμπα; mid. λάμπομαι, -ψομαι, -ψάμην, *to shine*, 3, 1, 12; *to be in a blaze*, 3, 1, 11.

λανθάνω, λήσω, ἐλέηθα, ἔλαθον, ἐλέησμαι, trans. *to escape the notice of, to elude*, w. acc. λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών, lit. *to elude him in having gone away*, i. e. *to have gone away without his knowledge*, 1, 3, 17;—intrans. *to be concealed*, τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν, lit. *was concealed in being*

nourished, i. e. was secretly nourished, 1, 1, 9 and 10.

Λάρισσα, ης, ἡ, Larissa, now called Athur (= Ashur) or Nimroud; thought by Layard to be a suburb of Nineveh. Interesting ruins have been discovered here: 3, 4, 7.

λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, (pf. act. wanting, cf. εἶρηκα), λέλεγμαι (the comp. διαλέγομαι has διείλεγμαι), ἐλέχθην, to speak, say, tell, w. ὥς, 1, 8, 18; w. ὅτι, 1, 2, 21; w. infin. 1, 3, 8; w. πρὸς and acc. 2, 5, 25; to mention, w. acc. 1, 5, 14; 1, 3, 15; to express, ἐλπίδας, 1, 2, 11; to say, to propose, 2, 1, 15;—pass. to be said, to be reckoned, 1, 6, 1;—λέγεται, is said, w. nom. and infin. 1, 2, 8 and 12 and 21; impers. w. acc. and infin. 1, 8, 6.

λείπω, λείψω, λέλοιπα, ἔλιπον, λείμμαι, ἐλείφθην, to leave, abandon, 1, 2, 21;—pass. to be left, 2, 4, 5; to survive, 3, 1, 2.

Λεοντίνος, ἰνῆ, ἰνον, of Leontini; as subst. a Leontine.

λευκοθώραξ, ἄκος, ὁ, ἡ, (λευκός, white, θώραξ, breastplate) with white breastplate, 1, 8, 9.

λήγω, λήξω, ἔληξα, to cease, to come to an end, 3, 1, 9.

λίθινος, ἰνῆ, ἰνον, (λίθος) of stone, 3, 4, 7 and 9.

λίθος, ου, ὁ, a stone; stone (denoting the material), 3, 4, 10.

λιμός, οὔ, ὁ, hunger, famine, ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ, 1, 5, 5.

λογίζομαι, -ίσομαι or -ιοῦμαι, λελόγισμαι, ἐλογισάμην, (λόγος) to consider, 3, 1, 20; to calculate, estimate, 2, 2, 13.

λόγος, ου, ὁ, (λέγω) word, argu-

ment, conversation, 1, 6, 6; often in plur. 2, 5, 16; discussion, conversation, interview, εἰς λόγους, 2, 5, 4; cf. 3, 1, 29; rumor, report, διῆλθε λόγος, a report went abroad, 1, 4, 7; narrative, 2, 1, 1; 3, 1, 1, etc.

λόγχη, ης, ἡ, the point of a spear, 1, 8, 8; by meton. a spear, 2, 2, 9, etc.

λοιδορέω, ᾠ, ἥσω, (λοιδορός, a reviler) to rail at, reproach, revile, w. acc. in the act. 3, 4, 49; w. dat. in the mid.

λοιπός, ἡ, ὄν, (λείπω) left, remaining: τὴν λοιπὴν, sc. ὁδόν, the rest of the way, 3, 4, 46; τὸ λοιπόν, the rest of the time, henceforth, 3, 2, 8 and 38; thenceforth, 2, 2, 5: τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας, the rest of the day, 3, 4, 6 and 16; λοιπόν, sc. ἐστί, it remains, 3, 2, 29.

λόφος, ου, ὁ, an elevation, eminence, a hill = γήλοφος, 1, 10, 12.

λοχαγία, ας, ἡ, (λόχος, ἔγω) the command of a company, 3, 1, 30; plur. the command of companies, 1, 4, 15.

λοχαγός, οὔ, ὁ, (λόχος, ἔγω) a commander of a company (λόχος), a captain, 3, 1, 33 and often.

λόχος, ου, ὁ, (λέγω, to collect) a company of soldiers, comm. of about 100 men, 1, 2, 25.

Λυδία, ας, ἡ, Lydia, a country in the western part of Asia Minor.

Λύδιος, ἰα, ἰον, Lydian.

Λυδός, οὔ, ὁ, a Lydian.

Λυκαῖος, αἶα, αἶον, belonging to Mount Lycæum, in Arcadia, sacred to Zeus and Pan: τὰ Λύκαια, the Lycæa, a festival celebrated by the Arcadians in honor of Pan; θύειν τὰ Λύ., to celebrate the Lycæa, 1, 2, 10.

Λυκάονες, *ων, οί, Lycæonians.*

Λυκαονία, *ας, ἡ, Lycæonia*, between Phrygia and Cilicia.

Λύκιος, *ου, ὁ, Lycius*, a Syracusan, 1, 10, 14 and 15; an Athenian, 3, 8, 20.

λύκος, *ου, ὁ, a wolf*, 2, 2, 9.

λυμαίνομαι, *λυμανοῦμαι*, pf. λελύμασμαι, aor. ἐλυμνήμην, (λύμα, *filth removed by washing*) to spoil, to ruin: ὃ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πᾶξιν, *whose enterprise we are ruining*, 1, 3, 16.

λυπέω, *ῶ, -ήσω, (λύπη)* to annoy, to harass, w. acc. 2, 3, 28; pass. *to be annoyed, grieved*, 1, 3, 8.

λύπη, *ης, ἡ, pain, sorrow, grief*, 3, 1, 3.

λυπηρός, *ῆ, ὁν, (λύπη)* painful; of persons, *troublesome, annoying*, 2, 5, 13.

λυσiteléō, *ῶ, (λυσitelḗs, paying expenses, fr. λύω, to cancel, and τέλος, a tax, duty)* to be profitable, advantageous, 3, 4, 36.

λύω, *λύω, etc., to loose; to break, destroy, γέφυραν*, 2, 4, 17; *to violate, to break, σπονδάς*, 3, 1, 21; *ἔρκους*, 3, 2, 10; pass. *to be loosed, set free*, 3, 4, 35; *to be removed, ἔβρις, ὑποψία*, 3, 1, 21.

λῶτον and λῶτον, comp. of ἀγαθός, *more advantageous, better*, 3, 1, 7.

λωτοφάγος, *ου, ὁ, (λωτός, a species of date, and φαγεῖν, to eat)* a lotus-eater, 3, 2, 25.

## M

μή, *by, a particle used in oaths, followed by the acc.; comm. in neg. clauses; but when preceded by ναί, it is affirmative: μὴ τοὺς θεούς, by the gods*, 1, 4, 8.

μάζα or μᾶζα, *ης, ἡ, barley-bread.*

Μαίανδρος, *ου, ὁ, the Mæander*, 1, 2, 5 and 7.

μαίνομαι, *μανοῦμαι, μέμνηα*, aor. ἐμάνην, (the aor. act. ἐμνηα is causative) *to be mad, bereft of reason*, 2, 5, 10 and 12.

μακαρίζω, (μάκαρ, *happy*) *to count happy*, 3, 1, 19.

μακαριστός, *ῆ, ὁν, (μακαρίζω)* deemed happy, *enviable*, 1, 9, 6.

μακράν, adv. sc. ὁδόν, (μακρός) *a great distance, far*, 3, 4, 17.

μακρός, *ῆ, ὁν, comp. μακρότερος, sup. μακρότατος, long* (of distance and of time), 2, 2, 12; comp. *farther, a greater distance*, 3, 4, 16.

μακρῶ, (μακρός) *far, by far.*

μάλα, adv., comp. μᾶλλον, sup. μάλιστα, *very, exceedingly, μάλα ταχέως*, 3, 4, 15; *μάλα ἐρῶντες, very greatly longing*, 3, 1, 29; *certainly*, 3, 5, 11; *οὐ μάλα, not at all*, 2, 6, 15. Comp. *more, rather*, 1, 1, 5; *οὐδὲν μᾶλλον, none the better*, 3, 3, 13. Sup. *most, especially, ὥς μ. ἐπικρυπτόμενος, concealing it as much as he was able*, 1, 1, 6; ὅ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, *as much as possible*, 1, 3, 15.

μάλιστα, see μάλα.

μᾶλλον, see μάλα.

μανθάνω, *μαθήσομαι, μεμάθηκα, ἔμαθον, to learn*, w. infin. 3, 2, 25; *to ascertain*, w. acc. 2, 5, 37.

μαντεία, *ας, ἡ, (μαντεύομαι, to prophesy, μάντις)* a response (of an oracle), 3, 1, 7.

μάντις, *εως, ὁ, (μαίνομαι)* a prophet, diviner, 1, 7, 18.

Μαρσύας, *ου, ὁ, Marsyas*, 1, 2, 9.

μαρτυρέω, *ῶ, -ήσω, (μάρτυς)*, *to bear witness*, w. dat. 3, 3, 12.

μαρτύριον, ου, τό, (μάρτυς) a testimony, proof, 3, 2, 13.

μάρτυς, ὅρος, ὁ, a witness.

μασθός, see μαστός.

Μάσκας, gen. Μάσκα, ὁ, the Mascas, a river of Mesopotamia.

μαστεύω, to seek, to earnestly desire, w. infin. 3, 1, 43.

μάστιξ, -ιγος, ἡ, a whip: ὑπὸ μαστίγων, under the lash, 3, 4, 25.

μαστός, οὐ, ὁ, the breast, 1, 4, 17.

μάτην, adv. in vain.

μάχαιρα, as, ἡ, (akin to μάχη) a knife, sword (slightly curved, as distinguished fr. ξίφος, a straight sword), 1, 8, 7.

μάχη, ης, ἡ, (μάχομαι) battle, 2, 1, 4; battle-field, 2, 2, 6.

μάχομαι, μαχοῦμαι, μεμάχημαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, to fight, w. dat. to fight with (i. e. against), 1, 5, 9; w. σύν and dat. to fight in company with; also to fight with (an instrument), 2, 1, 12.

μεγαλοπρεπής, es, (μέγας, πρέπω to be conspicuous) magnificent.

μεγαλοπρεπῶς, adv. (μεγαλοπρεπής) magnificently, 1, 4, 17.

μεγάλως, adv. (μέγας) greatly, 3, 2, 22.

Μεγαρεύς, ἑως, ὁ, a Megaræan.

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, gen. μεγάλου, ης, ου, comp. μείζων, sup. μέγιστος, great, large, of persons, stately, 3, 2, 25; τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν, to excel greatly, 1, 9, 24; τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, to those possessing the greatest influence, or having the greatest power, 2, 6, 21; μέγα δυνῆσαι, to benefit greatly, 3, 1, 38; βλάψαι μέγα, to injure greatly, 3, 3, 14; important, 2, 6, 14 and 16; power-

ful, 2, 5, 14; τὸ μέγιστον, especially, chiefly, 1, 3, 10; cf. 2, 5, 7.

Μεγαφέρνης, ου, ὁ, Megaphernes.

μέγεθος, eos, ους, τό, (μέγας) magnitude, greatness, size.

μεθίστημι, (μετά, ἵστημι) μεταστήσω, μεθέστηκα, μετέστησα, μετέστην, μεθέσταμαι, μετεστάθην, to put in another place or way, to transfer, to change; in the intrans. parts (see ἵστημι), to go to another place, to withdraw, 2, 3, 21; in the aor. mid. w. an object, to suffer (any one) to withdraw, 2, 3, 8.

μείζων, see μέγας.

μειράκιον, ου, τό, (μειράξ, ὁ or ἡ, a boy or girl) a youlh, a boy.

μείων, ου, gen. -ονος, comp. of μικρός; also of ὀλίγος, less, 2, 4, 10; μείων ἔχειν, to be worsted, 1, 10, 8; 3, 4, 18; to suffer disadvantage, to be worse off, 3, 2, 17; plur. μέιους or μέλους, fewer, 1, 9, 10.

μελανία, as, ἡ, (μέλας) blackness, a black cloud, 1, 8, 8.

μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν, black, dark.

μέλει, impers. (the form μέλω, I take care, is rare) f. μελήσει, pf. μεμέληκε, it concerns, w. dat. ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι, that it would concern him, that he would take care, 1, 8, 13; ἐμοὶ μελήσει, I will take care, 1, 4, 16.

μελετᾶω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (μέλει) to have a care for, w. gen.; to practise, w. infin. 3, 4, 17.

μελίνη, ης, ἡ, panic (a species of millet, panicum miliaceum), 1, 2, 22; a field of panic (or millet), 2, 4, 13.

μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα or ἡμέλλησα, to be on the point of, to intend, w. infin. pres. 1, 8, 1; 2, 1, 3;

w. infin. fut. 2, 4, 24; *to delay*, 3, 1, 46;—pass. *to be delayed*, 3, 1, 47. μέλω, see μέλει.

μέμνημαι, *I remember*, pf. in form; pres. in meaning; cf. μιμνήσκω.

μέμφομαι, μέμφομαι, ἐμεμψάμην, (sometimes, esp. in earlier writers, ἐμέμφθην) *to blame, reproach*, 2, 6, 30.

μέν, a connective pointing to a following clause or sentence. The particle in the corresponding clause is comm. δέ. See H. 862. a. K. § 322.

3. ff. L. G. μέν is not comm. translated into Eng. When, however, the opposition between the corresponding clauses is marked, μέν and δέ may be variously rendered *on the one hand ... on the other; first ... then; as well ... as; true that ... but*.—The phrases δ μὲν ... δ δέ may be variously rendered *the one ... the other; this one ... that one*. Sometimes, owing to an anacoluthon, the clause with δέ (or a particle of similar meaning) is wanting, 1, 2, 1; 1, 10, 16; 3, 2, 8.—μέν is postpos.

μέντοι, (μέν, τοί) *indeed, truly*; oftener adversative, *yet, still, however*, 1, 8, 20; 2, 3, 22 and 23.

μένω, μενῶ, μεμένηκα, ἔμεινα, *to remain*, 1, 3, 11.

Μένων, ὄνος, δ, Menon.

μέρος, εὖς, τό, *a part, portion*, 1, 6, 2; *specimen*, 1, 5, 8:—ἐν τῷ μέρει, *in turn, one after another*, 3, 4, 23.

μεσημβρία, *as, ἡ, (μέσος, ἡμέρα) mid-day; the South*, 1, 7, 6; 3, 5, 15.

μέσος, *η, ον, middle, midst of, central, of place or time*. Immediately

following the article, it means *central*; in other positions, *midst of, centre of*: διὰ μέσου τοῦ παραδείσου, *through the midst of the park*, 1, 2, 7; πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, *before the centre of the phalanx*, 1, 2, 17; —μέσαι νύκτες, *midnight*, 1, 7, 1; μέσον ἡμέρας, *mid-day, noon*, 1, 8, 8; —τὸ μέσον, *as subst. the midst, the centre*, 1, 2, 15; also without the article, ἐν μέσῳ, *in the midst*, w. gen. 3, 1, 2; διὰ μέσου, w. gen. *between*, 1, 4, 4.

Μέσπιλα, *ης, ἡ, Mespila*, 3, 4, 10. μεστός, *ῆ, ὄν, full, filled*, w. gen. 1, 4, 19.

μετά, prep. (akin to μέσος) w. gen. or acc. (in the poets w. dat. also), (1) w. gen. it denotes participation, *amidst, among, with*, 1, 2, 20; 1, 3, 5; οἱ μετὰ τινος, *the soldiers of any person*, 1, 7, 10. (2) w. acc. of place, *next to, next after*, 1, 8, 4; of time, *after*, 1, 4, 9. In compos. either participation, or change. H. 643. ff. K. § 167. 4.

μεταγινώσκω, (μετά, γινώσκω, wh. see) *to change one's mind*, 2, 6, 3.

μεταδίδωμι, (μετά, δίδωμι, wh. see) *to distribute, to share with*, w. dat. of pers. and acc. of thing, 3, 3, 1.

μεταμέλει, (μετά, μέλει, wh. see) impers. *to repent*, w. dat. μεταμέλειν σοι ἔφησθα; *did you affirm that you repented?* 1, 6, 7; καὶ αὐτῷ μεταμέλειν, *even he repented*, 2, 6, 9.

μεταξύ, adv. (μετά, μέσος) *between, in the midst of*, 3, 1, 27.—Prep. w. gen. *between*, 1, 7, 16.

μετάπεμπος, ὄν, (μετά, πέμπω) *sent for, having been sent for*, 1, 4, 3. μεταπέμπω, (μετά, πέμπω, wh. see)

seldom used in act. Mid. to send for, w. acc. 1, 1, 2.

μέτειμι, (μετά, εἰμί, wh. see) to be in the midst of; impers. w. dat. of pers. and gen. of thing, to have a share in, to participate in: οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετέη, that we participated in no one of, etc. 3, 1, 20.

μετέωρος, ον, (μετά, ἔωρα, anything lifted up) raised up, lifted high: μετεώρους ... τὰς ἀμάξας, the wagons raised up (from the ground), 1, 5, 8. (Cf. Eng. meteor.)

μετρίως, adv. (μέτριος, within measure, μέτρον) in due measure, temperately, with moderation, 2, 3, 20.

μέτρον, ον, τό, a measure.

μέχρι, before a vowel μέχρι or μέχρως, (1.) Prep. w. gen. up to, even to: μέχρι οὗ, to (the region) where, 1, 7, 6. (2.) Conjunc. until, w. indic. 3, 4, 9; w. ἔν and subjunc. 2, 3, 7 and 24; after a historic tense, 1, 4, 13.

μή, as adv. not; as conj. that not, lest. See H. 832. ff. K. § 177.

μηδαμῇ, in no manner, nowhere.

μηδαμῶς, in no manner.

μηδέ, (μή, δέ) and not, nor; μηδέ ... μηδέ, neither ... nor.

Μηδία, as, ἡ, Media.

μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, (μηδέ, εἰς) no one; neut. nothing.

μηδέποτε, adv. (μηδέ, ποτέ) never.

Μῆδοι, ον, οἱ, Medes, or Medians.

μηκέτι, adv. (μή, ἔτι) no longer, 1, 4, 16.

μήκος, εος, τό, (akin to μακρός) length, 2, 4, 12; in plur. 1, 5, 9.

μήν, adv. postpos. in truth, truly, indeed, Lat. vero, 1, 7, 5; sometimes

adversative, καὶ μήν, and yet, 1, 7, 5; 3, 1, 17; often in transitions, comm. with some other particle, besides, nay more, but further, 2, 5, 12; 3, 2, 16.

μήν, μηνός, δ, a month: τοῦ μηνός, monthly, 1, 3, 21.

μηνύω, -ύσω, to disclose, to make known, 2, 2, 20.

μήποτε, adv. (μή, ποτέ) never, 1, 1, 4.

μήπω, adv. (μή, πῶ yet) not yet.

μήτε (μή, τέ) and not; μήτε ... μήτε, neither ... nor; μήτε ... τέ, Lat. neque ... et, not only not ... but also, 2, 2, 8; 3, 1, 30.

μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ, a mother.

μηχανάομαι, -ώμαι, -ήσομαι, (μηχανή) to prepare in a skilful manner, to devise, to accomplish (by fraud), 2, 6, 27.

μηχανή, ἥς, ἡ, (μηῆχος, a means) any artificial means or device.

μία, see εἷς.

μίγνυμι, μίγνύω, also μίσγω, (cf. Lat. misceo) μίξω, ξίμξα, μέμγμαι, ἐμίχθην or ἐμίγην, to mix, mingle.

Μίδας, α or ον, δ, Midas.

Μιθριδάτης, ον, δ, Mithridates.

μικρός, δ, ον, see H. 228. 3. K. § 52. 6, small, insignificant, 3, 2, 10; of time, short, brief:—μικρόν, a little (of space or time), for a little time, 3, 1, 11; μικρόν προϊόντες, advancing a short distance, 2, 1, 6;—μικρόν, a little = narrowly, 1, 3, 2.

Μιλήσιος, ἰα, ἰον, Milesian; as subst. masc. a Milesian, an inhabitant of Miletus, 1, 9, 9; fem. a Milesian woman, 1, 10, 3.

Μίλητος, ον, ἡ, Miletus, one of the chief cities of Ionia.



Μιλτοκύθης, ου, δ, *Miltocythes*.

μυμήσκω, μνήσω, ξμνησα, μέμνημαι, ξμνήσθην, (the fut. and aor. pass. are mid. in meaning; fut. pf. μεμνήσομαι, *I shall bear in mind*) to remind. Mid. to remind one's self, to call to mind, to remember; μέμνημαι, *I remember*, 1, 7, 5; w. infin. 3, 2, 39.

μισθοδοσία, ας, ἡ, (μισθός, δίδωμι) the payment of wages, 2, 5, 22.

μισθοδότης, ου, δ, (μισθός, δίδωμι) a paymaster, 1, 3, 9.

μισθός, οὔ, δ, pay, 1, 1, 10; 1, 2, 11 and 12; reward, 2, 2, 20.

μισθοφόρος, ου, δ, (μισθός, φέρω) as adj. receiving pay: μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες, the mercenary Greeks, 1, 4, 3; as subst. a hired soldier, a mercenary.

μισθών, ὦ, -ώσω, (μισθός) to hire; pass. to be hired, 1, 3, 1.

μνᾶ, μνᾶς, ἡ, a mina = 100 drachmæ, about \$17. Sixty minæ = a talent.

μνησικακέω, ὦ, (μυμήσκω, κακός) to remember injuries, to bear ill-will (against a person on account of anything, τινί τινος), 2, 4, 1.

μόλις, adv. (akin to μῶλος, τοίλ) with difficulty, 3, 4, 48.

μολυβδῖς, ἰδος, ἡ, (μόλυβδος) a leaden bullet, 3, 3, 17.

μόλυβδος, ου, δ, lead.

μόνος, η, ου, alone, only; μόνον as adv. only.

Μυγδόνοι, ων, οἱ, *Mygdonians*.

Μυριάνδρος or Μυριανδός, ου, δ, *Myriandrus* or *Myriandus*, 1, 4, 6.

μυριάς, ἄδος, ἡ, (akin to μύριοι) a myriad, 10,000, 1, 4, 5.

μύριος, ἰα, ἰον, comm. in plur.

μύριοι, αι, α, 10,000, ἀπὸς μυρία, 1, 7, 10; μύρια στάδια, 3, 1, 2. As paroxytone, μυριοι, ἰα, ἰα, it is indefinite, countless, 10,000, or a myriad, as indefinite expressions, 2, 1, 19; 3, 2, 31. (This distinction in accent seems not, however, to be always observed by the editors.)

Μύσιος, ἰα, ἰον, *Mysian*, 1, 2, 10.

Μυσός, οὔ, δ, a *Mysian*, 1, 6, 7.

μωρός, δ, ὄν, comp. μωρότερος, sup. μωρότατος; of the body, slow, sluggish; of the mind, stupid, 3, 2, 22.

## N

ναύαρχος, ου, δ, (ναῦς, ἄρχω) an admiral.

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ, (akin to νέω, to swim, Lat. *navis*) a ship, 1, 4, 2.

ναυσίπορος, ου, (ναῦς, πῶρος) traversed by ships, navigable.

ναυτικός, ἡ, ὄν, (ναῦς) belonging to a ship or to maritime affairs, naval, δύναμιν ναυτικήν, 1, 3, 12.

νεανίσκος, ου, δ, (νέος) a young man, a youth, 2, 1, 13.

νέμω, νεμῶ, νενέμηκα, ξνειμα, to divide, distribute. Mid. to distribute among one another; hence, to share; of cattle, to feed, to graze, 2, 2, 15.

νέος, α, ου, new, fresh, young; comp. νεώτερος, younger, 1, 1, 1; sup. νεώτατος.

νεῦρον, ου, τό, (cf. Lat. *nervus*, Eng. *nerve*) a sinew, a cord, a string, 3, 4, 17.

νεφέλη, ης, ἡ, (akin to νέφος, a cloud, cf. Lat. *nebula*) a cloud, a mist, 1, 8, 8.

νῆ, yes, surely, a particle of asse-

eration, always affirmative: w. acc. Νῆ Δία, *yes! by Zeus!* 1, 7, 9; cf. μᾶ.

νῆσος, ου, ἡ, *an island.*

Νικαρχος, ου, δ, (νίκη, ἄρχω to rule) *Nicarchus.*

νικῶ, ᾧ, -ήσω, (νίκη) *to conquer, μάχη in battle*, 2, 1, 4; w. acc. 1, 10, 4; *to be victorious*, 2, 1, 1 and 4; *to surpass, to excel*, 1, 9, 11 and 24.

νίκη, ης, ἡ, *victory.*

νοῶ, ᾧ, -ήσω, (νόος, νοῦς) *to perceive, observe*, 3, 4, 44.

νόθος, η, ου, *illegitimate*, 2, 5, 25.

νομή, ης, ἡ, (νέμω) *a pasture; a herd*, 3, 5, 2.

νομίζω, νομίσω or νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, νενόμικα, νενόμισμαι, ἐνομίσθην, (νόμος) *to regard as a custom (νόμος), to consider, suppose, think, regard*, w. acc. 1, 4, 9; 2, 5, 39; w. nom. and infin. 2, 6, 17. (H. 775. K. § 172. 3); w. acc. and infin. νομίζω ... εἶναι, *for I consider that you are to me*, etc. 1, 3, 6; cf. 1, 5, 16.

νόμος, ου, δ, (νέμω) *a custom, a law: order, arrangement, anything customary: ὡς νόμος (sc. ἦν ταχθῆναι) αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, as it was customary for them to be drawn up for battle*, 1, 2, 15.

νόος, νοῦς, δ, gen. νόου, νοῦ, dat. νόῳ, νῷ, and νοί, *the mind: ἐν νῷ ἔχειν, to have in mind*, 3, 3, 2; 3, 5, 13.

νύκτωρ, adv. (νύξ) *by night.*

νῦν, adv. now, Lat. nunc: τὸ νῦν εἶναι, *for the present*, 3, 2, 37.

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, *night: νυκτός, by night*, 2, 6, 7; μέσαι νύκτες, *midnight*, 1, 7, 1.

## Ξ

Ξανθικλῆς, έους, δ, *Xanthicles.*

Ξένιας, ου, δ, *Xenias.*

Ξενικός, ἡ, όν, (ξένος) *belonging to a stranger or guest, foreign: τὸ ξενικόν, οὔ, the foreign force, the mercenary force*, 1, 2, 1; 2, 5, 22.

ξένιος, ία, ίων, (ξένος) *belonging to a guest or host, hospitable: Ζεὺς ξένιος, Zeus the protector of guests*, 3, 2, 4.

ξένος, ου, δ, *a guest or host, Lat. hospes, a person related to another by the ties of hospitality: ξένος ὧν ἐτύγχανεν, happened to be related to him by the ties of hospitality*, 1, 1, 10; cf. 1, 1, 11; *a stranger, a soldier who enters foreign service, a mercenary*, 1, 1, 10; 1, 3, 18.

Ξενοφῶν, ᾧντος, δ, *Xenophon*, an Athenian, son of Gryllus; a pupil of Socrates, 3, 1, 5; joins Cyrus on the invitation of Proxenus, 3, 1, 4, ff.; at Cunaxa, 1, 8, 15; exhorts the soldiers after the loss of the generals, 3, 1, 15, ff.; chosen general, 3, 1, 47; further mentioned, 3, 2, 37; 3, 3, 15, ff.; 3, 4, 38, ff.

Ξέρξης, ου, δ, *Xerxes.*

ξεστός, ἡ, όν, (ξέω, to scrape) *made smooth by scraping, polished*, 3, 4, 10.

ξηραίνω, -αῶ, (ξηρός, dry) *to dry*, 2, 3, 15.

ξίφος, εος, ους, τό, *a sword (Lat. ensis), large, two-edged, straight and pointed, for stabbing and thrusting; hung by a baldric (τελαμών) which was suspended over the shoulders; was protected by a sheath (κολεός).* Close by this was carried the battle-

knife (*μάχαιρα*), used in close combat, also for slaughtering animals.

ἐκλίσσεται, *to gather wood*, 2, 4, 11.

ξύλον, *οὐ, τό, wood, a stick of wood, a pole*, 1, 10, 12.

ξύν, *prep.* (cf. Lat. *cum*), another form of σύν. For all compounds of ξύν, see σύν and its compounds. In all passages in the *Anabasis* where other editors read ξύν, Dindorff (2d edit. Oxford) has restored σύν.

# Ο

ὁ, ἡ, τό, a definite article, *the*; used also as demonst. pron. ὁ μὲν ... ὁ δέ, *this one ... that one, or the one ... the other*; οἱ μὲν ... οἱ δέ, *these ... those, the former ... the latter, some ... others*, 1, 2, 25; τὰ μὲν ... τὰ δέ, *these things ... those things, the former ... the latter, partly ... partly*; ὁ δέ, *and this one, and he*, 1, 1, 3 and 4 and 9; οἱ δέ, *but they, and they*, 1, 2, 2 and 16 and 17; οἱ ἐκείνου, *those of him, belonging to him*; οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, *those with him*, 1, 2, 15; οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, *the people of the market-place*, 1, 2, 18. Often before a particip. τὸν βουλόμενον, *the one wishing, any one who desired*, 1, 3, 9.

ὀβολός, οὐ, δ, (akin to ὀβελός, a *spit, nail*, the obol being originally, as some suppose, in the shape of a nail, or, as others suppose, being stamped with a nail) *an obol, a coin worth nearly 3 cents, 1/6 of a δραχμή*, 1, 5, 6.

ὀγδοήκοντα, *eighty*.

ὅδε, ἡδε, τόδε, demonst. pron. *this, this one*, Lat. *hicce*. It oftener de-

notes something following; οὗτος, something going before. Distinguished from ἐκείνος, it denotes something near or present; ἐκεῖνος, something remote.

ὁδός, οὐ, ἡ, a *way, street, road*, Lat. *via*, 1, 2, 13;—a *march, journey*, Lat. *iter*, 1, 4, 11; 1, 5, 9; often understood, 3, 4, 46.

ὅθεν, (ὅ, relat. pron. and -θεν, *from*) *from which, whence*, 1, 2, 8; *from what source*, 2, 5, 26.

ὅθενπερ, (ὅ, -θεν, πέρ) *from which very place, whence*, 2, 1, 3.

οἶ, see οὐ.

οἰκαδε, *adv.* (οἶκος, δέ (enclit.) *towards*) *homeward, home*, 1, 7, 4; ἡ οἰκαδε ὁδός, *the way home*, 3, 1, 2.

οἰκεῖος, εἰα, εἶον, (οἶκος) *belonging to a house or family, akin*: οἱ οἰκεῖοι, *kindred, relations*, 3, 2, 26 and 39. Comp. οἰκειότερος, *sup. οἰκειότατος, most intimate*, w. dat. 2, 6, 28.

οἰκέτης, οὐ, δ, (οἶκος) *a domestic; a servant*, 2, 3, 15.

οἰκέω, ὦ, ἥσω, (οἶκος) *to live, dwell*: τοῖς ... οἰκοῦσι, *those dwelling, or those who dwell*, 1, 1, 9; *trans. to live in, to occupy*, w. acc. 3, 2, 23;—*pass. to be occupied, to be inhabited*, 1, 4, 6; *to be situated*, 1, 4, 1 and 11;—πόλις οἰκουμένη, *a populous, or well-inhabited city*, 1, 2, 6, etc.

οἰκία, *as, ἡ, (οἶκος) a house*.

οἰκοδομέω, ὦ, ἥσω, (οἶκος, δέμω, δόμος) *to build*, 1, 2, 9;—*pass.* 2, 4, 12.

οἶκοι, *adv.* (οἶκον, dat. sing. of οἶκος) *at home*: ὑπὸ τῶν οἶκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν, *by those at home of an opposite faction*, 1, 1, 10; οἱ οἶκοι, *those at*

*home, one's fellow-countrymen*, 1, 2, 1; 1, 7, 4.

οἰκονόμος, ου, δ, (οἶκος, νέμω, Eng. *economy*, etc.) *a steward, a manager*, 1, 9, 19.

οἶκος, ου, δ, *a house, home*: εἰς οἶκον, 2, 4, 8.

οἰκτεῖρω, (οἰκτερῶ dub.), later οἰκτειρήσω, aor. φέπειρα and φκτεῖρησα (fr. οἶκος, pity) *to pity*, 1, 4, 7.

οἶνος, ου, δ, (οἶνος w. the digamma Foivos, Lat. *vinum*, German *Wein*, French *vin*, Eng. *wine, vine, vinegar*, etc.) *wine*, 1, 2, 13; οἶνον . . . φοῖνικος, *palm-wine*, 1, 5, 10.

οἶμαι and οἶμαι, οἴησμαι, φήθην, impf. φόμην and φῆμην, *to think, suppose*, w. acc. and infin. 3, 1, 38; cf. 1, 9, 21: ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος, *I think I should be honorable*, 1, 3, 6; —οἶμαι and φῆμην express as a mere opinion what is in reality a positive conviction, and are often ironical, *I ween, I trow*.

οἶος, οἶα, οἶον, relat. pron. denoting quality; correlative of τοιόσδε or τοιοῦτος, *of what sort, of which sort, such as, as*, Lat. *qualis*, 1, 7, 4; *such as, proper for*, w. infin. 2, 3, 13; —οἶός τε, *able, possible*: οὐχ οἶόν τε ἔσται, *it will not be possible*, 1, 3, 17; ἔστί is often understood, 2, 2, 3; 3, 3, 15; —οἶόν τε w. the sup. intens. ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως, *in the most guarded manner possible*, 2, 4, 24.

οἶός περ, same as οἶος w. the addition of the intens. πέρ, *just such as, just as*, 1, 3, 18; οἶόν περ, *just as*, 1, 8, 18.

ὄϊς, ὄϊος, Attic οἷς, οἶός, δ or ἦ, *a sheep*.

δίστός or οἰστός, οὔ, δ, (prob. a verb. adj. fr. οἶσω fut. of φέρω) *an arrow*, 2, 1, 6.

οἴχομαι, οἰχήσομαι, *to have gone, to be gone* (pres. in form, but pf. in meaning, opp. to ἤκω), 1, 4, 8; impf. φχόμην, sometimes plupf. in meaning, sometimes aor.; —often w. a particip. φχέτο πλέων, *set sail* (lit. *went sailing*), 2, 6, 3; φχέτο ἀπελαύνων, *rode away*, 2, 4, 24; φχέτο ἀπιών, *disappeared*, 3, 1, 32.

οἰωνός, οὔ, δ, (οἶος, alone) *a bird that flies alone*, as a vulture, eagle, etc., especially watched for auguries; hence, *an augury, omen, sign*, 3, 2, 9.

δκνέω, ὦ, ἤσω, (ὕκνος, sloth) *to hesitate, to be reluctant*, w. infin. 1, 3, 17; w. μή, *to fear that*, 2, 3, 9.

ὀκτακόσιοι, αι, α, *eight hundred*.  
ὀκτώ, *eight*.

ὀκτωκαίδεκα, *eighteen*.

ὀλεθρος, ου, δ, (ὕλλνμι, *to destroy*) *destruction, death*, 1, 2, 26.

ὀλίγος, η, ον, *few, little*, of number or of quantity; comp. and sup. H. 223. 4. K. § 52. 7.

ὀλισθάνω or -θαίνω, f. ὀλισθήσω, pf. ὠλισθηκα, aor. ὠλισθον, *to slip, slide*, 3, 5, 11.

ὀλκός, ἄδος, ἦ, (ἐλκω, *to draw*) strictly, *a ship which is towed*; *a transport, a merchantman*, 1, 4, 6.

ὅλος, η, ον, *whole, entire*, 3, 3, 11.

Ὀλύνθιος, α, ον, *Olynthian*; as subst. *an Olynthian*.

δμαλός, ἦ, ὄν, *smooth, level*.

δμαλώς, adv. (δμαλός) *in an even line*, 1, 8, 14.

δμηρος, ου, δ, (δμός, common, and the root αφ- denoting *to fit, join*) *a surety; a hostage*, 3, 2, 24.

ὁμιλέω, ὦ, ἤσω, (ὅμιλος, *an assembly*) to be together, to associate with, w. dat. 3, 2, 25.

ὕμνυμι and ὁμνύω, ὁμοῦμαι, ὁμώμοκα, ὥμοσα; ὁμώμομαι and ὁμώμοσμαι, ὥμωθην and ὥμώσθην, to swear, w. infin. 2, 2, 8.

ὁμνύω, see ὕμνυμι.

ὅμοιος, οἶα, οἶον, (ὁμός, *common*) like, similar: ὅμοιοι ἦσαν, they seemed (a rare expression), w. infin. 3, 5, 13.

ὁμοίως, adv. (ὅμοιος) similarly, in like manner, 1, 3, 12.

ὁμολογέω, ὦ, ἤσω, (ὁμολόγος, *agreeing*; ὁμός, *like*, and λόγος) to acknowledge, to confess, 1, 6, 7; w. infin. and subj. 1, 6, 8;—pass. ὁμολόγητο, he had been acknowledged, 1, 9, 14; impers. ὁμολογεῖται, 1, 9, 1.

ὁμολογουμένως, adv. (ὁμολογούμενος, pres. particip. of ὁμολογέω) confessedly: ὁμ. ἐκ πάντων, by the admission of all, 2, 6, 1.

ὁμομήτριος, ἰα, ἰον, (ὁμός, *common*, μήτηρ) of the same mother, 3, 1, 17.

ὁμοπάτριος, ἰα, ἰον, (ὁμός, πατήρ) of the same father, 3, 1, 17.

ὁμόςσε, adv. (ὁμός, *like*) towards the same place, 3, 4, 4.

ὁμοτράπεζος, ον, (ὁμός, *common*, τράπεζα, *table*) sitting at the same table; subst. a table-companion, 1, 8, 25.

ὁμοῦ, adv. (ὁμός, *like*) together, 1, 10, 8; at the same time.

ὅμως, yet, still, nevertheless, 1, 8, 23; 3, 1, 10. (Not to be confounded w. ὁμῶς, ὁμοῦ, or ὁμοίως.)

ὄναρ, τό, only in nom. and acc. sing.; other cases comm. fr. ὕνειρος or ὕνειρον; sometimes gen. ὀνείρατος,

dat. ὀνείρατι; plur. comm. ὀνείρατα, ὀνείράτων, etc., a dream, 3, 1, 11, ff. (opp. to ὕπαρ, a waking vision.)

ὕνειρος, ὅ, and ὕνειρον, τό, a dream. ὀνίνημι, ὀνήσω, ὠνησα; pass. rare, ὠνημαι, ὠνήθην, to help, to benefit, 3, 1, 38.

ὄνομα, ατος, τό, a name, Lat. nomen, 1, 4, 11; 2, 4, 25; reputation, 2, 6, 17.

ὀνομάζω, -άσω, (ὄνομα) to name, to call.

ὄνος, ον, ὅ or ἥ, an ass: ὄνος ἄγριος, a wild ass, 1, 5, 2; ὄνος ἀλέτης, an upper millstone, 1, 5, 5.

ὄντως = τῷ ὄντι, in reality (fr ὢν, ὄντος).

ὕξος, εος, οvs, τό, (δξύς) vinegar; sour drink: ὕξος ἔψητον, a sour drink made by boiling, 2, 3, 14.

δξύς, εἶα, ὕ, sharp, acid.

ὅπῃ or ὅπῃ, in what direction, where, 1, 3, 6; 1, 4, 8;—in what manner, as, 2, 1, 19; (πῇ in a direct, ὅπῃ in an indirect question.)

ὅπηνίκα (ι), when.

ὕπισθε or ὕπισθεν (perh. akin to ἔπομαι) behind, in the rear, 1, 10, 9; w. gen. 1, 7, 9: εἰς τοῦτοπισθεν, back, behind, 3, 3, 10; τὰ ὕπισθεν, the rear (of the army), 3, 4, 40.

ὀπισθοφυλακίω, ὦ, ἤσω, (ὕπισθε, φύλαξ) to form the rear-guard, to guard the rear (of the troops); 3, 3, 8; (of the general), 2, 3, 10.

ὀπισθοφύλαξ, ακος, ὅ, (ὕπισθε, φύλαξ) one of the rear-guard: οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, the rear-guard, 3, 3, 7.

ὀπίσω (ι), adv. (akin to ὕπισθε) backwards; of time, hereafter.

ὀπλιζώ, -ίσω, (ὀπλον) to equip, arm, prepare; pass. to be armed, 1, 8, 6.

ὁπλίσις, εὖς, ἡ, (ὁπλίζω) *equipment*, esp. for war, *armor*, 2, 5, 17.

ὁπλίτης (ι), ου, δ, (ὅπλον) *a heavy-armed man, a hoplite*.

ὁπλομαχία, ας, ἡ, (ὅπλον, μάχομαι) *the art of fighting with heavy armor*, 2, 1, 7.

ὅπλον, ου, τό, *an implement*; plur. ὅπλα, esp. *the large shields* carried by the hoplites; meton. *arms*, 1, 2, 2; 1, 3, 7; τὰ ὅπλα, meton. for οἱ ὁπλῖται, 2, 2, 4; 3, 2, 36; the place where the hoplites were, or where the arms were stacked; hence, *the camp*, 2, 2, 20; 2, 4, 15; 3, 1, 3 and 33 and 40.

ὁπόθεν, adv. (in an indirect question instead of πόθεν) *whence, from which, a place from which*, 3, 5, 3; ὁπόθεν οἰχοίτο, *in a place from which he had disappeared*, i. e. *wherever he had*, etc. 3, 1, 32.

ὅποι, adv. (in an indirect question instead of ποῦ) *whither, where*, 3, 5, 13; *a place to which*, 2, 4, 19.

ὁποῖος, οἷα, οἷον, (ποῖος) *of what sort soever, whatever*, Lat. *qualis*, 2, 2, 2; 3, 1, 13.

ὁπόσος, η, ον, (πόσος) *of number, how many soever, as many as*, Lat. *quot*, 1, 2, 1; 1, 8, 27; *of size, how great soever, as great as*, Lat. *quantus*, 3, 2, 21.

ὁπόταν = ὁπότ' ἂν, = ὁπότε ἂν.

ὁπότε, (like ὅτε, a correl. to the interrog. πότε and the demonstr. τότε; less definite than ὅτε) *when, as, w. the indic.* 1, 6, 7; *w. ἂν and the subjunc. expressing what is indefinite or repeated in the pres. or fut. when, whenever, as often as*, 2, 3, 27; *w. the optat. denoting repetition, when-*

*ever*, 1, 5, 7.—In a causal sense, *whereas, since, inasmuch as*, Lat. *quoniam*, 3, 2, 1 and 15 and 16.

ὁπότερος, ἐρα, ἐρον, (πότερος) *which-ever of two parties*, 3, 1, 21 and 42.

ὅπου, (ποῦ) *where, wherever*, *w. indic.* 1, 5, 9; *w. ἂν and subjunc.* 1, 3, 6; *w. optat. denoting repetition*, 1, 9, 15 and 27.

ὁπτός, ἡ, ὄν, (ὁπτᾶω, *to bake*) *baked, burnt, πλίνθοις ὁπταῖς*, 2, 4, 12.

ὅπως, (πῶς), 1. Adv. *how, in what manner*, in dependent questions, (a) *w. indic.* 1, 1, 4; 1, 6, 11; (b) *w. optat. and ἂν*, 3, 1, 7.—2. Conjunction. *that, in order that*, *w. indic. fut.* 1, 7, 3; *w. subjunc.* 3, 2, 3; *w. optat.* 1, 4, 5.

ὀράω, ᾧ, f. ὄψομαι, pf. ἑώρακα, aor. εἶδον; pass. or mid. pf. ἑώραμαι or ὤμμαι, aor. pass. ὤφθην, *to see*, *w. acc.* 1, 8, 26; ὀρᾶν στυγνός, *hateful to look upon*, 2, 6, 9.

ὀργή, ἧς, ἡ, *anger*: ὀργῇ, *in anger*, 1, 5, 8; 2, 6, 9.

ὀργίζομαι, (ὀργή) ὀργίσομαι or ὀργιοῦμαι, aor. comm. ὤργισθην, *to be angry*, 1, 2, 26; *w. dat.* 1, 5, 11.

ὀργυῖα, ᾤς, ἡ, (ὀρέγω, *to stretch*) *the length of the outstretched arms, about a fathom*, 1, 7, 14.

ὀρθίος, ἰα, ἰον, (ὀρθός) *steep, (steep up, πρηνής steep down)* 1, 2, 21.

ὀρθός, ἡ, ὄν, (ἄκιν to ὀρθνυμι, *to excite*) *straight, erect*, 2, 5, 23.

ὀρθρος, ου, ὅ, (ἄκιν to ὀρθνυμι, *to excite*) *dawn*: ἔμα ὀρθρε, *at dawn*, 2, 2, 21.

ὀρθῶς, adv. (ὀρθός) *right, rightly*, 1, 9, 30: οὐκ ὀρθῶς, *not properly*, 2, 5, 6; ὀρθῶς ἔχειν, *to be right*, 3, 2, 7.

ὄρκος, ου, ὁ, (akin to εἰργω, to restrain) an oath; plur. 2, 5, 3: οἱ θεῶν ὄρκοι, our oaths by the gods, 2, 5, 7.

ὀρμάω, ᾠ, -ῆσω, (ὀρμή) trans. to set in motion, intrans. to rush, to hasten, 1, 8, 25; τὴν ὁδόν, cogn. acc. 3, 1, 8; —mid. to hasten, 1, 2, 5; ὀρμώμενος ἐκ, repeatedly rushing out from, i. e. making his head-quarters at, 1, 1, 9.

ὀρμέω, ᾠ, -ῆσω, (ὀρμος, a haven) to lie at anchor, 1, 4, 3 and 6.

ὀρμή, ῆς, ἡ, (akin to ὀρνυμι, to arouse) the act of rushing: ἐν ὀρμῇ, in motion, on the march, 2, 1, 3; τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ὀρμήν, that the expedition was against the king, 3, 1, 10; μιᾷ ὀρμῇ, with one impulse, 3, 2, 9.

ὀρμίζω, ἰσω, or ᾠ, (ὀρμος, a haven) to bring to anchor, to anchor, 3, 5, 10.

ὀρνις, ὀρνίθος, ὁ, ἡ, a bird, esp. a cock or hen.

Ὀρόντας, ου or α, ὁ, Orontas.

Ὀρόντης, ου, ὁ, Orontes.

ὄρος, εος, τό, (perh. akin to ὀρνυμι, to arouse) a mountain; gen. plur. comm. in Anab. ὀρέων; also ὀρῶν, 1, 2, 25.

ὀρυκτός, ἡ, ὄν, (ὀρύττω) dug: ὀρυκτὴ τάφρος, an artificial ditch, 1, 7, 14.

ὀρύττω, ὀρύξω, ὠρυξα, ὀράρῃχα, ὀράρηνγμαι, ὠρύχθην, to dig, 1, 5, 5.

Ὀρχομένιος, ου, ὁ, an Orchomenian.

ὅς, ἡ, ὅ, relat. pron. who, which: καὶ ὅς, and he; ἐν ᾧ, in which (time), 1, 2, 20; δι' ὅ, on which account, 1, 2, 21; ἀφ' οὗ, from which time, since, 3, 2, 14.

ὁσίος, ἰα, ἰον, sanctioned by law, either natural or divine; of persons, devout, conscientious, 2, 6, 25.

ὅσος, ἡ, ον, a correl. of τοσούτος, as much as, Lat. *quantus*; plur. as many as: πάντων ὅσοι, of all as many as, of all who, 1, 1, 2; τοσούτοι ὅσους, as many as, 2, 1, 16; cf. 3, 1, 36; of space, as far as, 3, 3, 15; of time, as long as; w. numbers, as much as, about, 1, 8, 6.

ὅσοσπερ, ὅσηπερ, ὅσονπερ, (ὅσος and πέρ intens.) as much as; plur. as many as, 1, 7, 9.

ὅσπερ, ἡπερ, ὅπερ, (ὅς and πέρ intens.) which very person or thing, 1, 4, 5.

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι, or ὅ, τι, gen. οὐτινος, etc., oftener ὅτου, (ὅς and τίς) whoever, any one who, whichever, anything which, whatever, 1, 6, 9; what, 1, 8, 21.

ὅταν = ὅτε ἔν.

ὅτε, when, (correl. of τότε) 1, 2, 9; w. optat. imperf. as often as, 2, 6, 12.

ὅτι, that, after words denoting thought or the expression of thought, 1, 2, 21; —because: ὅτι... ἤκουε, because he heard, etc. 1, 2, 21; —w. a sup. intens. cf. Lat. *quam*, 1, 1, 6. See H. 868. K. § 329. L. G.

ὅτου, see ὅστις.

οὐ, before a vowel w. smooth breathing οὐκ, before a vowel with rough breathing οὐχ, not. See H. 832. ff. K. § 177.

οὗ, adv. of place = ἐφ' οὗ τόπου, where, 1, 2, 22; 3, 4, 32; προϊόντες οὗ, going forward to the place where, 2, 1, 6.

οὗ, οἱ, pers. pron. 3d pers.; nom. sing. wanting; in the sing. only the dat. occurs in the Anab.; it is comm. enclitic, and reflex. in meaning, to him, 1, 1, 8; 1, 2, 8; 1, 9, 29; 3,

4, 42;—in plur. σφῶν, *of themselves*, 3, 5, 16.

οὐδαμόθεν, adv. (οὐδαμός, *no one*, -θεν, *from*) *from no place*, 2, 4, 23.

οὐδαμοῦ, adv. (οὐδαμός, *no one*) *nowhere*.

οὐδέ, (οὐ, δέ) *but not, and not, not even, nor*: οὐδὲ . . . οὐδέ, *neither . . . nor*; οὐδ' ἄλλος δέ, *and not even another*, 1, 8, 20. See H. 858. K. § 321. 2. L. G.

οὐδεὶς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, gen. οὐδενός, οὐδεμίας, etc. (οὐδέ, εἰς) *no one, nothing*; οὐδέν, *in nothing, in no respect*, 1, 1, 8.

οὐδέποτε, adv. (οὐδέ, ποτέ) *not even at any time, never*, 2, 6, 13.

οὐκέτι, adv. (οὐκ, ἔτι) *no longer*.

οὐκουν, (οὐκ, οὖν) *not therefore*: does not occur in Dind.—instead of it οὐκοῦν.

οὐκοῦν, (οὐκ, οὖν) *therefore, then, accordingly*, 3, 2, 19. The negative not rendered, except in a question anticipating an affirmative answer, *not then*, 1, 6, 7.

οὖν, *therefore, then, accordingly*, (postpos.)

οὐποτε, adv. (οὐ, ποτέ) *never*, 1, 3, 5.

οὐπω, adv. (οὐ, πῶ *at any time yet*) *not yet*.

οὐπώποτε, adv. (οὐ, πῶ, ποτέ) *not yet at any time, never before*, 1, 4, 18.

οὐρά, ᾶς, ἡ, *the tail*: (of an army) *the rear*, 3, 4, 38 and 42.

οὔτε, adv. (οὐ, τέ) *and not, nor*: οὔτε . . . οὔτε, *neither . . . nor*.

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this*, plur. *these*, pointing out a person or thing supposed to be known: καὶ ταῦτα, *and that too*, 1, 4, 12 and often.

οὗτοσί, *this one here*, 1, 6, 6.

οὔτω, and before a vowel οὔτως, adv. (οὔτος) *thus, in this manner*, so, 1, 1, 11 and often; *to such a degree*, 2, 6, 7.

ὀφείλω, ὀφειλήσω, ὀφείλῃσα, ὀφείλῃκα, aor. 2d ὤφελον, *to owe, to be indebted, to be obliged*; pass. ὤφελ-λετο μισθός, *pay was due*, 1, 2, 11: ὤφελον, es, e, is used only in wishes which cannot be realized, 2, 1, 4, *O that, would that*.

ὕφαλος, τό, (ὀφέλλω, *to augment*) *profit, advantage*, w. gen. 1, 3, 11; 2, 6, 9.

ὀχετός, οὖ, δ, (ὀχέω) *a ditch, drain, conduit*, 2, 4, 13.

ὀχέω, ᾶ, -ήσω, (ὄχος, *a vehicle*) *to carry*: ὀχέομαι, *to be carried, to ride*, ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχῇ, 3, 4, 47.

ὄχημα, ατος, τό, (ὀχέω) *a vehicle*, 3, 2, 19.

ὄχλος, ου, δ, *a crowd, a throng of people*, 2, 5, 9; *the camp-followers*, 3, 4, 26; *trouble, difficulty*, 3, 2, 27.

ὄχυρός, δ, όν, (ἐχω) *firm, rugged*, ὄρος, 1, 2, 22; χωρίον ὄχ., *a strong-hold*, 1, 2, 24.

ὀψέ, adv. (ὕπισθε, contr. ὀψέ) *late*, 2, 2, 16.

ὄψις, εως, ἡ, (ὀψομαι) *a sight, appearance*, 2, 3, 15.

## Π

πάθος, εος, ους, τό, (πάσχω, aor. infin. παθεῖν) *suffering, misfortune*, 1, 5, 14.

παιανίζω, -ίσω, Att. ᾠῶ, (παιάν, *a choral song*) *to sing a pæan*, 1, 8, 17; 1, 10, 10.



παιδεύω, -εύσω, (παῖς) *to bring up a child, to educate*; pass. 1, 9, 2.

παιδικά, ὦν, τὰ, (παῖς) *a favorite*, plur. in form, but sing. in meaning; comm. of a boy, 2, 6, 6.

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ or ἡ, *a child, a son*, 1, 1, 1; *a boy*, 1, 9, 2; ἡ παῖς, *the girl, the daughter*.

παίω, παίσω and παίησω, ξπαῖσα, πέπαικα, (pass. comm. supplied fr. πλήττω) *to strike, to hit, to wound* (with a spear or javelin), 1, 8, 26; *to smite* (with a stick), 2, 3, 11; pass. *to be smitten, beaten*, 3, 1, 29.

παιονίζω, -ίσω, 3, 2, 9, = παιανίζω, wh. see.

πάλαι, adv. *long ago, formerly*.

παλαιός, ὁ, ὄν, (πάλαι) *ancient*: τὸ παλαιόν, *anciently*, 3, 4, 7.

πάλιν, adv. *back, back again*, 1, 3, 16; *again*, 1, 10, 6.

παλλακίς, ἴδος, ἡ, (πάλλαξ, *a maiden*) *a concubine*, 1, 10, 2.

παλτόν, οὐ, τό, (πάλλω, *to brandish*) *anything brandished or thrown, a dart, javelin, light spear*, 1, 5, 15.

παμπληθής, ἐς, (πᾶς, πλήθος) *very numerous, vast* (in multitude), 3, 2, 11.

πάμπολυς, -πόλλη, -πολυ, (πᾶς, πολὺς) *very numerous*, 2, 4, 26.

πανούργος, ον, (πᾶς, ἔργον) of one who can do anything, either good or bad, *corrupt, unprincipled*, 2, 6, 26; sup. 2, 5, 39.

παντάσιν, adv. (πάντα, πᾶσιν) *wholly*, 1, 2, 1; *above all*, 3, 1, 38.

πανταχῇ, adv. (πᾶς) *everywhere*, 2, 5, 7.

πανταχοῦ, adv. (πᾶς) *everywhere*.

πάντη, adv. (πᾶς) *everywhere, on all sides*, 1, 2, 22.

παντοδαπός, ἡ, ὄν, (πᾶς) *of every variety*, 1, 2, 22.

πάντοθεν, adv. (πᾶς, -θεν) *on all sides*, 3, 1, 12.

παντοῖος, α, ον, (πᾶς) *of every sort*, 1, 5, 2.

πάνν, adv. (πᾶς) *altogether, very*, 1, 8, 14.

πάσμαι, πόσμαι, πέπᾶμαι, ἐπασάμην, *to acquire, to possess*, used chiefly in pf. and plupf. 1, 9, 19. ἐπέπατο: 3, 3, 18.

παρά, prep. w. gen. dat. and acc., *along by the side of, near*; —w. gen. *from beside, from*, 1, 3, 16; *by, παρά πάντων* (the agent), 1, 9, 1; —w. dat. *by the side of, near*, 1, 3, 7; —w. acc. *to the side of, to* (w. verb of motion), ἦλθον παρά, 1, 4, 3; *near* (w. verb of rest), ἔρμουν παρά, 1, 4, 3; *along by, near*, 1, 5, 5; 1, 2, 13; —of time, *during, at*, 2, 3, 15; —denoting opposition, *contrary to*, παρά τὰς σπονδὰς, 1, 9, 8; παρά τὴν δόξαν, *contrary to expectation*, 2, 1, 18. In comp. the various meanings above; and also the idea *amiss*. See H. 646. K. § 167. 5.

παραβαίω, (παρά, βαίω, wh. see) *to transgress*.

παραγγέλλω, (παρά, ἀγγέλλω, wh. see) *to announce, to send orders*, w. dat. and infin. 1, 2, 1; *to summon, to call*, εἰς τὰ ἔπλα, 1, 5, 13; *to command*, w. dat. 1, 8, 3; *to give* (the watchword, τὸ σύνθημα), 1, 8, 16; *κατὰ τὰ παραγγελμένα*, *according to the orders which had been given*, 2, 2, 8.

παραίγνομαι, (παρά, γίγνομαι, wh. see) *to come*, 1, 1, 11; 3, 4, 38; *to arrive*, w. eis and acc. 1, 2, 3; ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, 1, 7, 12.

παράγω, (παρά, ἄγω, wh. see) to lead along, 3, 4, 14 and 21.

παράδεισος, ου, δ, (a Persian word) a park, 1, 2, 7.

παράδιδωμι, (παρά, δίδωμι, wh. see) to deliver up, w. acc. and dat. 3, 4, 2; τὰ ὅπλα, 2, 1, 8, ff.

παρὰθαρύνω or -σύνω, (παρά, θαρρύνω, θάρρος) to encourage, 2, 4, 1; 3, 1, 39.

παραινέω, ὦ, (παρά, αἰνέω, αἰνέσω, ἤνεσα, ἤνεκα, ἤνημαι, ἡνέθην) to exhort, to advise, 1, 7, 2.

παρακαλέω, ὦ, (παρά, καλέω, wh. see) to call to (one), to summon, 1, 6, 5; ἐπὶ w. acc. to exhort to, 3, 1, 24 and 36; to encourage, 3, 1, 44.

παρακελεύομαι, (παρά, κελεύω, -εύσω) to exhort, to urge, 1, 7, 9.

παρακολουθεῖν, ὦ, (παρά, ἀκολουθεῖν, ὦ, -ῆσω) to accompany, to follow, 3, 3, 4.

παραλυπέω, (παρά, λυπέω, ὦ, -ῆσω) to make trouble, to be refractory, 2, 5, 29.

παραιβεσθαι, (παρά, ἀμείβομαι, ἀμείψομαι) to pass by, 1, 10, 10.

παραιλέω, ὦ, (παρά, ἀμελέω, ὦ, -ῆσω, ἡμέληκα) to neglect, to disregard, w. gen. 2, 5, 7.

παρὰμένω, (παρά, μένω, wh. see) to stay beside, to remain, 2, 6, 2.

παρὰμηρίδιος, ον, (παρά, μὲρος thigh) along the thigh; as subst. τὰ παρ., armor for the thighs, cuisses, 1, 8, 6.

παρὰπλῆσιος, ον, also α, ον, (παρά, πλησίον near) similar, w. dat. 1, 3, 18; 1, 5, 2.

παρὰσάγγης, ου, δ, a parasang, a Persian measure of length, somewhat more than a league, 1, 2, 5 and often.

παρασκευάζω, -άσω, παρεσκεύασα, παρεσκεύακα, παρεσκεύασμαι, (παρά, σκευάζω) to prepare;—mid. to prepare for one's self, to make ready, to procure, 1, 9, 27; to make preparation, 1, 10, 6; 3, 1, 14;—pass. to be prepared, 1, 8, 1.

παρασκευή, ἥς, ἡ, (παρά, σκευή equipment) preparation, 1, 2, 4.

παρασκηνέω, ὦ, (παρά, σκηνή) to encamp near, w. dat. 3, 1, 28.

παρατάττω or -σώ, (παρά, τάττω, wh. see) to arrange along by, to draw up in battle array; pass. 1, 10, 10.

παρὰτείνω, (παρά, τείνω, wh. see) to stretch along; to extend, pass. 1, 7, 15, παρὰτετάτο.

παρεγγυάω, ὦ, -ῆσω, (παρά, ἐγγυάω to hand over) to pass along, to give the word of command, to exhort.

παρίεμι, (παρά, εἰμί, wh. see) to be present, 1, 1, 1 and 2: to have come, to arrive, παρῆσαν εἰς, 1, 2, 2; w. dat. 1, 4, 2; τὰ παρόντα πράγματα, the present affairs, 1, 3, 3; cf. 3, 1, 34; ἐν τῷ παρόντι, in the present crisis, at present, 2, 5, 8.

παρίεμι, (παρά, εἰμι, wh. see) to pass along, to go by, 3, 2, 35; 3, 4, 37; to come along, 3, 4, 48.

παρὰλαύνω, (παρά, λαύνω, wh. see) to march along, to march by, 1, 2, 16; to ride past, ride by, w. acc. 1, 2, 17; cf. 1, 8, 12.

παρέρχομαι, (παρά, ἔρχομαι, wh. see) to pass along by the side of, to pass by, 1, 4, 4; 3, 4, 39; w. acc. to pass, pass through, 1, 7, 17; of time, to elapse, 1, 7, 18.

παρέχω, (παρά, ἔχω, wh. see) to furnish, provide: φόβον παρ., to in-

spire fear, 3, 1, 18; ταπεινούς παρασχῆν, to render submissive, 2, 5, 13; παρέχοντες ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς, yielding ourselves, 2, 3, 22;—mid. to furnish for one's self, to procure, obtain, 2, 6, 27. See πρᾶγμα.

παρθένος, ου, ἡ, a maiden, 3, 2, 25.

παρήμι, (παρά, ἴμι, wh. see) to let pass, to allow.

πάροδος, ου, ἡ, (παρά, ὁδός) a way by, a passage, a pass, 1, 4, 4; a narrow way, 1, 7, 17.

παροίχομαι, (παρά, οἶχομαι) παροίχησθαι, παρόχημαι (pf. in the simple verb not Attic) to have past by: τὰ παρόχημένα, the past, 2, 4, 1.

Παρράσιος, ου, ὁ, a Parrhasian, an inhabitant of Parrhasia, a city in the S.W. part of Arcadia.

Παρύσατις, ἰδος, ἡ, Parysätis.

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, gen. παντός, πάντος, παντός, every, all; before the article, all, πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός, all the way, 2, 5, 9; without the article, every, πᾶσα ὁδός, every way, 2, 5, 9; between the article and noun it is emphatic, all, the whole: ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔρχεσθαι, to resort to every means, 3, 1, 18.

Πασίων, ωνος, ὁ, Pasion, 1, 4, 7.

πάσχω, πείσομαι, πέπονθα, aor. ἔπαθον, to receive any impression whether of pleasure or of pain: εὖ πάσχειν, to receive a favor; ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου, in return for the favors which I received from him, 1, 3, 4; oftener of pain or misfortune, κακῶς πάσχειν, to be ill-treated, to suffer harm, 3, 3, 7; so in genr. πάσχειν τι, to suffer any harm, 1, 8, 20 and often.

Παταγῆς, ου, ὁ, Patagyās.

πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ, a father.

πάτριος, α, ὁν, (πατήρ) belonging to a father, paternal, 3, 6, 16.

πατρίς, ἰδος, ἡ, (πατήρ) fatherland, native land, 1, 3, 6; plur. 3, 1, 8.

πατρῷος, φᾶ, φων, (πατήρ) inherited from a father, paternal, 1, 7, 6.

παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, πέπαυκα, πέπαυμαι, ἐπαύσθην (Ion. and old Att. ἐπαύθην) to cause to cease, to stop, 2, 5, 13; to put a stop to, w. acc. 2, 5, 2;—mid. to cease (intrans.) 1, 3, 12; 1, 2, 2; w. gen. to cease from, 1, 6, 6.

πᾶω, see πάομαι.

πεδῖον, ου, τό, (πέδον, ground) a plain, 1, 1, 2.

πεῖθ, adv. (in form dat. sing. fem. fr. πεζός, pertaining to the foot) on foot, 3, 4, 49: διαβατὸς πεῖθ, passable on foot, fordable, 1, 4, 18.

πειθαρχέω, ᾠ, ἤσω, (πέλω, ἀρχή) to yield to authority: καλῶς πειθαρχεῖν, the yielding honorable obedience, 1, 9, 17.

πέλω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέπεικα, (intrans. πέποιθα, to trust), πέπεισμαι, ἐπέλσθην, to persuade, w. acc. 1, 3, 19;—pass. to be persuaded, 1, 3, 19;—mid. to persuade one's self, to yield to, to obey, w. dat. 1, 3, 6.

πεινᾶω, ᾠ, ἤσω, (see H. 371. c. K. § 97. 3), (πεινᾶ, hunger) to be hungry, to suffer hunger, 1, 9, 27.

πεῖρα, ας, ἡ, (πειράω) an attempt, trial, proof: ἐν πεῖρᾳ τινός, in intimate acquaintance with any one, 1, 9, 1; πεῖραν ἔχειν τινός, to have an acquaintance with any one, 3, 2, 16.

πειράω, ᾠ, ᾠσω, much oftener as dep. mid. πειράομαι, ᾠμαι, ᾠσομαι, to try, attempt, w. infin. 2, 5, 41;

w. gen. 3, 2, 38; w. *ὅπως* and sub-junc. 3, 2, 3.

*πειστέος*, α, ον, verb. adj. (*πείθω*) to be persuaded, or to be obeyed, in the latter sense w. dat. 2, 6, 8.

*Πελοποννήσιος*, α, ον, *Peloponnesian*; as subst. α *Peloponnesian*.

*Πελοπόννησος*, ου, ἡ, *Peloponnēsus*.

*Πέλται*, ὦν, αἱ, *Peltæ*, 1, 2, 10.

*πελταστής*, οὔ, δ, (*πέλτη*) α *peltast*, *targeteer*, a soldier who carried, instead of the large, heavy shield (*ἀσπίς* or *ὄπλον*), a small, light shield (*πέλτη*); and instead of the long and heavy spear (*δόρυ*), a short and light javelin (*ἀκόντιον*).

*πελταστικός*, ἡ, ὄν, (*πέλτη*) *belonging to a peltast*: τὸ *πελταστικόν*, the *targeteer forces*, the *battalion of targeteers*, 1, 8, 5.

*πέλτη*, ης, ἡ, α *target*, a small, light shield in the shape of a half moon, without rim (*ἵψος*), with a frame of wicker work, and covered generally with a goat-skin, 2, 1, 6; (2) α *pole*, or *spear*, 1, 10, 12.

*πέμπτος*, η, ον, *fifth*.

*πέμπω*, *πέμψω*, *ἐπέμψα*, *πέπομφα*, *πέπεμμαι*, *ἐπέμφθην*, to send, 1, 1, 8 and often.—Mid. *πέμπεσθαι τινα*, to send for any one = *μεταπέμπεσθαι*.

*πένομαι*, only in pres. and impf. to toil, to live in poverty, 3, 2, 26.

*πεντακόσιοι*, αι, α, *five hundred*.

*πέντε*, *five*.

*πεντήκοντα*, *fifty*.

*πεντηκοντήρ*, ἦρος, δ, α *commander of fifty men*, 3, 4, 21.

*πεντηκοστύς*, ὅος, ἡ, α *company of fifty men*, a *half lochus*, 3, 4, 22.

*πέρ*, enclit. particle, perh. fr. *πέρη*,

annexed to various words, imparting to them an additional emphasis.

*περαίνω*, *περανῶ*, *ἐπεράνα*, *πετέρασμαι*, (*πέρας*, a limit) to bring to an end, to accomplish, 3, 1, 47: *ἐργῶν περαίνεσθαι*, to be carried into execution, 3, 2, 32.

*πέραν*, on the other side, (genr. of a body of water) w. gen. 1, 5, 10: τὸ *πέραν*, the other side, w. gen. 3, 5, 2.

*πέρδιξ*, ἴκος, δ or ἡ, α *partridge*.

*περί*, prep. w. gen. dat. and acc. (1) w. gen. concerning, for, Lat. *de*, 1, 5, 8; 2, 1, 12: *περί πλείστου* and *περί παντὸς ποιέισθαι*, to consider (lit. make) (a thing) of the highest importance, 1, 9, 7 and 16. (2) w. dat. around, 1, 5, 8. (3) w. acc. around, 1, 2, 12; 1, 6, 4. In compos. the above meanings, and also intens. See H. 649. K. § 167. 2.

*περιγίγνομαι*, (*περί*, *γίγνομαι*, wh. see) to be superior to, surpass, conquer, w. gen. 1, 1, 10; 2, 1, 13.

*περλεῖμι*, (*περί*, *εἶμι*) to be superior, 1, 8, 13; to surpass, w. gen. 1, 9, 24.

*περιέχω*, (*περί*, *έχω*, wh. see) to hold around, to encompass, 1, 2, 22.

*περιμένω*, (*περί*, *μένω*, wh. see) to remain around, to wait for, 2, 1, 3.

*Περίνθιος*, ου, δ, α *Perinthian*.

*Περίνθος*, ου, ἡ, *Perinthus*, a city of Thrace on the Propontis; afterwards called *Heraclēa*.

*πéριξ*, adv. (*περί*) around, round about, 2, 5, 14.

*περίοδος*, ου, ἡ, (*περί*, *δδός*) a going round; a circumference, 3, 4, 7 and 11: τοῦ κύκλου ἡ *περίοδος*, the entire circumference.

*περίπατος*, ου, δ, (*περί*, *πατέω* to

walk) a walking about, a walk, 2, 4, 15.

περιπίπτω, (περί, πίπτω, wh. see) to fall round about, to fall upon and embrace, 1, 8, 28.

περιπλέω, (περί, πλέω, wh. see) to sail around, 1, 2, 21.

περιπτύσσω, f. -ξω, (περί, πτύσσω) to fold around, 1, 10, 9.

περιρρέω, (περί, ρέω, to flow) to flow around; pass. to be surrounded, encompassed, 1, 5, 4.

περιστερά, ἄς, ἡ, a dove, a pigeon, 1, 4, 9.

περιττός, ἡ, ὄν, or -σός, ἡ, ὄν, (περί) over and above: τὰ περιττά, the articles which are superfluous, 3, 2, 28; the things that are left, 3, 3, 1.

περίφοβος, ὄν, (περί, φόβος) much terrified, 3, 1, 12.

Πέρσης, ὄν, δ, a Persian.

πέτομαι, πτήσομαι, aor. ἐπτόμην or ἐπτάμην, to fly, 1, 5, 3.

πεφυλαγμένως, adv. (fr. pf. pass. particip. of φυλάττω) cautiously, 2, 4, 24.

πῆ, interrog. how, in what manner. —Indef. written also πῆ (enclit.) in some way: πῇ μὲν ... πῇ δέ, in one respect ... in another respect, 3, 1, 12.

πηγή, ἡς, ἡ, a spring, source; comm. plur. 1, 2, 7, ff.

πηλός, οὗ, δ, clay, mud, 1, 5, 7.

πῆχυς, εως, δ, a cubit.

Πίγρης, ἦτος, δ, Pigres, interpreter of Cyrus.

πιέζω, -έσω, to press, squeeze: pass. to be hard pressed, 3, 4, 27; to be oppressed (physically), 3, 4, 48; to be persecuted, to be oppressed, 1, 10.

πίμπλημι, πλήσω, ἐπλησα, πέπληκα, πέπλησμαι, ἐπλήσθην, to fill, w. acc. and gen. 1, 5, 10.

πίνω, f. πίομαι, aor. ἐπιοι, pf. πέπωκα, pass. or mid. pf. πέπομαι, aor. pass. ἐπόθην, to drink.

πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, πέπτωκα, ἐπεσον, to fall, 1, 9, 31.

Πισίδης, ὄν, δ, a Pisidian. Pisidia was S.E. of Lydia.

πιστεύω, εὔσω, (πίστις) to trust, to place confidence in, w. dat. 1, 3, 16.

πίστις, εως, ἡ, (πείθω, πείθομαι) faith, confidence, 1, 6, 3; fidelity, 3, 3, 4; that which gives confidence, an assurance, a pledge, in plur. 1, 2, 26.

πιστός, ἡ, ὄν, (πείθω) faithful, 1, 4, 15; 1, 6, 3; trusted, 2, 5, 22.

πιστότης, ἦτος, ἡ, (πιστός) fidelity, 1, 8, 29.

πλάγιος, ἰα, ἰον, oblique: εἰς πλάγιον, sideways, 1, 8, 10; εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγόν, having filed off right and left; τὰ πλάγια, the sides, the flanks.

πλαίσιον, ὄν, τό, a rectangle: πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον, an equilateral rectangle, i. e. a square, 3, 4, 19; also πλαίσιον alone, in military language, a square; ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει, in a solid square, 1, 8, 9; cf. 3, 2, 36.

πλανόμαι, ὦμαι, -ήσομαι, (πλάνη, a wandering) to wander, 1, 2, 25.

πλάσσω, Att. πλάττω, f. πλάσω, to form, mould: ψευδῇ, to fabricate falsehoods, 2, 6, 26.

πλεθριαῖος, αἶα, αἶον, (πλέθρον) of the length of a πλέθρον: ποταμὸν τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον, a river a plethron in width, 1, 5, 4.

πλέθρον, ου, τό, a *plethron*, a measure of length, 101 English feet, 1, 2, 5.

πλείστος, η, ον, sup. of πολύς.

πλείων, ον, comp. of πολύς.

πλέκω, πλέξω, ἐπλεξα, πέπλεχα, πέπλεγμαι, ἐπλάκην (ᾱ), rare ἐπλέχθην, to twine; to plan, construct, make, 3, 3, 18.

πλεονεκτέω, ὦ, ἤσω, = πλέον ἔχειν, to have more, have the advantage, w. dat. of thing and gen. of person, 3, 1, 37.

πλευρά, ᾱς, ἡ, a side, a flank, 3, 2, 37.

πλέω, πλεύσομαι or πλευσοῦμαι, πέπλευκα, ἐπλευσα, πέπλευσμαι, late ἐπλεύσθην, to sail, 1, 7, 15.

πληγή, ἥς, ἡ, (πλήττω) a blow: πληγὰς ἐμβάλλειν, to inflict blows, 1, 5, 11.

πλήθος, εος, οὖς, τό, multitude, 1, 7, 4; 3, 1, 37: πλ. χώρας, extent of country, 1, 5, 9.

πλήθω, a collateral form of πῖμ-πλημι, but intrans. to be full: πλήθουσα ἀγορά, full market, i. e. from 9 A. M. till noon, 1, 8, 1.

πλήν, prep. w. gen. except, 1, 9, 9. —Conj. except, but, 1, 8, 20; except that, save that, 1, 2, 24; 1, 8, 25.

πλήρης, ες, εος, οὖς, (πλέος, full) full, w. gen. 1, 2, 7; 1, 4, 9.

πλησίον, (neut. of πλησίος, near) near, 1, 8, 1; 2, 2, 18; ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ, in the neighboring park, 2, 4, 16; cf. 3, 4, 9.

πλήσσω, Att. -ττω, πλήξω, ἐπλήξα, πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην or less comm. ἐπλήχθην, (used in Att. only in pf. plupf. and pass.; other parts from πατάσσω) to strike.

πλίνθινος, ἰνη, ἰνον, (πλίνθος) of brick, 3, 4, 11.

πλίνθος, ου, ἡ, brick: πλ. ὀπτή, burnt brick, 2, 4, 12; also πλ. κεραμία, potter's brick, i. e. burnt brick, 3, 4, 7.

πλοῖον, ου, τό, (πλέω) a boat, a ship, 1, 3, 17; esp. a transport, a merchant vessel, 1, 7, 15.

ποδήρης, ες, (πούς, ποδός, and root ἄρ. denoting to join) reaching to the feet, 1, 8, 9.

ποδίζω, -ίσω or -ιῶ, (πούς) to fetter, 3, 4, 35.

πόθος, ου, ὁ, a fond desire, longing for something, w. gen. 3, 1, 3.

ποιέω, ὦ, ἤσω, to make, 1, 5, 5; 1, 2, 9; to make, appoint, 1, 1, 2; to create, inspire, φόβον, 1, 8, 18;—to do, 1, 1, 11; 2, 6, 9; π. εὖ or κακῶς, to do good or harm to, to treat well or ill, w. acc. 1, 4, 8; 1, 6, 7; cf. 1, 9, 11; π. κατὰ w. acc. of pers. to inflict, to bring upon, 2, 5, 5; cf. 3, 2, 3;—mid. to make or do for one's self, 1, 1, 6; 1, 2, 1; to regard, consider, εἶρημα, 2, 3, 18;—pass. to be made or done, 1, 5, 10; 1, 8, 12.

ποιητέος, α, ον, (verb. adj. fr. ποιέω) to be made or done: ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον, this must not be done by me, i. e. I must not do this, 1, 3, 15; cf. 3, 1, 18.

ποικίλος, η, ον, (ι) many-colored, 1, 5, 8.

ποῖος, ποία, ποῖον, of what sort: τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως στρατηγόν, the general from what city, 3, 1, 14.

πολεμέω, ὦ, ἤσω, (πόλεμος) to carry on war, w. dat. with any one, i. e. against, etc. 2, 6, 2; also ἐπὶ or πρὸς w. acc.

πολεμικός, ἡ, ὄν, (πόλεμος) *war-like, skilled in the art of war*, 2, 6, 1: τὰ πολεμικά, *military affairs*, 3, 1, 38.

πολέμιος, ἰα, ἰον, (πόλεμος) *hostile*, 1, 6, 8; 3, 1, 2: πολ. ἱππείας, *hostile horsemen, horsemen of the enemy*, 2, 2, 14; ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ, *sc. γῇ, in the enemy's country*, 3, 3, 5; comp. -ώτερος, 1, 5, 16; sup. -ώτατος: τὰ πολέμια, *military affairs*, 1, 6, 1.

πόλεμος, ου, ὁ, *war*: τὰ εἰς τὸν π. ἔργα, *military exercises*, 1, 9, 5; διὰ π. 3, 2, 8; τὸν θεῶν πόλ., *a war with the gods*, 2, 5, 7.

πολιορκέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (πόλις, εἰργω) *to invest, or ἔρκος a fence to invest a city, to besiege*, 3, 4, 8 and 12.

πόλις, εως, ἡ, *a city*, 1, 2, 1 and often.

πολιτεύω, εὔσω, (πολίτης) *to be a citizen, to live as citizen*, 3, 2, 26.

πολίτης, ου, ὁ, (πόλις) *a citizen*.

πολλάκις, ἀδν. (πολύς) *often*.

πολλαπλάσιος, ἰα, ἰον, (πολύς) *manifold more*, 1, 7, 3; w. gen. 3, 2, 14.

πολύανθρωπος, ου, (πολύς, ἄνθρωπος) *porcupine*, 2, 4, 13.

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, gen. πολλοῦ, ἡς, οὔ, of quantity or number, *much, many*: οἱ πολλοί, *the many, the majority*, 2, 3, 16; 3, 1, 10; τὸ πολὺ, *the principal part, the greater part*, 1, 7, 20; 1, 4, 13; ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ, *for the most part*, 3, 1, 42; ἐπὶ πολὺ, *a great distance*, 1, 8, 8; ἐκ πολλοῦ, *from a great distance*, 3, 3, 9;—πολύ, as adv. *much, far*, 1, 5, 3; w. comp. and sup. intens. πολὺν θάπτον, *far quicker*, 1, 5, 2;—πολλά, in

*many respects, much*. Comp. πλείων or πλέων, ἐκ πλέονος, *from a greater distance*, 1, 10, 11; neut. πλείων or πλέον, *more*, 1, 2, 11; sup. πλείστος, *most*, πλείστοι, *very many*, 1, 5, 2; οἱ πλείστοι, *the most*.

Πολύστρατος, ου, ὁ, *Polystратus*. πολυτελής, ἐς, (πολύς, τέλος *expense*) *expensive, costly*, 1, 5, 8.

πονέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (πόνος) *to toil, to undergo hardship*, 2, 6, 6.

πονηρός, ᾧ, ὄν, (πονέω) *causing toil; bad, base*, 2, 5, 21; 2, 6, 29: πονηρὰ τάξις, *a bad, etc.* 3, 4, 19; *useless*, 3, 4, 35.

πονηρῶς or πονήρως, ἀδν. (πονηρός) *with difficulty*, 3, 4, 19.

πόνος, ου, ὁ, (πένω or πένομαι, *to toil*) *labor, toil*, 2, 5, 18.

πορεία, ας, ἡ, (πορεύω) *the act of going, a journey, a march*, 2, 2, 10.

πορευτός, α, ου, verb. adj. fr. πορεύω, *to be passed over, must be passed over*, 2, 5, 18; impers. 2, 2, 12, w. acc.

πορεύω, -εὔσω, *to convey*; comm. dep. pass. πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, πε- πόρευμαι, ἐπορεύθην, *to have one's self conveyed, to go, proceed*, 1, 2, 1; παρὰ w. acc. 1, 3, 7; ἐπὶ w. acc. *against, etc.* 2, 1, 4; w. cogn. acc. 2, 2, 11 and 12.

πορίζω, -ίσω or -ιῶ, (πόρος) *to furnish, provide*, 2, 3, 5; 3, 3, 20;—mid. *to provide for one's self, to procure*, 2, 1, 6.

πόρος, ου, ὁ, (πείρω, *to pierce through*) *a passage, a way, means*; plur. *resources*, 2, 5, 20.

πὸρρω, *forwards, farther*; *far*, w. gen. *far from*, 1, 3, 12.

πορφύρεος, α, ου, contr. -ρούς, -ρᾶ,

-ροῦν, (πορφύρα, the purple fish) purple, 1, 5, 8.

πόσος, η, ον, how large? how much? quantus; genr. in a direct question. Also in an indirect question, πόση τις χώρα, how large a country, etc. 2, 4, 21.

ποταμός, οὔ, δ, (akin to ποτόν) a river, 1, 5, 10.

ποτέ, enclit. on a certain occasion, once, ever: in a question like tandem, ὅποι ποτέ, where in the world, 3, 5, 13.

πότερος, ἑρα, ερον, which of both? which of the two? — πότερον or πότερα: interrogative particle. In direct questions not rendered into Eng. In indirect questions, whether.

ποτόν, οὔ, τό, (root πο. in pf. of πίνω, to drink) drink, 1, 10, 18.

πότος, ου, δ, (root πο. in pf. of πίνω, to drink) the act of drinking: παρὰ πότον, at a symposium or banquet, 2, 3, 15.

πού, where? comm. in a direct question; also indirect, 2, 4, 15.

πού, enclit. somewhere, 2, 2, 15: ἤν που, if anywhere, 1, 2, 27.

πούς, ποδός, δ, a foot.

πράγμα, ατος, τό, (πράττω) a thing done, an occurrence, affair, 1, 5, 13; often plur. affairs, esp. difficult or unpleasant affairs, hence difficulties, 1, 3, 3; 2, 1, 16: πράγματα παρέχειν, w. dat. to occasion difficulty, give trouble to, 1, 1, 11.

πρᾶγῃς, ἐς, inclined forward, Lat. pronus, steep (down), 1, 5, 8: εἰς τὸ πρᾶγῃς, down the steep declivity, 3, 4, 25.

πράξις, εως, ἡ, (πράττω) the act of doing, business; enterprise, 1, 3, 16;

εἰς ταύτας τὰς σὺν Κύρῳ πράξεις, into those undertakings, etc. 2, 6, 17.

πράττω, πράξω, ἔπραξα, πέπραχα, πέπραγμα, ἐπράχθην, to do, perform: εὖ πράττειν, καλῶς πράττειν, to be fortunate, to be successful, 3, 1, 6; κακῶς πράττειν, to fare ill; κἄκιον πράττειν, to be more unfortunate, 1, 9, 10; οὕτω πράξαντες, having fared thus, 3, 4, 6.

πρᾶος, πραιῖα, πρᾶον, plur. πρᾶοι or πραιῖς, πραιῖαι, πραιᾶ, mild, gentle; tame, 1, 4, 9.

πρᾶως or πρᾶως, (πρᾶος or πρᾶος) mildly, tamely, 1, 5, 14.

πρέπει, impf. ἔπρεπε, it is becoming, suited to, w. dat. 1, 9, 6; 3, 2, 16: cf. Lat. decet.

πρεσβεύω, -εύσω, (πρέσβυς) to be an elder; to be an envoy, 2, 1, 18.

πρέσβυς, υος or εως, δ, an old man; an envoy, 3, 1, 28.

πρεσβύτερος, α, ον, elder, 1, 1, 1; and πρεσβύτατος, η, ον, eldest, 2, 1, 10: comp. and sup. of πρέσβυς, as adj. old.

πρᾶσθαι, indic. ἐπρίμην, used only in the aor. (pres. etc. see ὠρέομαι) to purchase, 1, 5, 6; 3, 1, 20.

πρὶν, before, sooner than, until, w. indic. 1, 2, 26; w. optat. 1, 2, 2; w. ἄν and subjunc. 1, 1, 10; w. infin. 1, 4, 13 and 16; 1, 8, 19.

πρό, prep. w. gen. of place, before, in front of, 1, 7, 11; of time, before, 1, 7, 13; other relations, before, in preference to, for, in behalf of. In compos. before, for, forward.

προαγορεύω, -εύσω, (πρό, ἀγορεύω) to tell) to tell beforehand, to publish, to declare, 2, 2, 20.

προαισθάνομαι, (πρό, αἰσθάνομαι,



wh. see) *to observe beforehand*, 1, 1, 7.

προβαίνω, (πρό, βαίνω, wh. see) *to go forward, advance*, 3, 1, 13.

προβάλλω, (πρό, βάλλω, wh. see) *to cast forward or before*; mid. *to cast before one's self*, τὰ ἑπ' αὐτῷ, *to present*, 1, 2, 17.

πρόβατον, ου, τό, (προβαίνω) *that which goes forward, an animal*: comm. plur. *animals*, esp. *sheep*, *flocks of sheep*, 2, 4, 27; 3, 5, 9.

προβουλεύω, (πρό, βουλεύω, -εύω) *to contrive before*; *to deliberate for*, *to provide for*, w. gen. 3, 1, 37.

πρόγονος, ου, δ, (πρό, γίγνομαι) *an ancestor*, 3, 2, 11.

προδίδωμι, (πρό, δίδωμι, wh. see) *to give beforehand*; *to give away*, *to abandon*, 1, 3, 5; *to betray*, 2, 2, 8.

προδιώκω, (πρό, διώκω, -ξω) *to follow forth*, *to pursue*, 3, 3, 10.

προδότης, ου, δ, (προδίδωμι) *a traitor*, 2, 5, 27.

προείδον, (πρό, εἶδον) aor. 2d of προοράω, wh. see.

πρόεμι, (πρό, εἶμι) *to go forward, advance*, 1, 3, 1; *to go before*, 1, 4, 18.

προεῖπον, (πρό, εἶπον, wh. see) *to say beforehand*; *to proclaim*, *to announce*, 1, 2, 17.

προελαύνω, (πρό, ελαύνω, wh. see) *to drive forward*; sc. ἵππον, *to ride forward*, 1, 10, 16; 3, 4, 39.

προέρχομαι, (πρό, ἔρχομαι, wh. see) *to go before, go forward*, 2, 3, 3; 3, 3, 6.

προέχω, (πρό, ἔχω, wh. see) *to have beforehand*; *to surpass*, *to have the advantage*, 3, 2, 19.

προθυμέομαι, οὔμαι, (πρό, θυμέομαι,

-ήσομαι, πρόθυμος) *to be zealous, to be earnestly desirous*, 1, 9, 24; 2, 4, 7; 3, 1, 9.

προθυμία, ας, ἡ, (πρόθυμος) *eagerness, zeal, good-will*, 1, 9, 18.

πρόθυμος, ον, (πρό, θυμός) *willing, eager, zealous*, 1, 3, 19. Comp. -ότερος, 3, 2, 15.

προθύμως, adv. (πρόθυμος) *zealously, willingly, eagerly*, comp. προθυμότερον, 1, 4, 9; 1, 10, 10.

προθύω, (πρό, θύω, -ύω) *to sacrifice beforehand*; *to sacrifice for* (any one).

προτίμη, (πρό, τίμη, wh. see) *to send forward, send forth*; *to throw away, to give up*; comm. mid. *to give up* (on one's own account), *to abandon*, 1, 9, 9 and 10; *to commit to, entrust to*, w. dat. 1, 9, 12.

προτίστημι, (πρό, ἵστημι, wh. see) *to place before*;—in the intrans. parts (see ἵστημι) *to stand before, to command*, w. gen. 1, 2, 1.

προκαλύπτω, (πρό, καλύπτω, -ψω) *to place a covering before, to cover, conceal*, 3, 4, 8.

προκατακαίω, (πρό, κατά, καίω, wh. see) *to burn down before*; of a country, *to lay waste before* (any one), 1, 6, 2.

προκαταλαμβάνω, (πρό, κατά, λαμβάνω, wh. see) *to seize upon beforehand*, 1, 3, 14 and 16.

Προκλής, έος, οὗς, δ, Procles, 2, 1, 3.

προμετωπίδιον, ου, τό, (πρό, μέτωπον, forehead) *a covering for the forehead, a frontlet* (of horses), 1, 8, 7.

Πρόξενος, ου, δ, Proxenus.

προοράω, ὦ, (πρό, ὁράω, wh. see) *to see before, see in front*, 1, 8, 20.

προπέμπω, (πρό, πέμπω, wh. see) *to send before or forward*; pass. 2, 15.

προπονέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (πρό, πονέω) *to toil for, in behalf of*, 3, 1, 37.

πρός, prep. w. gen. dat. or acc.—(1) w. gen. *by*, denoting an agent or doer w. pass. and neut. verbs, 1, 9, 20; *on the part of*, 3, 1, 5; πρὸς ὑμῶν, *on your part*, 2, 3, 18; often w. oaths and entreaties, πρὸς θεῶν, *in the presence of the gods, by the gods*, 2, 1, 17; πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, *in the sight of gods and of men*, 1, 6, 6; *in keeping with*, πρὸς τοῦ ... τρόπου, 1, 2, 11; *towards*, πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, 1, 10, 3.—(2) w. dat. *near, close to*, πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ, 1, 8, 4 and 14; *in addition to*, πρὸς τούτοις, 3, 2, 33.—(3) w. acc. *to, towards*, of place, of persons, of time, 1, 7, 13 and often; *in respect to*, πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι, 1, 3, 19; *in accordance with, in view of*, 2, 3, 21; cf. πρὸς φιλίαν, *in accordance with friendship, i. e. in a friendly manner*, 1, 3, 19; *against* (in a hostile sense), πρὸς αὐτόν, 1, 1, 8; πρὸς βασιλέα, 1, 3, 21; *to, for*, πρὸς ἄριστον, 1, 10, 19; 2, 5, 20; in compos. *to, towards, near, in addition to*. H. 653. K. § 167. 6.—As adv. πρὸς δ' ἔτι, *and further still*, 3, 2, 2.

προσάγω, (πρός, ἄγω, wh. see) *to lead to or against*; sc. τὸ στράτευμα, *to march against*, w. πρὸς and acc. 1, 10, 9.

προσαιτέω, ὦ, (πρός, αἰτέω, -ήσω) *to ask in addition*; προσαιτοῦσι μισθόν, *they ask additional pay*, 1, 3, 21.

προσβολή, ἦς, ἡ, (πρός, βολή the act of throwing, fr. βάλλω) *the act of throwing against, an attack*, 3, 4, 2.

προσδεῖ, (πρός, δεῖ, wh. see) *it is necessary in addition*; προσδεῖν, 3, 2, 34, *to be necessary in addition*.

προσδίδωμι, (πρός, δίδωμι, wh. see) *to give in addition*, 1, 9, 19.

προσδοκάω, ὦ, -ήσω, (the simple verb δοκάω does not occur, but δοκεύω instead) *to expect, to wait for*, 3, 1, 14.

προσελαύνω, (πρός, ἐλαύνω, wh. see) *to ride or march to or towards, or against*, 3, 5, 13: ἔτι προσήλαυνε, *was still on the march* (lit. *was marching towards*), 1, 5, 12; προσελαύνοντα, *marching against* (him), 1, 7, 16; *to ride up*, 3, 4, 39.

προσέρχομαι, (πρός, ἔρχομαι, wh. see) *to come to, w. dat.* 1, 3, 9; 3, 5, 8.

προσέχω, (πρός, ἔχω, wh. see) *to hold to*: τὸν νοῦν προσέχειν, lit. *to hold the mind to, i. e. to give one's attention to* (anything), 1, 5, 9; 2, 4, 2.

προσῆκω, (πρός, ἔκω, wh. see) *to come to or towards; to be related to*, 1, 6, 1; *to belong to*, w. dat. 3, 1, 31;—comm. impers. *it is becoming*, w. dat. and infin. 3, 2, 11; w. acc. and infin. 3, 2, 15.

πρόσθεν, adv. (πρό, πρὸς) *before*; of place, εἰς τὸ πρ. *forward*, 2, 1, 2; 1, 10, 5; τὸ πρ. τῶν ὕπλων, *the front of*, etc. 3, 1, 33; τὰ πρ. *the front, the van*, 3, 2, 36; ἐν τῷ πρ. λόγῳ, *in the foregoing narrative*, 3, 1, 1;—of time, *formerly*, 1, 6, 10; ἐν τῷ πρ. χρόνῳ, *in the foregoing time*, 2,

3, 22; πρόσθεν ... πρὶν, *until*, 1, 1, 10; *former*, ἡ πρ. ἀρετή, 1, 4, 8; cf. 1, 6, 3; and often thus as adj.: τὸ πρ., *previously*, *before*, 1, 10, 10 and 11; πρόσθεν ... ἤ, *sooner ... than*, 2, 1, 10.

προσίημι, (πρός, ἴημι, wh. see) *to send to, to suffer to come to*;—mid. *to suffer to come to one's self*; *to admit eis ταὐτό to the same place*, 3, 1, 30.

προσκαλέω, ὦ, (πρός, καλέω, wh. see) *to call to, call on*.

προσκυνέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (πρός, κυνέω *to kiss*; the simple verb is rare, has f. κύσω, aor. ἔκυσα) *to prostrate one's self before, to worship*, 3, 2, 9; it denotes also the Persian mode of saluting a person in authority by prostrating one's self, *to salute*, 1, 6, 10; 1, 8, 21.

προσλαμβάνω, (πρός, λαμβάνω, wh. see) *to take to, take with*, 1, 7, 3; *to take hold (for help), to lay hand to the work*, 2, 3, 11 and 12.

πρόσοδος, ου, ἡ, (πρός, ὁδός) *a way to*;—*an income, revenue*, comm. plur. in this sense, 1, 9, 19.

προσδύμνυμι, (πρός, δύνυμι, wh. see) *to swear besides, in addition*, 2, 2, 8.

προσποιέομαι, οὔμαι, (πρός, ποιέω) *to make to one's self, to pretend*, 1, 3, 14; *to claim for one's self, to profess*, 2, 1, 7.

προσπολεμέω, ὦ, (πρός, πολεμέω) *to carry on war against*, w. acc. 1, 6, 6.

προστάττω, (πρός, τάττω, wh. see) *to enjoin upon, τινὶ τι, to enjoin anything upon any one*, 1, 9, 18.—Pass. οἷς προσετάχθη, *those on whom it had been enjoined*, 1, 6, 10.

προστερνίδιον, ου, τό, (πρό, στέρον *the breast*) *a breastplate*, 1, 8, 7.

προστιθῆμι, (πρός, τίθῃμι, wh. see) *to place to*; mid. *to place one's self to, to agree to*, w. dat. 1, 6, 10.

πρόσω, adv. (πρό, πρόσ) *forwards*; *far*, οὐ πρόσω, *not far off*, 2, 2, 15; w. gen. πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν, *far from their sources*, 3, 2, 22; τοῦ πρόσω, *farther*, 1, 3, 1. Comp. προσωτέρω, sup. προσωτάτω.

πρόσωπον, ου, τό, (πρός, ὤψ *eye*) *the face*; often plur. of a single person, *looks*, 2, 6, 11.

προτεραίος, αἶα, αἶον, (πρότερος) *former*: τῇ προτεραίᾳ, sc. ἡμέρᾳ, *on the day before*, 2, 1, 3.

πρότερον, adv. (πρότερος) *before, previously*, 1, 7, 18.

πρότερος, ἔρα, ερον, (πρό) *sooner, earlier*, w. gen. 1, 2, 25; *previously*, 1, 4, 12.

προτιμάω, ὦ, -ήσω, (πρό, τιμάω, τιμή *honor*) *to honor before*; mid. *to gain honor before*, w. gen. προτιμήσεσθε, 1, 4, 14, or perh. in pass. sense, *you shall be honored before*; pass. *to be honored before, to be preferred*, 1, 6, 5.

προτρέχω, (πρό, τρέχω, wh. see) *to run before, run forward*, 1, 5, 2.

προφαίνω, (πρό, φαίνω, wh. see) *to show before*; mid. *to appear before, appear in the distance*, 1, 8, 1.

προφασίζομαι, -ίσομαι or -ιούμαι (πρόφασις) *to take (something) as an excuse, to allege (something) as an excuse*, w. acc. 3, 1, 25.

πρόφασις, εως, ἡ, (πρό, φημί) *excuse, pretext*, 1, 1, 7: πρόφασιν ποιεῖσθαι, *to make a pretence*, 1, 2, 1. προφύλαξ, ακος, δ, (πρό, φύλαξ) *an*

*advanced guard, a picket*, in plur. 2, 3, 2; 2, 4, 15.

προχωρέω, ὦ, ἤσω, (πρό, χωρέω) *to move forward, to advance; to prosper; to be convenient, useful*, 1, 9, 13.

πρῶτῃ, adv. (πρό) *early, in the morning; comp. πρωϊότερον or πρωϊότερον, earlier (than usual), very early*, 3, 4, 1.

πρωτεύω, (πρῶτος) *to be the first, to hold the first place*, w. dat. denoting in what respect, 2, 6, 26.

πρῶτον, adv. (πρῶτος) *first, at first, for the first time*, 2, 3, 16: πρῶτον μὲν ... εἶτα, or εἶτα δέ, 1, 2, 16; 1, 3, 2: πρῶτον μὲν ... ἔπειτα, 3, 2, 27; τὸ πρῶτον, *at first*, 1, 10, 10.

πρῶτος, ἡ, ον, (πρό) *first, of time, πρῶτος ἡγγεῖλε, I first announced, i. e. I was the first who announced*, 2, 3, 19; of rank, *first, most eminent*, 2, 6, 17; of place, τοὺς πρῶτους, *the foremost, the van*, 2, 2, 16 and 17.

πτάρνυμαι = πταίρω, f. πτᾶρῶ, aor. 1st ἐπτᾶρα, aor. 2d ἐπτᾶρον, *to sneeze*, 3, 2, 9.

πτέρυξ, ὕγος, ἡ, (πτερόν *a wing, πέτομαι*) *a wing*, 1, 5, 3.

πυκνός, ἡ, ὄν, *compact, close, dense*, 2, 3, 3.

πύλη, ἡς, ἡ, *one wing of folding doors or gates; comm. plur. πύλαι, ὦν, αἱ, a gate, an entrance, a pass*, 1, 4, 4 and 5;—also as proper name, *Pylæ, or the Pass*, 1, 5, 5.

πυνθάνομαι, πεύσομαι, πέπυσμαι, ἐπυθόμην, *to learn by inquiry, to ascertain*, 1, 7, 16; 2, 1, 4; *to ask, τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο, made this inquiry*, 3, 1, 7.

πῦρ, πυρός, τό, *fire*, 2, 5, 19; 3, 1, 3.

πυράμις, ἴδος, ἡ, (πῦρ) *a pyramid*, 3, 4, 9.

Πύραμος, ου, ὁ, *Pyramus*.

πυρός, οὔ, ὁ, (perh. fr. πῦρ, *fire*, on account of the color) *wheat; also in plur., wheat*, 1, 2, 22.

πῶ, enclit. *yet, hitherto, up to the present time; comm. after a neg. οὐκῶ, μήπω, not yet, οὐδέπω, not even yet; οὐ πρότερον ... πῶ, never before up to the present time, never before*, 1, 2, 26.

πωλέω, ὦ, ἤσω, *to sell*, 1, 5, 5.

πῶποτε, (πῶ, ποτέ) *at any time, ever, comm. in a neg. clause*, 1, 6, 11.

πῶς, adv. *how? comm. in a direct question; also, indirect*, 1, 7, 2.

πῶς, enclit. adv. *somehow, in some way, in any way: ὡδέ πως, somehow as follows*, 1, 7, 9; εἰ πως, *if in any way*, 2, 3, 18; ἄλλως πως ... ἤ, *in any other way than*, 3, 1, 20.

## P

ῥάδιος, ἰα, ἰον, *easy; comp. ῥᾶν, sup. ῥᾶστος*, 2, 6, 24.

ῥαδίως, adv. (ῥάδιος) *easily, without difficulty*, 3, 5, 9; comp. ῥᾶν, sup. ῥᾶστα.

ῥαθυμέω, ὦ, ἤσω, (ῥάδιος, θυμός) *to be of easy disposition, to lead an easy life*, 2, 6, 6.

ῥαθυμία, ας, ἡ, (ῥάδιος, θυμός) *easiness of disposition; a life of ease*, 2, 6, 5.

ῥᾶστος, see ῥάδιος.

ῥᾶν, ῥᾶν, comp. of ῥάδιος; neut. ῥᾶν as comp. of ῥαδίως.

ρέω, ρεύσομαι, comm. ρυήσομαι,

αογ. ἔρρευσα, comm. ἐρρήν, pf. ἐρρήκα, *to flow*, 1, 2, 7 and 8; 1, 7, 15.

ρίπτέω, ᾠ, collateral form of ῥίπτω, wh. see; used only in pres. and impf. 3, 3, 1.

ῥίπτω, ῥίψω, ἔρριψα, ἔρριφα, ἔρριμαι, ἐρρίφθην, *to cast, cast away*, w. acc. 1, 5, 8.

ῥύμα, ατος, τό, (ῥύω, ἐρύω *to draw*) *that which is drawn, a string*: ἐκ τόξου ῥύματος, lit. *from a bowstring*, i. e. *having a bow-shot the start*, 3, 8, 15.

ῥώμη, ης, ἡ, (ῥώννυμι) *strength*, in military language, *force*, 3, 3, 14.

ῥώννυμι, ῥώσω, ἔρωσα, ἔρωμαι, ἐρώσθην, *to strengthen*.

Σ

σαλπίζω, σαλπίζω, ἐσάλπιγα, (σάλπιγξ, *a trumpet*) *to sound the trumpet*: ἐσάλπιγξε, (one) *sounded the trumpet, the trumpet sounded*, 1, 2, 17.

Σάμιος, ου, ὁ, *a Samian*.

Σάρδεις, εων, αἱ, *Sardis*, capital of Lydia, 1, 2, 2, ff.

σατραπεύω, (σατράπης) *to be satrap, to govern as satrap, to rule*, w. acc. 1, 7, 6; w. gen. 3, 4, 31.

σατράπης, ου, ὁ, *a satrap*, a Persian governor of a province, 1, 1, 2.

Σάτυρος, ου, ὁ, *Satyrus*, 1, 2, 13.

σαφής, ἐς, *clear, plain*.

σαφῶς, adv. (σαφής) *clearly, manifestly*, 1, 4, 18.

σεαυτοῦ or σαυτοῦ, ἡς, οὐ, reflex. pron. 2d pers., *of thyself*.

σημαίνω, σημαίνω, ἐσήμηνα, (σῆμα, *a sign*) *to give a sign, to signify, to*

*show*, 2, 1, 2; often w. ὁ σαλπικτής understood, ἐπειδὴν δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι, *and when the trumpeter shall give a signal with the horn*, 2, 2, 4; cf. 3, 4, 4.

σημεῖον, ου, τό, *a sign, signal*: ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου, *at the same signal*, 2, 5, 32; τὸ βασιλεῖον σημείον, *the royal standard*, 1, 10, 12.

σῆσάμων, ου, τό, *a genus of annual herbaceous plants, cultivated in the East for their seed, which is used for food, and from which an oil is expressed; the seed of the sesame-plant, sesame*, 1, 2, 22.

σιγή, ἡς, ἡ, (akin to σιγᾶω, *to keep silence*) *silence*, 1, 8, 11.

σίγλος, ου, ὁ, *a siglos, a Persian coin, worth 7½ Attic obols*, 1, 5, 6.

σίδηρος, ου, ὁ, *iron, steel; anything made of iron or steel*.

Σικυώνιος, α, ου, *Sicyonian*; as subst. *a Sicyonian, an inhabitant of Sicyon* (Σικυών), a city on the S.E. coast of the Corinthian gulf.

Σιλανός, ου, ὁ, *Silanus*, 1, 7, 18.

σίνομαι, dep. seldom used except in pres. and impf., *to harm, injure, inflict any injury*, 3, 4, 16.

σιταγωγός, ου, ὁ, (σίτος, ἄγω) *carrying grain*, 1, 7, 15.

σιτίον, ου, τό, (σίτος) *corn, grain; food*, 1, 10, 18.

σίτος, ου, ὁ, *corn, grain*, 1, 4, 19; *food*, σ. μελίνης, *food made of panic*, 1, 5, 10; σ. ἐκ τῶν ὀποσυρίων, *food from the beasts of burden*, 2, 1, 6;— plur. τὰ σῖτα, *food*, 2, 3, 27; 3, 2, 28.

Σιττάκη, ης, ἡ, *Sittäce*.

σιωπάω, ᾠ, -ήσομαι (σιωπή, *silence*) *to keep silence, to be silent*, 1, 3, 2.

σκεδάννυμι, σκεδάσω or σκεδῶ, ἐσκεδάσα, ἐσκεδάσμαι, ἐσκεδάσθην, *to scatter*; *pass. to be scattered, dispersed*, 3, 5, 2.

σκέπασμα, ατος, τό, (σκέπάζω, *to cover*) *a covering*; *perh. as Krüger defines it, a tent-cover*, 1, 5, 10.

σκεπτέος, έα, έον, (σκέπτομαι) *verb. adj. to be considered*; *impers σκεπτέον ειναι, sc. ήμιν, that we must consider*, 1, 3, 11.

σκέπτομαι, σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι, ἐσκέφθην, (*in the pres. and impf. σκοπέω, ώ, ἐσκόπουν are far more comm.*) *to view, to consider*, 3, 2, 20.

σκευάζω, -άσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, ἐσκευάσθην, (σκευός) *to prepare*.

σκευός, εος, ους, τό, *a utensil*; *plur. σκεύη, ών, baggage*, 3, 2, 28.

σκευοφόρῶ, ώ, -ήσω, (σκευός, φέρω) *to carry baggage*, 3, 2, 28; 3, 3, 19.

σκευοφόρος, ον, (σκευός, φέρω) *carrying baggage*; *as subst. σκευοφόρος, ον, δ, baggage-carrier, sutler:—τὰ σκευοφόρα, the beasts of burden or baggage-carriers (of men or of animals)*, 1, 3, 7; 1, 10, 3, ff.

σκηνώ or σκηνέω, ώ, -ήσω, (σκηνή) *to be in a tent, to encamp*, 1, 4, 9; 2, 4, 14.

σκηνή, ής, ή, *a tent*, 1, 6, 4 and 11; *αι σκηναί, the tents, the camp*, 1, 2, 17; 3, 5, 7.

σκηνώ, ώ, (σκήνος = σκηνή) *to encamp*.

σκήνωμα, ατος, τό, (σκηνώ) *a tent*, 2, 2, 17.

σκηπτός, ού, δ, (σκήπτω, *to lean upon*; *also to fall, to dart*) *a thunder-bolt, a bolt*, 3, 1, 11.

σκηπτούχος, ου, δ, (σκήπτρον *a sceptre*, ἔχω *to hold*) *a sceptre-bearer (an officer of high rank in the Persian government, always a eunuch)*, 1, 6, 11.

σκοπέω, ώ, -ήσω, (σκοπός) *to view, observe, consider*, 2, 5, 4. (*Used chiefly in pres. and impf.; other tenses comm. fr. σκέπτομαι, wh. see.*)

σκοπός, ού, δ, *an observer*; *a scout*, 2, 2, 15.

σκοταίος, αία, αίων, (σκότος) *dark*; *σκοταίοι προσιόντες, advancing in the dark*, 2, 2, 17.

σκότος, ον, δ, and sometimes εος, ους, τό, *darkness*, 2, 2, 7; 2, 5, 7 and 9.

Σκύθης, ου, δ, *a Scythian*.

Σόλοι, ων, οί, Σόλι, *a city of Cilicia*.

Σοῦσα, ων, τά, Susa, *in the Old Testament, Shushan, signifying in Persian, lilies*; *chief city of the province Susiana*, 2, 4, 25.

Σοφαίνετος, ον, δ, Sophænētus, *from Stympthālus in Arcadia*, 1, 1, 11.

σοφία, ας, ή, (σοφός) *wisdom, skill*, 1, 2, 8.

σοφός, ή, όν, *wise*, 1, 10, 2. *Comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος.*

σπανίζω, ίσω and ιώ, (σπάνις, *scarceness*) *to lack, to be in want of*, *w. gen.* 2, 2, 12.

σπάνιος, ία, ιον, (σπάνις, *scarceness*) *scarce*, 1, 9, 27.

σπᾶω, σπᾶσω, ἔσπᾶσα, ἔσπᾶκα, ἔσπασμαι, ἔσπᾶσθην, *to draw, τὸν ἀκινάκην*, 1, 8, 29.

σπένδω, σπείσω, ἔσπεισα, ἔσπειακα, ἔσπεισμαι, ἔσπείσθην, *to pour out a libation*;—*mid. to pour libations one with another, hence, as this was a common mode of ratifying a solemn*

contract, to make an armistice or a treaty, 1, 9, 8; w. dat. *ἐἴ τῃ σπεί-σαιτο*, if he made a treaty with any one, 1, 9, 7; 2, 3, 7; *πρὸς τινα*, 3, 5, 16.

*σπεύδω*, -εύσω, to hasten, 1, 5, 9; 2, 3, 13; to be in haste, w. infin. 1, 3, 14.

*σπολάς*, *ἄδος*, *ἡ*, a leathern corslet: *σπολάδες καὶ δῶρακες*, leathern and metallic corslets, 3, 3, 20.

*σπονδή*, *ἡς*, *ἡ*, (*σπένδω*) a libation; plur. *σπονδαί*, libations, the usual sign of a treaty; hence, by meton. a treaty: *παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς*, contrary to the treaty, 1, 9, 8; *ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς*, during the time of the treaty, 3, 1, 1; *σπ. ποιῆσθαι*, to make a treaty, 2, 3, 8; *σπ. λύειν*, to break a treaty, 2, 5, 38.

*σπουδάζω*, -άζω and -άσσομαι, (*σπουδῇ*) to be busy, to be in earnest, 2, 3, 12.

*σπουδαιολογέω*, *ῶ*, -ήσω, (*σπουδαῖος*, *λέγω*), mid. *σπουδαιολογέομαι*, -οῦμαι, to converse on important topics, 1, 9, 28.

*σπουδαῖος*, *α*, *ον*, (*σπουδῇ*) earnest, serious, weighty.

*σπουδῇ*, *ἡς*, *ἡ*, (*σπεύδω*) earnestness, haste, 1, 8, 4.

*στάδιον*, *ου*, *τό*, plur. *οἱ στάδιοι* or *τὰ στάδια*, (*ἵσθημι*) an established measure of length, 600 Greek, 606½ English feet, about one-eighth of a mile, a furlong, a stadium; plur. furlongs or stadia.

*σταθμός*, *οὔ*, *δ*, (*ἵσθημι*) a place of halting, a station, 1, 8, 1; 1, 10, 1, etc.; a day's journey or march, a stage: *ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς*, he marches three stages, 1, 2, 5 and often.

*στασιάζω*, -άζω, (*στάσις*, a sedition) to rebel, to be at variance with, 2, 5, 28, w. dat.

*στέγασμα*, *ατος*, *τό*, (*στεγάζω* to cover, *στέγη* a roof) a covering; perh. as Krüger thinks, a tent-cover; or as Theisz defines it, the skins which the soldiers used to cover themselves.

*στείβω*, *στείψω*, *ἔστειψα*, rare in prose, chiefly used in pres. and impf. to tread: *παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδούς*, along the much travelled roads (lit. trodden roads), 1, 9, 13.

*στέλλω*, *στελῶ*, *ἔστειλα*, *ἔσταλκα*, *ἔσταλμαι*, *ἔστάλην*, to set in order, to equip, dispatch, send;—pass. 3, 2, 7, *ἔσταλμένος*, equipped.

*στενός*, *ἡ*, *όν*, narrow, 1, 4, 4; comp. *στενότερος*, 3, 4, 19.

*στενοχωρία*, *ας*, *ἡ*, (*στενός*, *χώρα*) a narrow place, 1, 5, 7.

*στέργω*, *στέρξω*, *ἔστοργα*, to love (esp. of the love of parents and children; also of the love of friends, comm. in a noble sense), 2, 6, 23.

*στερέω*, *ῶ*, or *στερίσκω*, *στερήσω*, *ἔστέρησα*, -κα, -μαι, -θην, to deprive, w. acc. of pers. and gen. of thing, 2, 5, 10;—pass. *στεροῦμαι*, *στερίσκομαι*, to be deprived of; also a form *στέρομαι*, to be destitute of, 3, 2, 2; f. *στερήσομαι*, mid. in form, pass. in meaning, w. gen. *ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται*, but not even of these shall they be deprived, 1, 4, 8; 1, 9, 13; 2, 1, 12; 3, 2, 2.

*στέρομαι*, see *στερέω*.

*στέρνον*, *ου*, *τό*, the breast, 1, 8, 26.

*στερῶς*, adv. (*στερρός*, Att. collat. form of *στέρεος*, firm, rigid) rigidly, 3, 1, 22.

στέφανος, ου, δ, (στέφω, to encircle) a wreath, garland, crown, 1, 7, 7.

στῖβος, ου, δ, (στείβω) a beaten way, a track (made by many; ἵχνος or ἵχνιον, a track, the impression of a single foot), 1, 6, 1.

στίφος, εος, ους, τό, (στείβω) a dense company, a compact body, 1, 8, 13 and 26.

στλεγγίς, ἰδος, ἡ, a flat piece of metal, used in the bath and in the palaestra for scraping the body, a scraper, Lat. strigil; also, a sort of comb worn as an ornament by women, or by men on important occasions; an ornament for the hair, 1, 2, 10.

στολή, ἡς, ἡ, (στέλλω) an equipment, a robe, 1, 2, 27.

στόλος, ου, δ, (στέλλω) equipment, preparation, 1, 2, 5; army, military force, 2, 2, 12; 3, 2, 11; an expedition, a journey, a march, 1, 3, 16; 2, 2, 10.

στόμα, ατος, τό, the mouth, any opening, the front, the van of an army, 3, 4, 42.

στρατεία, ας, ἡ, (στρατεύω) a military expedition, a campaign, 3, 1, 9.

στράτευμα, ατος, τό, (στρατεύω) an army, 1, 2, 18 and often.

στρατεύω, -εύσω, (στρατός, an army) to make an expedition, w. ἐπὶ and acc. against any one, 2, 3, 20; 3, 1, 17 and 18; mid. to make an expedition, 1, 2, 2; εἰς τινα, against any one, 1, 1, 11; ἐπὶ τινα, 2, 1, 1.

στρατηγέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (στρατηγός) to be general, to lead, command, w. gen. 1, 4, 3; w. cogn. acc. 1, 3, 15.

στρατηγία, ας, ἡ, (στρατηγός)

something belonging to a general, as his office, dignity, plans, character: στρατηγίαν στρατηγεῖν, to lead in a military plan, to carry out a course of strategy, 1, 3, 15; generalship, military plan, 2, 2, 13.

στρατηγός, οὔ, δ, (στρατός an army, ἔγω) a general, commander, leader; also, a military governor (such as were appointed by the Persians), 1, 1, 2.

στρατιώτης, ου, δ, (στρατιά, an army) a soldier, 1, 3, 21.

στρατοπεδεύω, -εύσω, (στρατόπεδον) to encamp; comm. dep. mid. to encamp, 1, 3, 7 and often; to be encamped, 2, 2, 15.

στρατόπεδον, ου, τό, (στρατός an army, πέδον ground) an encampment, a camp, 1, 10, 1 and 17; meton. an army.

στρεπτός, οὔ, δ, sc. κύκλος, (στρέφω) a necklace, 1, 2, 27; 1, 8, 29; 1, 5, 8.

στρέφω, στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστροφα, ἔστραμμαι, ἔστραφην, (rare ἔστρέφθην) to twist, to turn, to face about, 1, 10, 6.

στρουθός, οὔ, δ, any small bird, esp. a sparrow: στρουθὸς δ μέγας or ἡ μεγάλη, the ostrich, 1, 5, 2.

στυγνός, ἡ, ὄν, (στυγέω, to hate) hateful, severe, repulsive, 2, 6, 9: τὸ στυγνόν, that which was hateful, the severity, 2, 6, 11.

Στυμφάλιος, ἱα, ἰον, Stymphalian; as subst. a Stymphalian, an inhabitant of Stymphālus, a city in Arcadia, 1, 1, 11.

σύ, σοῦ, (enclit.) pers. pron. 2d pers. thou, 2, 1, 12 and 16 and 17.

συγγενής, ἐς, (σύν, γένος) of the



same race: οἱ συγγενεῖς, kinsmen, relatives, 1, 6, 10.

συγγίγνομαι, (σύν, γίγνομαι, wh. see) to be with, to associate with, w. dat. 1, 1, 9; 1, 2, 27; to have intercourse with (in a bad sense, i. e. illicit intercourse), 1, 2, 12.

συγκαλέω, ὦ, (σύν, καλέω, wh. see) to call together, to assemble, 1, 4, 8.

συγκατακαίω, (σύν, κατά, καίω, wh. see) to burn up with (something), 3, 2, 27.

συγκатаστρέφω, (σύν, κατά, στρέφω, wh. see) to assist any one (dat.) in subjugating (anything), 2, 1, 14.

συγκύπτω, (σύν, κύπτω, κύψω, κτέ.) to bend together, 3, 4, 19.

Συέννεσις, ιος, ὁ, Syennesis, king of Cilicia, 1, 2, 12.

σῦκον, ου, τό, a fig.

συλλαμβάνω, (σύν, λαμβάνω, wh. see) to take together, seize, lay hold of, apprehend, 1, 1, 3; 1, 4, 8.

συλλέγω, (σύν, λέγω, to lay in order, to gather) συλλέξω, συνελοχα, συνείλεγμαι, συνελέγην, to collect, 1, 1, 7 and 9; to gather, 2, 4, 11.

συλλογή, ἥς, ἡ, (συλλέγω) the act of collecting, levy, 1, 1, 6.

συμβαίνει, (σύν, βαίνω, wh. see) to come together, to occur, to happen: τὰ συμβάντα, the events which happened, 3, 1, 13.

συμβάλλω, (σύν, βάλλω, wh. see) to cast together, to bring together; pass. 3, 4, 31;—mid. χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ, contributed money for him, 1, 1, 9.

συμβουλευέω, (σύν, βουλεύω) to advise, 1, 6, 9; w. dat. 2, 1, 17 and 18.—Mid. to get advice for one's self, to confer with, w. dat. 1, 1, 10; 1,

7, 2; to ask advice (of a person, w. dat.) 2, 1, 16 and 17.

σύμβουλος, ου, ὁ, (συμβουλεύω) an adviser, 1, 6, 5.

συμμαχία, ας, ἡ, (σύν, μάχομαι) an alliance.

σύμμαχος, ον, (σύν, μάχη) fighting with, in alliance with, 2, 4, 6; 2, 5, 11: τὰ σύμμαχα, things in alliance, resources, 2, 4, 7;—σύμμαχος, ὁ, an ally.

συμμίγνυμι, (σύν, μίγνυμι, wh. see) to mix with, to unite with, to join, w. dat. 2, 1, 2; 2, 3, 19.

σύμπας, σύμπασα, σύμπαν, (σύν, πᾶς) a strengthened form of πᾶς, all together, 1, 2, 9: τὸ σύμπαν, adv. altogether, on the whole, 1, 5, 9.

συμπέμπω, (σύν, πέμπω, wh. see) to send with, 3, 4, 42 and 43.

συμπίπτω, (σύν, πίπτω, wh. see) to fall with, to fall together, to grapple with, ἔρκτη, 1, 9, 6.

σύμπλεως, ων, (σύν, πλέω, πλέος full) entirely full, filled, w. gen. 2, 22.

συμπολεμέω, ὦ, (σύν, πολεμέω, ὦ, ἦσω) to carry on war in alliance with, to aid in war, w. dat. συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς, w. acc. he aided Cyrus in war against, etc., 1, 4, 2; cf. 3, 1, 5.

συμπορεύομαι, (σύν, πορεύω, wh. see) to go with, 1, 3, 5.

συμπράττω, (σύν, πράττω, wh. see) to coöperate with, to aid, w. dat. 1, 1,

συμπροθυμέομαι, οὔμαι, (σύν, πρό, θυμέομαι, θυμός) to join in a desire, συμπροθυμεῖτο, 3, 1, 9.

συμφέρω, (σύν, φέρω, wh. see) to bring together, συνενηνεγμένα, 3, 4, 31; to be profitable, 3, 2, 27.

σύν, prep. w. dat. *with, in company with, in connection with*; in compos. *with, together with*.

συναγείρω, (σύν, ἀγείρω, wh. see) to bring together, collect; pass. 1, 5, 9.

συνάγω, (σύν, ἄγω, wh. see) to lead together, bring together, 1, 3, 9; 1, 5, 10; συνήγον, joined (them) together.

συναδικέω, ᾧ, ἦσω, (σύν, ἀδικέω) to commit injustice with (any one), dat. 2, 6, 27.

συναιρέω, ᾧ, (σύν, αἰρέω, wh. see) to seize with; to bring together: ὡς συνελόντι εἰπεῖν, to speak concisely, 3, 1, 38.

συνακολουθέω, ᾧ, ἦσω, (σύν, ἀκολουθέω) to follow with, at the same time, to go in company with, 2, 5, 30 and 35; 3, 1, 4.

συναλλάττω, (σύν, ἀλλάττω (ἄλλος), ἀλλάξω, ἡλλαξα, ἡλλάχα, ἡλλαγμαῖ, ἡλλάγην [ᾱ]) to change something with some one, to reconcile; pass. to be reconciled with: συναλλαγέντι πρὸς and acc., having been reconciled with, 1, 2, 1.

συναναβαίνω, (σύν, ἀνά, βαίνω, wh. see) to go up with, w. dat. 1, 3, 18.

συναντάω, ᾧ, ἦσω, (σύν, ἀντάω) to meet, 1, 8, 15.

συνάπτεμι, (σύν, ἀπό, εἰμι) to go away with, at the same time, 2, 2, 1.

συνάπτω, (σύν, ἄπτω, ἔψω, κτέ.), to join together: μάχην τινί, to join in battle with any one, 1, 5, 16.

σύνδειπνος, ου, ὁ, (σύν, δείπνον) a table-companion: σύνδειπνον ποιῆσαι τινα, to make any one a table-companion, 2, 5, 27.

σύνεμι, (σύν, εἰμι, wh. see) to be with, οἱ συνόντες one's associates, 2, 6, 20.

σύνεμι, (σύν, εἰμι, wh. see) to go or come with, or together: μαχούμενος συνήει, advanced to fight, 1, 10, 10.

συνεκβιβάζω, (σύν, ἐκ, βιβάζω, -άσω) to cause to go out with, to assist in conveying (something) out, 1, 5, 7.

συνενηνεγμένα, see συμφέρω.

συνελόντι, see συναιρέω.

συνεπέυχομαι, (σύν, ἐπί, εὐχομαι, wh. see) to vow in addition at the same time, 3, 2, 9.

συνεπισπεύδω, (σύν, ἐπί, σπεύδω, wh. see) to assist in hastening, 1, 5, 8.

συνέπομαι, (σύν, ἔπομαι, wh. see) to follow with, to follow, w. dat. 1, 3, 9; 1, 4, 17.

συνεργός, ὁν, (σύν, ἔργον) working with; as subst. a helper, coadjutor, 1, 9, 20 and 21.

συνέρχομαι, (σύν, ἔρχομαι, wh. see) to go or come with, to come together, 2, 1, 2; 2, 3, 21.

συνήθης, ἐς, (σύν, ἥθος a custom) accustomed to one another; as subst. συνήθης, εὖς, οὖς, ὁ, an intimate friend.

σύνθημα, ατος, τό, (σύν, τίθημι) anything agreed on, a sign, watch-word, 1, 8, 16.

συνιδεῖν, 2d aor. infin. of συνοράω.

συνίστημι, (σύν, ἵστημι, wh. see) f. συστήσω, pf. συνέστηκα, κτέ., to place with or together; intrans. parts (see ἵστημι) to stand with or together; pass. to be placed with; to be introduced to, w. dat. 3, 1, 8.

σύννοδος, ου, ἡ, (σύν, ὁδός) a going together; a meeting, a collision, an onset, 1, 10, 7.

σύνοιδα, (σύν, οἶδα, pf. in form, pres. in meaning, plupf. ᾔδειν or ᾔδη impf. in meaning, f. εἰσομαι) *I know with*: σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ, and also σύνοιδα alone, *I am conscious*, 1, 3, 10; σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ, *he is conscious*, 2, 5, 7.

συνοράω, ὦ, (σύν, ὁράω, wh. see) *to see together, to view in general*, 1, 5, 9.

συνουσία, as, ἡ, (σύν, εἶμι) *the being together, familiar conversation*, plur. 2, 5, 6.

συντάττω, (σύν, τάττω, wh. see) *to arrange with or together, to draw up* (in military order), 1, 2, 15;—pass. 1, 7, 14; 1, 8, 14;—mid. *to place one's self in military order*, 1, 3, 14; 1, 10, 5 and 8.

συντίθημι, (σύν, τίθημι, wh. see) *to place together*;—mid. *to make an agreement with* (any one, dat.), 1, 9, 7: φίλιαν συνθέμενοι, *having concluded friendship*, 2, 5, 8.

σύντομος, ον, (σύν, τέμνω *to cut*) *cut up, abridged, short*; sup. συντομώτατος, 2, 6, 22.

συντράπεζος, ον, (σύν, τράπεζα *a table*) *at table with*; as subst. *a table-companion*, 1, 9, 31.

συντυγχάνω, (σύν, τυγχάνω, wh. see) *to happen with, to fall in with*, w. dat. 1, 10, 8.

συνωφελέω, ὦ, (σύν, ὠφελέω, -ήσω) *to help at the same time*, 3, 2, 27.

Συρακόσιος, ου, δ, *a Syracusan*.

Συρία, as, ἡ, *Syria* (lying both east and west of the Euphrates. It was not till the Roman period that the name was limited to the country between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean; for it was not till after the Macedonian conquest that the

name Μεσοποταμία became generally applied to the land between the Tigris and the Euphrates).

Σύριος, ια, ιον, *Syrian*.

Σύρος, ου, δ, *a Syrian*.

συσκενάζομαι, (σύν, σκενάζω, -άσω) *to make preparation together, to pack up*, 1, 3, 14; 2, 1, 2.

συσπᾶω, (σύν, σπᾶω, -άσω, [ᾶ]) *to draw together, sew together*, 1, 5, 10.

συσπειράω, ὦ, -ήσω, (σύν, σπειράω *to coil up*) *to wind up together*; pass. 1, 8, 21, συνεσπειραμένην, *formed in close array*.

συσπουδάζω, (σύν, σπουδάζω, -άσω, *to hasten*, fr. σπουδή) *to hasten together with, to unite in helping zealously*, 2, 3, 11.

συστρατεύομαι, (σύν, στρατεύομαι, -εύσομαι) *to join in an expedition*, 1, 4, 3.

συστρατηγός, οὔ, δ, (σύν, στρατηγός) *a fellow-general*, 2, 6, 29.

συστρατιώτης, ου, δ, (σύν, στρατιώτης) *a fellow-soldier*, 1, 2, 26.

συστρατοπεδεύομαι, (σύν, στρατοπεδεύομαι) *to encamp with*, 2, 4, 9.

συχνός, ἡ, ὄν, (perh. συνέχης, fr. συνέχω) *held together, continuous*; much, considerable, of time, 1, 8, 8; of space, 1, 8, 10.

σφάγιον, ου, τό, (σφάζω or σφάττω) *a victim for sacrifice*: τὰ σφάγια, *the omens from the motions of the victims*, 1, 8, 15.

σφάζω, Att. σφάττω, σφάξω, ἔσφαξα, ἔσφαγμαί, ἔσφαγην (ᾶ), rare ἔσφαχθην, *to slaughter, to sacrifice*, 2, 2, 9.

σφεῖς, ἑα, *they*, pers. pron. 3d pers. plur.

σφενδονάω, ὦ, -ήσω, (σφενδονή, *a*

*sling*) to sling, 3, 4, 16; to use the sling, to discharge the sling, 3, 3, 7 and 15 and 17 and 18.

σφενδόνη, ης, ἡ, a sling, 3, 3, 18; meton. that which is cast by a sling, a stone or bullet, 3, 3, 16; 3, 4, 4.

σφενδονήτης, ου, ὁ, (σφενδόνη) a slinger, 3, 3, 6 and 16.

σφόδρα, adv. (neut. plur. of σφοδρός) very, exceedingly, 2, 3, 16; 2, 4, 18: ἀκούειν σφόδρα, to listen to implicitly; σφ. πειθομένοις, obeying implicitly, 2, 6, 11 and 18.

σφοδρός, ὁ, ὄν, (akin to σπεύδω, σπουδή) vehement, excessive, ἐνδεῖα pressing want, 1, 10, 18.

σχεδία, ας, ἡ, a raft: σχεδίαῖς διαβαίνοντες, crossing over on rafts, 1, 5, 10; cf. 2, 4, 28.

σχεδόν, adv. (σχεῖν, ἔχω) nearly, almost: σχεδόν ὅτε, about the time when, 1, 10, 15; 3, 2, 1; for the most part, chiefly, 1, 8, 25.

σχῆμα, ατος, τό, (σχεῖν, ἔχω) shape, form, 1, 10, 10.

σχίζω, -ίσω, (ι) to cleave, split, 1, 5, 12.

σχολάζω, -άσω, (σχολή) to be at leisure, 2, 3, 2.

σχολαίως, adv. (σχολαῖος, αἶα, αἶον, at leisure) leisurely, slowly, 1, 5, 8; comp. σχολαιότερον, more slowly, 1, 5, 9.

σχολή, ἧς, ἡ, leisure: σχολῇ, with leisure, slowly, 3, 4, 27.

σώζω, σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, σέσωμαι or σέσωμαι, ἐσώθην, to save, to rescue, 1, 10, 3; 2, 3, 25; to preserve, hold safely, 2, 5, 11; 3, 2, 39; —pass. to be rescued, 3, 2, 11; to come off in safety, 2, 1, 19; to reach home in safety, 3, 1, 6; 3, 3, 4;—

mid. to rescue one's self, 2, 1, 19, σώζεσθαι.

Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ, Socrates, (1) An Athenian philosopher, the friend and teacher of Xenophon, Plato, etc. 3, 1, 5 and 7. (2) An Achæan, 1, 1, 11; 1, 2, 3;—one of the generals invited into the tent of Tissaphernes and there seized.

σῶμα, ατος, τό, the body, 3, 2, 20: τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα, their own persons, 1, 9, 27; their own lives, 1, 9, 12; cf. 2, 1, 12.

σῶος, σώα, σῶον, (akin to σώζω) safe, 2, 2, 21; 3, 1, 32.

Σῶσις, εως, or Σωσίας, ου, ὁ, Sosis, or Sosias, 1, 2, 9.

σωτήρ, ἡρος, ὁ, (σώζω) a saviour, preserver, deliverer, 1, 8, 16; 3, 2, 9.

σωτηρία, ας, ἡ, (σωτήρ, σώζω) deliverance, rescue, 2, 1, 19.

Σωτηρίδας, α, ὁ, Soteridas.

σωτήριος, ον, (σωτήρ) bringing deliverance. As subst. a means of safety, 2, 6, 11; 3, 3, 2: τὰ σωτήρια, sc. ἱερὰ, sacrifices commemorative of deliverance, thank-offerings for deliverance, 3, 2, 9.

σωφροσύνη, ης, ἡ, (σώφρων of sound mind, fr. σῶος, and φρήν mind) soundness of mind, self-control, practical wisdom, 1, 9, 3.

## T

τάλαντον, ου, τό, (root τλα. found in fut. τλήσομαι, aor. ἔτλην, κτέ., to bear; cf. Lat. tul-isse) a balance; meton. that which is weighed; esp. a definite weight, a talent, denoting a given amount of money. The common talent, which is always meant

when no qualifying phrase is used, was the Attic talent of silver. It contained 60 minæ = 6000 drachmæ = about \$1056.<sup>80</sup>/<sub>100</sub>, 1, 7, 18; sometimes χρυσοῦ or ἀργυρίου is added for greater exactness, 2, 2, 20. See Dict. Antiqq. art. Nummus.

ταμειόμαι, (ταμίς, a distributer) to distribute (as a steward), to divide off, cut off, 2, 5, 18.

Ταμῶς, gen. ὦ, δ, Tamos.

ταξιαρχέω, ᾧ, (τάξις, ἔρχω) to be a taxiarch.

ταξιαρχος, ου, δ, (τάξις, ἔρχω) a commander of a τάξις, a taxiarch, 3, 1, 37.

τάξις, εως, ἡ, (τάττω) the act of arranging, the art of arranging military companies, 2, 1, 7; military order, 1, 2, 18; 1, 7, 20; 2, 3, 10; a rank, a line (of soldiers), 3, 2, 17 and often; a company (either of footmen or of horsemen): κατὰ τάξεις, in companies of footmen, 1, 2, 16; a company of horsemen, 1, 8, 21; τάξις τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, a division of the hoplites, 1, 5, 14.

ταπεινός, ἡ, ὅν, low, humble, submissive, 2, 5, 13.

ταράσσω, Att. ταράττω, ταράξω, ἐτάραξα, τετάραγμαi, ἐταράχθην, to disturb, to throw into disorder; pass. 2, 4, 18; 3, 4, 19 and 23.

τάραχος, ου, δ, (ταράττω) disorder, confusion, 1, 8, 2.

Ταρσοί, ὦν, οἱ, Tarsi, 1, 2, 23 and 26. In other writers Ταρσός, οὔ, ἡ, Tarsus, the ancient capital of Cilicia.

τάσσω, Att. τάττω, τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαi, ἐτάχθην, to arrange, to draw up in military order, ταχθῆναι, to be drawn up, 1, 2, 15: τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας τεταγμένων,

of those drawn up opposite to the Greeks, 2, 3, 19; to order, 1, 5, 7; 1, 6, 6; to appoint: τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων, of those appointed for this work, 2, 3, 11 and 12; 3, 1, 25; —mid. to place one's self, 1, 7, 9; 3, 2, 17.

ταῦρος, ου, δ, a bull, 2, 2, 9.

ταύτη, adv. (dat. sing. fem. of οἶτος) in this way, in that way, here, there, 1, 10, 6; 3, 2, 32; in this respect, 2, 6, 7.

τάφος, ου, δ, (θάπτω, to bury) a grave, tomb, 1, 6, 11.

τάφρος, ου, ἡ, (τάφος) a ditch, 1, 7, 14.

τάχα, adv. (ταχύς) quickly, soon, 1, 8, 8.

ταχέως, adv. (ταχύς) quickly, rapidly, 2, 2, 12.

τάχιστα, see ταχύ.

τάχος, εος, ους, τό, (ταχύς) speed, 2, 5, 7.

ταχύ, adv. (ταχύς) quickly, speedily, 1, 5, 3; 2, 3, 6 and 8; —comp. θάττον, sup. τάχιστα: ὡς τάχιστα, most quickly, as quickly as possible, 1, 3, 14: ἢ ἐδύνάτο τάχιστα, as quickly as he was able, 1, 2, 4; ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα, as soon as, 3, 1, 9.

ταχύς, εἶα, ύ, quick: διὰ ταχέων, adv. quickly, 1, 5, 9; —comp. θάττων, sup. τάχιστος; τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν, by the speediest way, 1, 2, 20; τὴν ταχίστην, sc. ὁδόν, most speedily, 1, 3, 14.

τέ, enclit., copulat. conjunc., and, Lat. que: τὲ ... τέ, both ... and; τὲ ... καί, both ... and, not only ... but also, not only ... but especially.

τέθριππον, ου, τό, (τέτταρες, ἵππος) sc. ἄρμα, a four-horse chariot, 3, 2, 24.

τείνω, τευνῶ, ἔτεινα, τέτακα, τέταμαι, ἐτάθην, *to stretch, extend; intrans. to strive, to hasten.*

τείχος, εὐς, οὐς, τό, *a wall*, 1, 4, 4: τὸ Μηδίας τεῖχος, *the Median wall*, 1, 7, 15; 2, 4, 12; *a fort, fortress, citadel*, 3, 4, 10.

τεκμήριον, οὐ, τό, (τεκμαίρομαι, *to infer from indications*) *a sign, a proof*, 1, 9, 29 and 30.

τέκνον, οὐ, τό, (τεκεῖν, *inf. 2d aor. of τίκτω, to beget or to bear*) *a child*, 1, 4, 8.

τελευταῖος, α, ον, (τελευτή) *last*.

τελευτάω, ὦ, -ήσω, (τελευτή) *to end, finish*, *sc. βίον, to die*, 1, 1, 3; 1, 9, 1.

τελευτή, ἥς, ἡ, (τελέω, τέλος) *end, termination*, τοῦ βίου, 1, 1, 1; also without τοῦ βίου, *death*, 2, 6, 29; 8, 2, 7.

τελέω, ὦ, τελέσω οὐ τελῶ, ἐτέλεσα, τετέλεκα, τετέλεσμαι, ἐτελέσθην, (τέλος) *to end, to finish; to finish an obligation, to pay*, 3, 3, 18.

τέλος, εὐς, οὐς, τό, *an end*, 1, 10, 18;—τέλος, *adv. finally, at last*, 1, 10, 13; 2, 3, 26;—τὰ τέλη, *the magistrates* (the last, i. e. the highest station in civil life), 2, 6, 4.

τέμνω, τεμῶ, ἔταμον, Att. ἔτεμον, τέτμηκα, τέτμημαι, ἐτμήθην, *to cut*.

τεσσαράκοντα, Att. τετταράκοντα, *forty*.

τέσσαρες, Att. τέτταρες, α, gen. ον, *four*.

τέταρτος, η, ον, *fourth*.

τετρακισχίλιοι, αι, α, *four thousand*.

τετρακόσιοι, αι, α, *four hundred*; sing. ἑκατὶς τετρακοσία, 1, 7, 10.

τετταράκοντα, *forty*.

τέτταρες, α, gen. ον, *four*.

Τευθρανία, ας, ἡ, *Teuthrania*, name of a city, and also of a small territory in Mysia: ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων, 1, 2, 3.

τέχνη, ης, ἡ, *art, contrivance, skill*.

ἤδε, *adv. (τῇ, δέ) in this way, thus, in the following manner*, 2, 3, 1.

τῆμερον, *adv. (ἡμέρα) to-day*, 1, 9, 25.

τηνικαῦτα, *adv. then, at that time*.

τιάρα, ας, ἡ, *a tiara* (the Persian head-dress): τιάρα ὀρθή, *an upright tiara*, 2, 5, 23.

Τίγρης, ητος, ὁ, in other writers also Τίγρις, ιδος, ὁ, *the Tigris*, a celebrated river of Asia, emptying into the Euphrates.

τίθημι, θήσω, *aor. ἔθηκα, pf. τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην, to put, set, place*, 1, 5, 13; *to appoint*, ἀγῶνα, 1, 2, 10;—*mid. to put, set, place* (for one's self): τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι signifies, (a) *to lay aside, to put up arms*, 1, 5, 17; 1, 2, 16; (b) *to lay down one's arms, to surrender*; (c) *to stand under arms*, 1, 5, 14; 1, 6, 4: ἐν τάξει δέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, and εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι, *to place one's self in order of battle*, 2, 2, 8 and 21.

Τιμασίω, ωνος, ὁ, *Timasion*.

τιμάω, ὦ, -ήσω, (τιμή) *to esteem, to honor*, 1, 3, 3;—*pass.* 1, 8, 29.

τιμή, ἥς, ἡ, *honor*, 2, 1, 17; 2, 5, 38.

τίμιος, α, ον, (τιμή) *honorable*, 1, 2, 27.

τιμωρέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (τιμωρός, ὄν, *avenging*, fr. τιμή, *honor, satisfaction*, and αἰρῶ, *to take*) *to punish*;—*mid. to punish* (for one's own sake), 1, 9, 13; *to take vengeance upon*,

1, 3, 4;—pass. *to be punished*, 2, 5, 27; 2, 6, 29.

τιμωρία, ας, ἡ, (akin to τιμωρέω) *vengeance, punishment*, 2, 6, 14.

τις, τι, gen. τινός or τοῦ, indef. pron. enclit. (distinguished by the accent from τίς, τί, interrog.) *a certain one, some one, any one, one*: μελαρία τις, *a certain blackness, a sort of black cloud*, 1, 8, 8; χαλκός τις, *now and then a piece of brazen armor*, 1, 8, 8; *now and then one, here and there one*, 1, 8, 20; added to ποῖος, ὁποῖος, πόσος, and similar words, making them more indef., 2, 2, 2; 2, 4, 21;—τι, *in any respect, in anything, in some respect, in something, somewhat*, 3, 1, 37; *something*, 1, 10, 16: τι τῆς φάλαγγος, *a certain part of the line*, 1, 8, 18.

τίς, τί, gen. τίνος or τοῦ, interrog. pron., comm. in direct, also in indirect questions, *who? which? what?*—neut. τί often, *why?* 2, 4, 3 and 19; also, *how?*

Τισσαφέρνης, ους, δ, Tissaphernes.

τιτρώσκω, τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἔτρώθην, *to wound*, 1, 8, 26; *to inflict (some) wounds*, 3, 3, 7.—Pass. 2, 2, 14.

τλήμων, ονος, δ, ἡ, (root τλα- in τλήσομαι and ἔτλην, *to bear*) *bearing, suffering, wretched*, 3, 1, 29.

τοί, enclit. particle, *indeed, truly*, 3, 1, 18 and 37.

τοιγαροῦν, (τοί, γάρ, οὖν) *wherefore, accordingly*, 1, 9, 9 and 15.

τοίνυν, (τοί, νύν enclit. particle, *then, thereupon*) *therefore, then, accordingly*, 2, 1, 22; 2, 3, 5;—often continuative, *moreover, further*, 3, 1, 36.

τοιόσδε, τοιάδε, τοιόνδε, (τοῖος, δέ) *such, such as: τοιάδε, such as the following, as follows.*

τοιούτος, τοιαύτη, τοιούτον (also τοιοῦτο), (τοῖος, οὗτος) *such, Lat. talis; τοιαῦτα, such as precedes, as above: ἐν τοιούτῳ τοῦ κινδύνου προσ-ῖόντος, at such a point of the coming danger, in such extreme danger*, 1, 7, 5.

τολμάω, ᾧ, ἤσω, (τόλμα, *daring*) *to bear, endure, dare*, 3, 2, 11 and 16 and 32.

Τολμίδης, ου, δ, Tolmides, an Elean, the best herald in the army of 10,000.

τόξευμα, ατος, τό, (τόξον) *an arrow*, 1, 8, 19; 3, 4, 4 and 17.

τοξύνω, -εύσω, (τόξον) *to shoot with the bow*, 3, 3, 7; 3, 4, 17;—*to hit with an arrow*; pass. *to be hit with an arrow*, 1, 8, 20.

τοξική, ῆς, ἡ, sc. τέχνη, (τόξον) *the art of shooting with the bow*, 1, 9, 5.

τόξον, ου, τό, *a bow*, 3, 4, 17.

τοξότης, ου, δ, (τόξον) *a Bowman*, 3, 3, 6.

τόπος, ου, δ, *a place, a region*, 1, 5, 1.

τοσόσδε, τοσήδε, τοσόνδε, (τόσος, so much, δέ intens.) *so great, so much, Lat. tantus: τοσοῖδε, of such a number, so many; so few*, 2, 4, 4.

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον (sometimes τοσοῦτο) *so much, Lat. tantus: τοσοῦτος τὸ βάθος, so much in depth, i. e. so deep*, 3, 5, 7; *thus much*, 1, 3, 14; 2, 1, 9; ὅσῳ... τοσοῦτῳ, 1, 5, 9, lit. *by how much sooner... by so much the more*, etc., i. e. *the sooner... the more*, etc., and in the next clause, *the slower... the more*, etc.: τοσοῦτον... ὅσον, *in so*

*far ... as*, 3, 1, 45; *so far*, 3, 8, 10; *so many* (in plur.), 2, 1, 16; 3, 1, 36.

τότε, adv. *then, at that time*, Lat. *tum, tunc*, 1, 1, 6; τότε δὴ, *then indeed*, 2, 4, 22; ὅτε ... καὶ τότε, *when ... then also*, 3, 2, 13; ἄριστον τῶν τότε, *best of the men of that time*, 2, 2, 20.

τοῦμπαλιν, = τὸ ἐμπαλιν, *back, back again*, 1, 4, 15.

τοῦπισθεν, = τὸ ὀπισθεν, *back, backwards*, 3, 3, 10.

τράγημα, ατος, τό, (τραγέω, ὦ, τρώω *to eat raw fruits*); comm. plur. *sweetmeats, dessert*, Lat. *bella-ria*, French *dragées*, 2, 3, 15.

Τράλλεις, εων, αἱ, *Tralles, a city in Lydia*.

τράπεζα, ης, ἡ, *a table*.

τραῦμα, ατος, τό, (τιτρώσκω) *a wound*, 1, 8, 26.

τράχλος, ου, ὁ, *the neck*, 1, 5, 8.

τραχύς, εἶα, ὁ, *rough, harsh*, 2, 6, 9.

τρεῖς, τρία, gen. τριῶν, *three*.

τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, aor. 2d ἔτρεπον, τέτροφα, τέτραμμαι, ἐτράπην (ᾱ), rare ἐτρέφθην, *to turn*: τρ. eis φυγὴν, *to put to flight*, 1, 8, 24; *to divert, change, τὰς γνώμας*, 3, 1, 41;—mid. *to turn one's self, to turn* (intrans.) 3, 5, 13;—pass. ἡ sc. ὁδὸς ... τετραμμένη, *the way having been turned, i. e. the way leading*, 3, 5, 15.

τρέφω, θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέτροφα, τέτραμμαι, ἐτράφην, rare ἐθρέφθην, *to nourish*, 1, 1, 9 and 10.

τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι, ἐδράμον, δεδράμηκα, *to run*, 1, 5, 8.

τρέω, τρέσω, ἔτρεσα, *to tremble* (through fear), *to shun from fear, to shrink away from*, 1, 9, 6.

τριάκοντα, *thirty*.

τριακόσιοι, αἱ, α, *three hundred*.

τριήρης, εος, ους, ἡ, (τρῖς, and the root ἄρ- in ἀραρίσκω, *to join, to fit*), sc. ναῦς, *a galley with three banks of oars, a trireme, a war-vessel*, 1, 4, 8.

τρῖς, adv. *thrice*, 3, 2, 24.

τρισάσμενος, η, ου, (τρῖς, ἄσμενος *willing, glad*) *thrice glad, thrice as willing*.

τρισκαδέκα (τρῖς, καί, δέκα) *thirteen*.

τρισχίλιοι, αἱ, α, (τρῖς, χίλιοι) *three thousand*.

τριταῖος, ἀα, αἶον, *on the third day*.

τρίτος, η, ου, *third*: τὸ τρίτον, *the third time*.

τρόπαιον, ου, τό, (τροπή, τρέπω) *a trophy* (being a monument erected at the point where the enemy turned to flee), 3, 2, 13.

τροπή, ῆς, ἡ, (τρέπω) *the act of turning, the flight, rout*, 1, 8, 25.

τρόπος, ου, ὁ, (τρέπω) *a turn, direction, way, manner*: τόδε τὸν τρόπον, *in the following manner*, 1, 1, 9; *way, course*, 2, 5, 20: ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου, *in every way, by every means*, 3, 1, 43;—character, πρὸς τοῦ τρόπου, *in keeping with the character*, etc., 1, 2, 11; cf. 2, 6, 11;—plur. characters, 1, 9, 22.

τροφή, ῆς, ἡ, (τρέφω) *nourishment, support*: εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν, *for the support of his soldiers*, 1, 1, 9.

τρῦκᾶω, ὦ, -ήσω, (τρῦπα, *a hole*) *to bore*; pass. ἀμφοτέρω τὰ ὦτα τετρῦπημένον, *with both his ears bored*, 3, 1, 31.

τρωτός, ἡ, ὄν, (τιτρώσκω, *to wound*)



*vulnerable, liable to be wounded*, 3, 1, 23.

τυγχάνω, τεύχομαι, ἐτύχον, τετύχηκα, *to hit*, w. gen. 3, 2, 19; *to obtain*, 1, 4, 15; *to meet with*, 2, 6, 29; 3, 2, 7; *to reach, to hit*, 3, 2, 19;—often with a particip. and rendered *happen, by chance, just then, just now, just*: παρὼν ἐτύγχανε, *happened to be present, or was by chance present, or was just then present*, 1, 1, 2; ἐτυχε θυόμενος, *was just then sacrificing*, 2, 1, 9; ἐτύγχανον λέγων, *I was just saying*, 3, 2, 10;—sometimes the particip. is to be supplied, ἐτύγγανεν ἕκαστος, sc. ὢν or ἀναπαυόμενος, 3, 1, 3; ὡς ἐτύγγανον, sc. αὐλιζόμενοι or ὄντες, 2, 2, 17.

Τυριαῖον, ου, τό, *Tyriæum*.

τυρός, οὔ, ὁ, *a cheese*; plur. 2, 4, 28.

τύχη, ης, ἡ, (τυγχάνω) *chance, luck, fortune*, 2, 2, 13.

τῷδε, adv. (dat. sing. of ὅδε) *in the following manner, as follows*.

## Υ

ὕβρις, f. -ίσω, or -ιῶ, or -οῦμαι, (ὑβρίς) *to be insolent*; w. acc. *to treat insolently, to insult*; pass. *to be insulted*, 3, 1, 13 and 29.

ὑβρίς, εως, ἡ, *insolence*, 3, 1, 21.

ὑδωρ, ὕδατος, τό, (ὑΐ, *to wet, to rain*) *water*, 1, 5, 9.

υῖός, οὔ, (also υῖέος 3d declens.) ὁ, *a son*.

ῥλη, ης, ἡ, *a wood, a forest*; also, *an undergrowth of wood, brush*, 1, 5, 1; 3, 5, 10.

ὑμέτερος, α, ον, (ὑμεῖς) *your, yours*.

ὑπάγω, (ὑπό, ἔγω, wh. see) *to lead*

*on slowly*; intrans. *to advance slowly*, 3, 4, 48;—mid. *to lead on slyly, with cunning*; *to suggest cunningly*, 2, 1, 18; *to lead (one) on deceitfully, to try to induce (one) with deceit*, 2, 4, 3.

ὑπακούω, (ὑπό, ἀκούω, wh. see) *to hear, listen to*.

ὑπαρχος, ου, ὁ, (ὑπό, ἔρχω) *a subordinate commander or officer*: τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην, *an influential man of the subordinate officers*, 1, 2, 20: ὁ Κύρου ὑπ., *the next in command to Cyrus*, 1, 8, 5.

ὑπάρχω, (ὑπό, ἔρχω, wh. see) *to begin*, w. the particip. 2, 3, 23;—*to be, to exist*, 2, 2, 11;—*to be inclined towards, to favor*, w. dat. 1, 1, 4.

ὑπείμι, (ὑπό, εἶμι, wh. see) *to be under*, 3, 4, 7.

ὑπελαύνω, (ὑπό, ἐλαύνω, wh. see) *to drive or ride under, to ride up* (spoken of a subordinate person riding up to a superior), 1, 8, 15.

ὑπέρ, prep. w. gen. or acc. (1) w. gen. *over, above, beyond*, 1, 10, 12 and 14; *for, in behalf of*, 1, 3, 4; 1, 8, 27; *for, on account of*, 1, 7, 8 (Dind. here omits ὑπέρ); *instead of, in the name of*; (2) w. acc. *over, beyond, of place, time, number, or measure*, 1, 1, 9. In compos. *over, beyond, for, in behalf of, and intens*. See H. 633. K. § 166. 3.

ὑπερβολή, ης, ἡ, (ὑπέρ, βάλλω) *the act of casting beyond*; in rhetoric, *an extravagant expression, a hyperbole*; *the act of passing, passage*, 1, 2, 25; *the place of passing, the pass*, 3, 5, 18.

ὑπερδέξιος, ον, (ὑπέρ, δεξιός) *above the right*, 3, 4, 37.

ὑπερέχω, (ὑπέρ, ἔχω, wh. see) *to be above, project above*, 3, 5, 7, sc. τοῦ ὕδατος.

ὑπερθεῖν, adv. (ὑπέρ) *above*, 1, 4, 4.

ὑπερύψηλος, ον, (ὑπέρ, ὑψηλός) *exceedingly high*, 3, 5, 7.

ὑπήκοος, ον, (ὑπό, ἀκούω) *hearing to, subject*, 1, 6, 6.

ὑπηρετέω, ᾧ, ἥσω, (ὑπηρετής) *to serve*, w. dat. 1, 9, 18; 2, 5, 14; *to provide with, to furnish*, 3, 5, 8.

ὑπηρέτης, ον, δ, (ὑπό, ἐρέτης *a rower, ἐρέτω to row*) *a sailor; genr. a laborer, helper, attendant, servant*, 1, 9, 18 and 27; 2, 1, 9.

ὑπισχνέομαι, οὔμαι, (ὑπό, ἴσχω = ἔχω *to have, to hold*), f. ὑποσχέσσομαι, aor. ὑπεσχόμην, pf. ὑπέσχημαι, *to promise*, 1, 2, 2; 1, 7, 5.

ὑπνος, ον, δ, *sleep*.

ὑπό, prep. w. gen. dat. or acc. (1) w. gen. *under*, of place; or comm. of a cause or agent; hence, *by*, w. pass. verbs, 2, 6, 13 and 15; w. neut. verbs, 1, 5, 5; 3, 4, 11.—(2) w. dat. *under* (of situation), 1, 2, 8; 1, 8, 10; *under the power of, subject to*.—(3) w. acc. *under*, w. verbs of motion, 1, 8, 27; 1, 10, 14; also w. verbs of rest, 3, 4, 37. In compos. *under, secretly, slightly, a little, slowly*. See H. 655. ff. K. § 167. 7.

ὑποδεής, ἐς, gen. ἐός, (ὑπό, δέομαι *to want*) *slight*; comm. in comp. ὑποδεέστερος, *inferior*, w. gen. *inferior to*, 1, 9, 5.

ὑποδέχομαι, (ὑπό, δέχομαι, wh. see) *to receive*, 1, 6, 3.

ὑποζύγιον, ον, τό (ὑπό, ζυγόν *a yoke, ζεύγνυμι*) *an animal under the yoke, a beast of burden*, 1, 3, 1.

ὑπολαμβάνω, (ὑπό, λαμβάνω, wh.

see) *to take under one's protection, to receive*, 1, 1, 7; sc. τὸν λόγον, *to take up the word, to reply*, 2, 1, 15: μεταξὺ ὑπολαβών, *having replied in the midst* (of his remarks), *abruptly replying*, 3, 1, 27.

ὑπολείπω, (ὑπό, λείπω, wh. see) *to leave behind; pass. to be left behind*, 1, 2, 25.

ὑπομαλακίζομαι, (ὑπό, μαλακίζω *to soften*, fr. μαλακός *soft*) *to be somewhat softened, to grow somewhat timid, to yield somewhat*, 2, 1, 14.

ὑπομένω, (ὑπό, μένω, wh. see) *to remain behind, to halt, to stop*, 3, 4, 21.

ὑπόμνημα, ατος, τό, (ὑπό, μιμνήσκω) *a remembrance, reminiscence*, 1, 6, 3.

ὑπόπεμπτος, ον, (verb. adj. fr. ὑποπέμπω) *sent secretly, sent as a spy, sent treacherously*, 3, 3, 4.

ὑποπέμπω, (ὑπό, πέμπω, wh. see) *to send secretly, to send as a spy, send treacherously*, 2, 4, 22.

ὑποπτεύω, -εύσω, (ὑποπτος) *to suspect*, 1, 3, 1; 2, 3, 13; *to be apprehensive of, to apprehend*, 1, 1, 1.

ὑποπτος, ον, (ὑπό, and root ὀπ- in ὀψομαι, κτέ.) *suspecting*.

ὑποστήναι, see ὑφίστημι.

ὑποστράτηγος or ὑποστρατηγός, gen. ου or οὔ, δ, (ὑπό, στρατηγός) *a lieutenant-general*, 3, 1, 32.

ὑποστρέφω, (ὑπό, στρέφω, wh. see) *to turn about; to turn slyly, to turn artfully*, 2, 1, 18.

ὑποφαίνω, (ὑπό, φαίνω, wh. see) *to appear a little; of the day, to begin to dawn*, 3, 2, 1.

ὑποχείριος, ον, (ὑπό, χεῖρ) *under the hand of, subject to*, w. dat. 3, 2, 3.

ὑποχος, ον, (ὑπέχω) *held under, subject to*, w. dat. 2, 6, 7.

ὑποχωρέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ὑπό, χωρέω) *to withdraw, to recede*, w. dat. of person, before a person, 1, 4, 18; *to retreat*, 1, 7, 17.

ὑποψία, ας, ἡ, (ὑπό, and root ὀπ- in ὀψομαι, κτέ.) *a suspicion*, 1, 3, 21; ὑποψίαν παρέχειν, *to occasion suspicion*, 2, 4, 10; in plur. *expressions of suspicion*, 2, 5, 1 and 2.

ῥς, ῥός, δ or ἡ, *a swine*.

ὑστεραίος, αἰα, αἰον, (ὑστερος) *following, subsequent*: ἡ ὑστεραία, sc. ἡμέρα, *the following day*, 2, 3, 25; often dat. *on the following day*, 1, 2, 21.

ὑστερέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ὑστερος) *to be late*; w. gen. *to arrive later than, after*, 1, 7, 12.

ὑστερον, adv. (neut. of ὑστερος) *later, afterwards*, 1, 3, 2; 1, 8, 8; sup. ὕστατα.

ὑστερος, ἔρα, ερον, *later*, 1, 5, 14; 2, 2, 17: ὑπόμενον ὑστεροί, *remained behind*, 3, 4, 21.

ὑφίημι, (ὑπό, ἵημι, wh. see) *to send under*; *to give up, surrender*, w. acc. 3, 5, 5;—mid. *to yield, submit*, 3, 1, 17; 3, 2, 3.

ὑφίστημι, (ὑπό, ἵστημι, wh. see) *to put under*; intrans. parts (see ἵστημι) *to stand under, to undertake*; *to oppose, resist*, w. dat. 3, 2, 11.

ὑφορᾶω, ᾧ, (ὑπό, ὁρᾶω, wh. see) *to look upon with suspicion*, w. acc. 2, 4, 10.

ὑψηλός, ἡ, ὄν, (ὑψος) *lofty, ὕρος ὑψηλόν*, 1, 2, 22; τὸ ὑψηλόν, *the eminence*, 3, 4, 25.

ὕψος, εος, οὐς, τό, *height*, 3, 4, 7 and 10.

## Φ

φαγεῖν, 2d aor. infin. of ἐσθίω, *to eat*: ἐφαγον, 2, 3, 16.

φαιδρός, δ, ὄν, (φαίνω) *bright, cheerful*, 2, 6, 11.

φαίνω, φᾶνῶ, ἐφηνα, πέφαγκα, (2d pf. πέφηνα, intrans.), πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην, 2d aor. ἐφάνην (ᾶ), *to show*; pass. and 2d pf. act. *to appear*, 1, 3, 19: πηλοῦ φανέντος, 1, 5, 7; ἐφαίνετο ἰχθια, 1, 6, 1; φάνητε, *appear, show yourselves*, 3, 1, 24;—w. the infin. φαίνομαι means *to appear, to seem* (the appearance may be deceptive); w. the particip. it means *to appear, to be plain* (denoting what actually exists): οὐ φθονῶν ἐφαίνετο, *he appeared not envying, or he plainly did not envy*, 1, 9, 19; cf. 2, 5, 38.

φάλαγξ, αγγος, ἡ, *a line of battle, a phalanx*, 1, 2, 17; 1, 8, 17 and 18; also, *an army in camp*, meton. *a camp*, 2, 1, 6.

Φαλίνοσ, ου, δ, *Phalinius*, 2, 1, 7.

φάναι, infin. pres. of φημί.

φανερός, δ, ὄν, (φαίνω) *plain, manifest, visible*; often w. a particip., ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερός, *manifest plotting against me*, or in an Eng. idiom, *manifestly plotting against me*, 1, 6, 8: φανερὸς ἦν πειρώμενος, lit. *he was manifest attempting*, i. e. *he manifestly attempted*, or, *it was manifest that he attempted*, 1, 9, 11; cf. 1, 9, 16; 2, 5, 40: ἐν τῷ φανερῷ, *openly*, 1, 3, 21.

φανερῶς, adv. (φανερός) *openly*, 1, 9, 19.

φέρω, οἶσω, aor. 1. ἤνεγκα, aor. 2. ἤνεγκον, pf. ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην, *to bear, to carry, to endure*;

often w. an adv. χαλεπῶς φ., *to bear with difficulty, to be disturbed at*, w. dat. 1, 3, 3; cf. βαρέως φ., 2, 1, 4;—*to receive*, sc. μισθόν, 1, 3, 21;—*to bring*, τιμὴν, 2, 1, 17;—*to carry off*; hence, in the frequent expression, φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν, *to rob and plunder*, 2, 6, 5; *to pay*, sc. φόρους or δασμόν;—*to lead*, of a road, 3, 5, 15;—pass. *to be carried, borne*, etc. 1, 8, 20; 3, 3, 16; *to be procured*, 2, 1, 6.

φεύγω, φεύξομαι or φευξοῦμαι, ἐφύγον, πέφευγα, *to flee*, 1, 10, 11; *to flee (from one's country)*, 1, 3, 3; *to be a fugitive*, τοὺς φεύγοντας, *the fugitives, the exiles*, 1, 1, 7; 1, 9, 9.

φημί, φήσω, comm. ἐρῶ, aor. εἶπα or εἶπον, pf. εἶρηκα, εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθην or ἐρρήθην, *to say, to speak, affirm, relate*, 1, 6, 5, ff.; *to say yes, to reply affirmatively*, ἐφη δ' Ὀρόντης, 1, 6, 7; οὐ φάμαι, *to say no, to deny, to refuse*, 1, 3, 1 and 7.

φθάω, φθάσω and φθήσομαι, ἐφθάσα and ἐφθην, ἐφθάκα, *to anticipate, to come or do before*: φθάσαι βουλόμενοι πρὶν παθεῖν, *wishing to get the start before suffering*, 2, 5, 5; βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος, *wishing to get over first*, 3, 4, 20: often w. a particip. 1, 3, 14; 3, 4, 49.

φθέγγομαι, -ξομαι, ἐφθεγξάμην, *to utter a loud cry, to shout*, 1, 8, 18.

φθείρω, φθερῶ, ἐφθειρα, ἐφθαρκα, ἐφθαρμαι, ἐφθάρην (α), *to destroy*.

φθονέω, ᾤ, -ήσω, (φθόνος) *to envy*, 1, 9, 19.

φθόνος, ου, δ, *envy*.

φιλαίτερος, α, ου, see φίλος.

φιλέω, ᾤ, -ήσω, (φίλος) *to love*; pass. 1, 9, 28.

Φιλήσιος, ου, δ, *Philesius*, 3, 1, 47.

φιλία, ας, ἡ, (φιλέω) *friendship*, 1, 3, 5.

φίλιος, ία, ιον, (φίλος) *friendly*, 1, 3, 14; 1, 6, 3.

φίλιππος, ου, (φίλος, ἵππος) *fond of horses*; comp. -ότερος, sup. -ότατος, 1, 9, 5.

φιλόθηρος, ου, (φίλος, θήρα *the chase*) *fond of the chase*; comp. -ότερος, sup. -ότατος, 1, 9, 6.

φιλοκερδέω, ᾤ, (φίλος, κέρδος *gain*) *to be greedy of gain*, 1, 9, 16.

φιλοκίνδυνος, ου, (φίλος, κίνδυνος) *fond of danger*, 2, 6, 7.

φιλομαθής, ἐς, gen. ἐός, οὗς, (φίλος, and root μαθ- in μανθάνω) *fond of learning*; comp. -έστερος, sup. -έστατος, 1, 9, 5.

φιλοπόλεμος, ου, (φίλος, πόλεμος) *fond of war*, 2, 6, 1 and 7.

φίλος, η, ου, *loved, dear, friendly*, 1, 4, 2; comp. φιλαίτερος, sup. φιλαίτατος: Κύρῳ φιλαίτερον, *more friendly to Cyrus*, 1, 9, 29.

φίλος, ου, δ, *a friend*, 1, 3, 12; 1, 8, 14.

φιλόσοφος, ου, δ, (φίλος, σοφία) *a philosopher*, 2, 1, 18.

φιλοτιμέομαι, οὔμαι, -ήσομαι, ἐφιλοτιμήθην, (φίλος, τιμή) *depon. to be fond of honor, to be ambitious, to be jealous*: φιλοτιμηθέντες, *being jealous*, 1, 4, 7.

φιλοφρονέομαι, οὔμαι, -ήσομαι, aor. -ησάμην or -ήθην, (φίλος, φρονέω, φρὴν *mind*) *to be friendly, to treat (a person) as a friend*, 2, 5, 27.

φλυαρέω, ᾤ, -ήσω, (φλύαρος, α *prater, prattler*) *to talk nonsense*, 3, 1, 26 and 29.

φλυαρία, ας, ἡ, (same as φλυαρέω) *nonsense*; plur. *fooleries*, 1, 3, 18.

φοβερός, ὁ, ὄν, (φόβος) *terrible, fearful*, 2, 5, 9; comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος, 2, 5, 9; ὅτι φοβερώτατον δρᾶν, *most terrible to behold*, 3, 4, 5.

φοβέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (φόβος) *to terrify, frighten*; mid. *to fear*: φοβοίμην ... ἐπεσθαι, *I should fear to follow*, etc. 1, 3, 17; w. acc. τιμωρίαν φ., *to fear punishment*, 2, 6, 14.

φόβος, ου, ὁ, *fear*: τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον, *the fear which the Greeks inspired in the barbarians*, 1, 2, 18.

φοινίκιος, ἑα, εον, contr. οὖς, ἦ, οὖν, (φοίνιξ) *purple or crimson*, 1, 2, 16.

φοινικιστής, οὗ, ὁ, (φοίνιξ) *one who is clothed in purple*, i. e. among the Persians, *a courtier*, 1, 2, 20; or perh. *a purple-dyer*, as Krüg. understands it.

φοίνιξ, ικος, ὁ, (Φοίνιξ, *a Phœnician*) *the Phœnician color, purple or crimson*.—(2) *the palm-tree*, 2, 3, 10: ἡ βάλανος τοῦ φοίνικος, *the berry of the palm-tree, the date*, 2, 3, 15; cf. 1, 5, 10: οἶνος φοινίκων, *palm-wine*, 2, 3, 14. Sometimes written φοῖνιξ.

φορέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (φέρειν) *to carry, bear*; *to wear*, 1, 8, 29.

φράζω, -σω, ἔφρασα, πέφρακα, πέφρασμαι, ἐφράσθην, *to say, relate*, 2, 4, 18; *to bid, to direct*, 1, 6, 3; 2, 3, 3.

φρονέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (φρήν, *mind*) *to think, to have an insight, to understand*, 2, 2, 5: μέγα φρονεῖν, *to be high-minded, to be proud*, 3, 1, 27.

φρόνημα, ατος, τό, (φρονέω) *mind, spirit, courage*, 3, 1, 22; 3, 2, 16.

φρόνιμος, ον, (φρονέω, φρήν *mind*) *thoughtful, prudent, intelligent*, 1, 10, 7; *self-possessed*, 2, 6, 7.

φροντίζω, ἴσω or ἰῶ, (φρονέω, φρήν *mind*) *to think, reflect, to take care, to provide*, 2, 6, 8; *to be anxious*, 2, 3, 25.

φρουράρχος, ου, ὁ, (φρουρά, *a watch, a guard, a garrison*, and ἄρχω) *a commander of a garrison*, 1, 1, 6.

φρουρέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (φρουρά, *a watch, a guard, a garrison*) *to watch, to guard, to hold under guard*; pass. φρουρούμενα, *held under guard*, 1, 4, 8.

φρούριον, ου, τό, (φρουρός, *a watch-er, a guard*, fr. πρὸς, δρᾶω) *a garrisoned fort, a fortress*, 1, 4, 15.

Φρυγία, ας, ἡ, *Phrygia*: ἡ μεγάλη, *great Phrygia*, in the interior of Asia Minor, 1, 2, 7. Φρυγία μικρά, *Lesser Phrygia*, often called *Troas*, was in the N.W. part of Asia Minor. See map.

Φρύξ, υγός, ὁ, *a Phrygian*.

φυγάς, ἄδος, ὁ, (φεύγω) *a fugitive*; esp. *an exile*, 1, 1, 9 and 11.

φυγή, ἡς, ἡ, (φεύγω) *flight*, 3, 2, 17.

φυλακή, ἡς, ἡ, (φυλάττω) *the act of guarding*: φυλακὰς φυλάζειν, *to keep guard*, 2, 6, 10; *a guard* (collective), 1, 4, 4; 2, 4, 17 and 23; *a garrison*, 1, 1, 6; *a place for watching and guarding*: πρὸς τὰς φυλακὰς, *to the guard-stations*, 3, 1, 40.

(φύλαξ, *a single person as guard*; φυλακή, *a company of persons as guard*.)

φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ, (φυλάττω) *a guard, a watch* (spoken of a single person); plur. φύλακες, *guards*, 1, 2, 12.

φυλάττω, -ξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, -γμαι, ἐφυλάχθην, *to guard*, 1, 2, 1 and 21; intrans. *to keep guard*, 1, 2,

22: φυλακὰς φυλάζειν, *to keep guard*, 2, 6, 10:—mid. *to guard one's self, to be on one's guard*, 2, 2, 16; 2, 4, 16; w. acc. *to guard one's self against*, τοῦτον φ., 1, 6, 9; ἀλλήλους, 2, 4, 10.

φυσάω, ὦ, -ήσω, *to blow, to inflate* (by blowing); pass. 3, 5, 9.

Φύσκος, ου, δ, *Physcus*, a river in Assyria.

φύω, φύσω, ἔφυσα and ἔφυν, πέφυκα, aor. pass. ἐφύην, *to produce*, 1, 4, 10. The pf. plupf. and 2d aor. act. are intrans. *to come into being*; πέφυκα as pres. *am by nature*.

Φωκαῖς, ἴδος, ἡ, a *Phocæan woman*, (from Phocæa, a city of Ionia, N.W. from Smyrna), 1, 10, 2.

φωνή, ἧς, ἡ, a *voice, a discourse, a language*.

φῶς, φωτός, τό, a *light*, 3, 1, 12.

## X

χαίρω, χαίρήσω, κεχάρηκα, κεχάρημαι or κέχαρμαι, ἐχάρην (ᾶ), *to rejoice*.

χαλεπαίνω, -ᾶνῶ, (χαλεπός) *to be hard, harsh; to be angry, indignant*, w. dat. 1, 4, 12; 1, 5, 11 and 14.

χαλεπός, ἡ, ὄν, *hard, difficult*, 3, 2, 2; 3, 4, 35; of character, *harsh, severe*, 2, 6, 9 and 12; *violent, dangerous*, χ. ἐχθρός, 1, 3, 12: τὸ χαλεπόν, as subst. *the harshness, the severity*, 2, 6, 11: τὰ χαλεπώτατα, *those things which are most cruel*, 3, 1, 13. Comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος.

χαλεπῶς, adv. (χαλεπός) *hardly, with difficulty*, 3, 3, 13: χ. φέρω, w. dat. *to be annoyed at, to be in ill humor at*, 1, 8, 3.

χαλινῶω, ᾶ, -ῶσω, (χαλινός, a *bridle* or *bit* of a *bridle*) *to bridle*, sc. τὸν ἵππον, 3, 4, 35.

χαλκός, οὔ, δ, *copper, bronze, brass*: meton. *anything made of χαλκός*, esp. *armor*: χαλκός τις, *here and there a piece of armor*, 1, 8, 8.

Χάλος, ου, δ, *Chalus*, a river in Syria, 1, 4, 9.

χαράδρα, ας, ἡ, (χαράττω, *to cut into furrows*) a *ravine*, 3, 4, 1, ff.

χαρπείς, ἑσσα, ἑν, and Att. χάριεν, (χάρις) *graceful, pleasing, ingenious*, 3, 5, 12.

χαρίζομαι, -ίσομαι, Att. -ιοῦμαι, (χάρις) *to favor, to gratify*, w. dat. 2, 3, 19; w. acc. and dat. *to gratify a person in respect to anything*, 2, 1, 10.

χάρις, χάριτος, act. χάριν, ἡ, (χαίρω) *grace, favor*: χ. ἀποδίδοναι, *to repay a favor*, 1, 4, 15; *gratitude*, χάριν εἴσεται, lit. *will know gratitude*, i. e. *will be grateful*, w. dat. 1, 4, 15: χ. ἔχειν, *to feel*, etc. w. dat. *towards a person*, 2, 5, 14: τοῖς θεοῖς χ., *thanks be to the gods*, 3, 3, 14.

Χαρμάνδη, ης, ἡ, *Charmande*, a large and flourishing city, on the Arabian bank of the Euphrates, opposite the desert, 1, 5, 10.

χειμών, ὄνος, δ, *winter-weather, cold*, 1, 7, 6.

χείρ, χειρός, ἡ, *the hand and arm, the hand*, χεῖρ ἡ δεξιὰ, 1, 10, 1: εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, *he took into his hands*, 1, 8, 3; εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν, w. dat. *to come into the power of any one*, 1, 2, 26; τὴν χεῖρα ἀνατείλειν, *to extend the hand*, 3, 2, 9; οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες, *those casting from the hand*, i. e. *those casting missile*

weapons, 3, 3, 15; ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν, bracelets around the arms, 1, 5, 8.

Χειρίσophos, ου, δ, Chirissophus.

χειροπληθής, ἐς, (χείρ, πλήθω to be full) filling the hand: χειροπληθέσι τοῖς λίθοις, with stones as large as one can hold in the hand, 3, 8, 17.

χείρων, ου, comp. of κακός.

Χερρόνησος, ου, ἡ, (χέρρος or χέρσος mainland, νήσος an island) Cherronēsus, or in earlier writers Chersonēsus, the peninsula north of the Hellespont, called also the Thracian Chersonesus, 1, 1, 9.

χῆν, χηνός, δ and ἡ, a goose, 1, 9, 26.

χθές, adv. yesterday.

χίλιοι, αι, α, a thousand.

χιλός, οὔ, δ, grass, fodder, forage, 1, 5, 7; 1, 6, 1.

χιμαῖρα, ας, ἡ, a she-goat, 3, 2, 12.

Χίος, ια, ἰον, Chian, from Chios, a large island in the Ægean sea, on the coast of Ionia: now called Scio.

χιτῶν, ὄνος, δ, a tunic, an under garment, Lat. tunica, 1, 5, 8.

χοῖνιξ, ἰκος, ἡ, a chaenix (a dry measure = about one quart Eng., perh. a little less), 1, 5, 6.

χόρτος, ου, δ, fodder, grass: χόρτος κοῦφος, dry grass, i. e. hay, 1, 5, 10.

χρόμαι, ὦμαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι (for the irreg. contr. see H. 371. c. K. § 97. 3) to use, to employ, w. dat. τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι, for what he wishes to employ us, 1, 3, 18: τιλ εἰς τι χ., to employ a person for anything, 1, 4, 15; τοῖς ποσὶ δρόμῳ χ., to use the feet for running; ταῖς πτέρυξιν ὥσπερ ἰστίῳ, to use the wings as a sail, 1, 5, 3.—(2) to have,

to find: σφόδρα πειθαμένους ἐχρήτο, he found (them) very obedient, 2, 6, 13: στρατεύματι ἀληθινῶ ἐχρήσατο, he had a genuine army, 1, 9, 17.—(3) to have intercourse with a person, to treat any one, etc.: τοῖς δόλοις ὡς ἀνάνδροις χ., to treat the conscientious as unmanly, 2, 6, 25: χρώμενος αὐτῷ, while associating with him, 2, 6, 27. The particip. w. the dat. may often be rendered, with.

χράω, χρήσω, ἐχρησα, κέχρηκα, κέχρησμαι, ἐχρήσθην, f. pass. κεχρήσομαι, to deliver an oracle.

χρή, subjunc. χρῆ, optat. χρεῖη, infin. χρῆναι, particip. neut. χρεών, impf. ἐχρήν or χρῆν, f. χρήσει, impers. ἰὶ behooves, it is necessary, 1, 3, 11: φημι χρῆναι, I affirm that it is necessary, 1, 4, 14.

χρήζω, in Att. only in pres. and impf. to wish, to desire, 1, 3, 20; 1, 8, 22.

χρῆμα, ατος, τό, (χράομαι) anything which one needs or uses; comm. plur. goods, possessions, 2, 4, 27; esp. money, χρήματα πολλά, much money, 1, 2, 27; 1, 4, 12.

χρήσιμος, η, ου, (χράομαι) useful, 1, 6, 1; 2, 5, 23.

χρόνος, ου, δ, time: χρόνῳ συχνῶ, a considerable time, 1, 8, 8; ἡμίσει χρόνῳ, in half the time, 1, 8, 22; πολλοῦ χρόνου, within a long time, 1, 9, 25.

χρύσεος, ἑα, εον, contr. χρυσούς, ἡ, οὖν, (χρυσός) golden, 1, 2, 27.

χρυσίον, ου, τό, dimin. fr. χρυσός, a piece of gold; also genr. gold, esp. gold coin, 1, 1, 9. See χρυσός.

χρυσός, οὔ, δ, gold, 3, 1, 19. χρυσός and ἑργυρος denote comm. the

material simply; χρυσίον and ἀργύριον, coined gold or silver. THEISZ.

χρυσούς, see χρύσεος.

χρυσόχαλινος, ον, (χρυσός, χαλινός a bridle or bit of a bridle) with gold-studded bridle; or perh. with golden bit (of a bridle), ἵππον χ., 1, 2, 27.

χώρα, as, ἡ, a position, place: κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, put up their arms in (their) place, 1, 5, 17; cf. 1, 8, 17: ἐκ χώρας ὀρμωμένους, rushing forth from a fixed position, 3, 4, 33;—land, country, ἐκ τῆς χ., 1, 2, 1; 1, 5, 5: πλῆθει χώρας, in extent of country, 1, 5, 9; plur. countries, 1, 9, 14.

χωρέω, ᾧ, -ήσω or -ήσομαι, (χώρος, place) to contain, 1, 5, 6;—to move, to proceed, 1, 10, 13; 2, 4, 10.

χωρίον, ου, τό, (in form dimin. of χώρος, a place, and of χώρα) a place, position, 1, 2, 24; (spoken of a city) 1, 4, 6.

χωρίς, adv. apart: ἐκάθισαν χωρίς, put in a separate place, w. acc. 3, 5, 17;—as prep. w. gen. apart from, χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων, 1, 4, 13.

Ψ

Ψάρος, ου, δ, Psarus, also written Σάρος, a river of Cilicia, 1, 4, 1.

ψέλιον, ου, τό, a bracelet, 1, 2, 27.

ψεύδης, ἐς, gen. ἐός, (ψεύδομαι) false, 2, 4, 24.

ψεύδω, ψεύσω, ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην, (akin to ψεύδος, falsehood) to deceive, to mislead by falsehood;—pass. to be deceived: ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο, in this he was, etc. 1, 8, 11; cf. 2, 2, 13; ἐψευσμένοι ἔσονται, will have

been deceived, 3, 2, 31;—mid. to be false, to act falsely: πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευσάμενον, having been false to him, 1, 3, 5; to deceive: πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, having deceived him in all things, 1, 3, 10; μηδὲν ψεύδεσθαι, to deceive in nothing, 1, 9, 7.

ψηφίζομαι, -ίσομαι or -ιοῦμαι, ἐψηφισάμην, ἐψηφισμαι, (ψηφός) to give one's vote with a pebble, to vote, w. infin. 1, 4, 15; w. acc. and infin. 3, 2, 31; w. acc. & εἴρηκε ψηφίσασθαι, to sanction by vote what he has spoken, 3, 2, 33.

ψηφός, ου, 2, decl. f. used for voting, hence a vote.

ψιλός, ἡ, ὄν, (ψίω = ψάω to rub) rubbed, bare, χώρα, 1, 5, 5: ψιλήν ... κεφαλὴν, having his head bare, i. e. without helmet, but wearing probably a tiara, 1, 8, 6; without defensive armor, light-armed, 3, 3, 7.

ψιλώω, ᾧ, -ώσω, (ψιλός) to rub off, to make bare;—pass. to be left bare, to be deserted, w. gen. 1, 10, 13.

ψυχή, ἡς, ἡ, (ψύχω, to breathe) breath, life, heart, soul, 3, 1, 23 and 42; 3, 2, 20.

ψύχος, εος, ους, τό, (ψύχω, to breathe, blow, make cool) cold; plur. ψύχη, cold, 3, 1, 23.

Ω

ᾧ, a particle often prefixed to the vocative, less emphatic than the Eng. O! hence often omitted in the translation.

ᾧδε, adv. (ᾧδε) thus, so, in this manner; often, as follows (cf. οὕτως), in the following manner, 1, 5, 10; ᾧδε πως, somehow as follows, 1, 7, 9.



ὥθέω, ὦ, ὦσω, (ὥθήσω, not in Att. prose), ἔωσα, (ἔωκα, not Att.), ἔωσμαι, ἐώσθην, to push; mid. to push from one's self, or for one's own sake, in gen. to push, to thrust, τινὰ ἐκ τινος, 3, 4, 48.

ὥμός, ἡ, ὢν, raw, not cooked; of character, cruel, savage, 2, 6, 12.

ὤμος, οὐ, ὀ, the shoulder.

ὠνέομαι, οὔμαι, -ήσομαι, impf. w. syllab. aug. ὠνούμην, aor. ἐπρίμην, pf. pass. or mid. ἐώρημαι, aor. pass. ἐωνήθην, to buy, to purchase: mid. ὠνούμενους ἔξιν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, to have provisions by purchasing (them), 2, 3, 27; cf. 3, 1, 20.

ὠνιος, α, ον, (ὠνος value, ὠνέομαι) for sale: τὰ ὠνια, wares (offered for sale in the market-place), 1, 2, 18.

Ὠπις, ἰδος, ἡ, Opis, a large city of Assyria at the confluence of the Phrycus with the Tigris, 2, 4, 25.

ῶρα, ας, ἡ, time, a fitting time, w. infin. 1, 3, 11; ῶρα, sc. ἐστίν, 1, 3, 12; a time of the year, 2, 3, 13; plur. ῶραι, the seasons, 1, 4, 10; time of day, hour, 3, 5, 18.

ῶραιος, ἀλα, αἶον, (ῶρα) seasonable; in the bloom of youth, 2, 6, 28.

ὦς, adv. (ὧς, ὅ, as demonstr. pron.) = οὐτως, thus: οὐδ' ὦς, not even thus, 1, 8, 21; 3, 2, 23. Notice the accent as distinguishing it from ὥς proclitic.

ὦς, (1) As relative adv. how, as, in what manner: ὦς ἐγένετο, how it took place, 1, 6, 5; ὦς ... ἐδόκουν, as they seemed, 1, 4, 7 and often; before a particip. it represents the meaning of the particip. as subjective, i. e. as thought, felt, or uttered by some person; and may be ren-

dered as if, as though, apparently. on the ground that, saying that, thinking that, intending, and other similar expressions. H. 795. e. K. § 312. 6. L. G. ὥς ἀποκτενῶν, 1, 1, 3, as if to put (him) to death, apparently to, etc.; or, giving out that he would put him to death, declaring that, etc.; ἀποκτενῶν without ὥς would mean, to put (him) to death, denoting the simple, unqualified purpose: ὥς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνηους, on the ground that Tissaphernes was plotting, etc. 1, 1, 6; cf. 1, 1, 11;—in a similar way, without any particip. expressed, ὥς φίλον, as a friend, supposing him to be a friend, 1, 1, 2; before a prep., ὥς ἐπὶ, as if against, 1, 2, 4;—so also, with the superlative, to denote that it is not to be understood absolutely, but according to the modifying force of circumstances: ὥς τάχιστα, as quickly as possible, as quickly as circumstances would admit of, 1, 3, 14 and often;—with numerals, ὥς denotes that the number is not to be taken with absolute exactness, but as approximate, and may be rendered, about: ὥς δισχίλιοι, about six thousand, 1, 6, 1; it has a similar force in the phrases, ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ, for the most part, generally, 3, 1, 42; ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖστον, for the most part, generally.—(2) As conjunc. (a) Declarative = ὅτι, that, ὥς ἐπιβουλεύοι, (saying) that he was plotting, etc. 1, 1, 3 and often. (b) Final, denoting purpose: ὥς μηκέτι δέη, that or in order that it may no longer be necessary, 1, 6, 9. Often w. the infin. = ὥστε, denoting purpose or result,

so as, so that, 1, 5, 10. (c) Causal, because, since, 2, 4, 17. (d) Temporal, as, when, 1, 8, 18 and 25.—(3) As prep. w. acc. = πρὸς, to; but is used only before the names of persons: ὡς βασιλέα, to the king, 1, 2, 4; 2, 3, 29.

ὥσαύτως, adv. (ὡς, αὐτως even so, just so) just so, in like manner, 3, 2, 23.

ὥσεί = ὡς εἰ, as if.

ὥσπερ, adv. a strengthened form of ὡς, just as, 1, 4, 12; just as if, w. particip. 1, 3, 16.

ὥστε, conjunc. (1) w. the indic. denoting a fact, that, so that, consequently, 1, 3, 10; 1, 7, 7: τοσούτον ... ὥστε, so much (space) ... that, 3, 4, 37.—(2) w. the infin. denoting comm. a conception, so as: ὥστε εἰλεῖν, so as to take, 1, 4, 8; so that,

ὥστε ... αὐτοὺς, so that they might never be able, etc. 1, 6, 2; denoting an actual result, 1, 5, 13; 2, 4, 26; sometimes it may be rendered, on condition that: πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν, to toil on condition that he may engage in war, 2, 6, 6. Also used w. the particip. in the sense of ὡς.

ὠτειλή, ἥς, ἥ, a mark from a wound, a scar, 1, 9, 6.

ὠτρίς, ἰδος, ἥ, (οὖς, an ear) a kind of bustard with long ear-feathers, prob. our great bustard, 1, 5, 2, ff.

ὠφελε, O that, would that: ὠφελε ... ζῆν, would that Cyrus were alive, 2, 1, 4. See ὀφείλω.

ὠφελέω, ᾧ, -ήσω, (ὀφελος) to benefit, to assist, w. acc. 1, 1, 9; 1, 3, 4.

ὠφέλιμος, ον, also η, ον, (ὠφελέω) useful, beneficial, profitable, 1, 6, 2.

## A D D E N D A.

---

ἀγαπάω, ᾤ, -ήσω, (ἀγαμαι) *to love, to esteem*, 1, 9, 29. Syn. φιλέω, *to love*; ἀγαμαι, *to esteem*: ἀγαπάω includes both ideas.

ἀναγκάζω, -άσω, (ἀνάγκη) *to force, compel*; pass. 3, 8, 12.

ἀναμένω, f. -μενῶ, (ἀνά, μένω) *to wait for*, w. acc. 3, 1, 14.

ἀναρπάζω, -άσω, (ἀνά, ἀρπάζω) *to snatch up, to take (as plunder)*, 1, 3, 14.

ἀναχωρέω, ᾤ, -ήσω, (ἀνά, χωρέω) *to move back, withdraw*, 3, 3, 13.

Ἀρκάς, ἄδος, δ, an *Arcadian*.

ἀφικνέομαι, -οῦμαι, (ἀπό, ἰκνέομαι, -οῦμαι, ἵξομαι, ἴγμαι, ἰκόμεν) *to come or go, to come or go from, to arrive*: ἀφικνέιτο πρὸς αὐτόν, *came to him*, 1, 1, 5; εἰς Σάρδεϊς αὐτῷ ἀφ., 1, 2, 4; παρὰ Κύρον ἀφ., 1, 2, 12.

βασιλεύω, -εύσω, (βασιλεύς) *to be king, to reign*, 1, 1, 4.

γελᾶω, ᾤ, γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα; pass. aor. ἐγελάσθην, *to laugh*, 2, 1, 13.

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό, a *knee*; plur. τὰ γόνατα, 1, 5, 13.

διακόσιοι, αι, α, *two hundred*.  
δρέπανον, ου, τό, a *scythe*, 1, 8, 10.

εἰσέρχομαι, (εἰς, ἔρχομαι wh. see) *to go into, to enter*, 1, 2, 21.

Ἑλλάς, ἄδος, ἡ, *Greece, Hellas*.

ἔξιμι, (ἐξ, εἴμι, wh. see) *to go out of, go forth*, 3, 5, 13.

ἐπτακαίδεκα, (ἐπτά, καί, δέκα) *seventeen*.

εὐώδης, es, (εὖ, ὀζω *to smell*) *fragrant*, 1, 5, 1.

Θεόπομπος, ου, δ, (θεός, πομπός *an escort*, πέμπω) *Theopompus*, 2, 1, 12.

θηρεύω, -εύσομαι (= θηρᾶω, wh. see) *to hunt*, 1, 2, 7; *to catch*, 1, 2, 13.

κατανοέω, ᾤ, -ήσω, (κατά, νοέω, νοῦς) *to fix the mind on, to observe*, 1, 2, 4.

κοιμάω, ᾤ, -ήσω, (akin to κείμαι, Lat. *cumbo, cubo*) *to lull to sleep*; pass. w. f. mid. *to fall asleep*, 2, 1, 1.

κτηῖμα, ατος, τό, (κτάομαι) *a thing acquired*; comm. plur. *possessions*, 2, 6, 24. Cf. χρῆμα.

κτηῖνος, εὖς, ους, τό, (κτάομαι) *a possession*; comm. plur. τὰ κτήνη, *possessions, esp. cattle*, 3, 1, 19.

Λάκων, -ωνος, ὁ, *a Laconian*.  
 λευκός, ἡ, ὄν, (λεύσσω, *to see*: cf. Lat. *luceo, lux*) *brighit, white*, 1, 8, 8.

μελετηρός, ἡ, ὄν, (μελετᾶω, μέλει) *practiced, expert*; comp. -ότερος, sup. -ότατος, 1, 9, 5.

μιμέομαι, -οῦμαι, -ήσομαι, -ησάμην, (μίμος, *an imitator*, Eng. *mime*) *to imitate*, 3, 1, 36.

ξύλινος, ἰνη, ἰνον (ξύλον) *wooden*, 2, 1, 6.

ὁδοποιέω, ὦ, -ήσω (ὁδός, ποιέω) *to make a road*, 3, 2, 24.

οἶδα, (H. 409. 6. K. § 143.) *f. εἶσομαι, plurf. as impf. ᾔδειν, to know*, 1, 3, 5 & 10.

οἰκοθεν, adv. (οἶκος, -θεν *from*) *from home*, 3, 1, 4.

οὖς, ὠτός, τό, *an ear*, 3, 1, 31.

οὐχί, strengthened form of οὐ, 3, 1, 13.

ὀφθαλμός, οὐ, δ, (ἀκιν to ὀψομαι) *an eye*, 1, 9, 13.

παντελής, ἐς, (πᾶς, τέλος) *all-complete*; adv. -ῶς, *completely, wholly*, 2, 2, 11.

Παφλαγών, ὄνος, δ, *a Paphlagonian*; as adj. 1, 8, 5.

πέρδς, ἡ, ὄν, (πέζα Doric = πούς)

*on foot: δύναμις πεζή, foot-forces*, 1, 3, 12.

Περσικός, ἡ, ὄν, *Persian*.

πέτρα, ας, ἡ, *a rock*, 1, 4, 4.

πλατύς, εἷα, ὅ, *broad, wide*; comp. -ύτερος, sup. -ύτατος, 3, 4, 22.

πλησιάζω, -άσω, (πλησίος, *near*) *to draw near*, 1, 5, 2.

πλούσιος, ἰα, ἰον, (πλοῦτος, *wealthy*) *rich*; comp. -ώτερος, sup. -ώτατος, 1, 9, 16.

πλουτέω, ὦ, -ήσω, (πλοῦτος, *wealthy*) *to be rich*, 2, 6, 21.

πρόσειμι, (πρός, εἰμι wh. see) *to come or go to: ἔτυχε προσιών, harp-ened to be coming up, was just then coming up*, 1, 5, 14.

Πυθαγόρας, ου, δ, *Pythagoras*.

Ῥόδιος, ἰα, ἰον, *Rhodian*; as subst. *a Rhodian*.

σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ἡ, *a trumpet*, 3, 4, 4.

στρατιά, ᾶς, ἡ, *an army*, 1, 2, 12.

στρατός, οὐ, δ, *an army*, 1, 5, 7.

φιλικός, ἡ, ὄν, (φίλος, φιλέω) *friendly*; adv. -κῶς, 2, 5, 27: cf. *διάκειμαι*. Φοινίκη, ης, ἡ, *Phœnicia*.

χάλκεος, ἑα, εον, contr. χαλκοῦς, ἦ, οὖν, (χαλκός) *of copper, bronze, or brass, brazen*, 1, 2, 16.

THE END.

## The Works of Horace.

With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. I.

LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in

Brown University. 12mo, 575 pages.

The text of this edition is mainly that of Orelli, the most important readings of other critics being given in foot-notes. The volume is introduced with a biographical sketch of Horace and a critique on his writings, which enable the student to enter intelligently on his work. Peculiar grammatical constructions, as well as geographical and historical allusions, are explained in notes, which are just full enough to aid the pupil, to excite him to gain a thorough understanding of the author, and awaken in him a taste for philological studies, without taking all labor off his hands. While the chief aim has been to impart a clear idea of Latin Syntax as exhibited in the text, it has also been a cherished object to take advantage of the means so variously and richly furnished by Horace for promoting the poetical taste and literary culture of the student.

*From an article by PROF. BAHR, of the University of Heidelberg, in the Heidelberg Annals of Literature.*

"There are already several American editions of Horace, intended for the use of schools; of one of these, which has passed through many editions, and has also been widely circulated in England, mention has been formerly made in this journal; but that one we may not put upon an equality with the one now before us, inasmuch as this has taken a different stand-point, which may serve as a sign of progress in this department of study. The editor has, it is true, also intended his work for the use of schools, and has sought to adapt it, in all its parts, to such a use; but still, without losing sight of this purpose, he has proceeded throughout with more independence. In the preparation of the Notes, the editor has faithfully observed the principles (laid down in his preface); the explanations of the poet's words commend themselves by a compressed brevity which limits itself to what is most essential, and by a sharp precision of expression; and references to other passages of the poet, and also to grammars, dictionaries, etc., are not wanting."

## Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.

With Notes and a Vocabulary. By NOBLE BUTLER and MINARD

STURGIS. 12mo, 397 pages.

The editors have spent a vast amount of time and labor in correcting the text, by a comparison of the most improved German and English editions. It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition hitherto published in this country. In accordance with their chronological order, the "Jugurtha" precedes the "Catiline." The Notes are copious and tersely expressed; they display not only fine scholarship, but (what is quite as necessary in such a book) a practical knowledge of the difficulties which the student encounters in reading this author, and the aids that he requires. The Vocabulary was prepared by the late WILLIAM H. G. BUTLER. It will be found an able and faithful performance.

## Virgil's *Æneid*.

With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY S. FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. Illustrated. 12mo, 598 pages.

The appearance of this edition of Virgil's *Æneid* will, it is believed, be hailed with delight by all classical teachers. Neither expense nor pains have been spared to clothe the great Latin epic in a fitting dress. The type is unusually large and distinct, and errors in the text, so annoying to the learner, have been carefully avoided. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, costumes, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations. The great feature of this edition is the scholarly and judicious commentary furnished in the appended Notes. The author has here endeavored not to show his learning, but to supply such practical aid as will enable the pupil to understand and appreciate what he reads. The notes are just full enough, thoroughly explaining the most difficult passages, while they are not so extended as to take all labor off the pupil's hands. Properly used, they cannot fail to impart an intelligent acquaintance with the syntax of the language. In a word, this work is commended to teachers as the most elegant, accurate, interesting, and practically useful edition of the *Æneid* that has yet been published.

*From JOHN H. BRUNNER, President of Hiwassee College.*

"The typography, paper, and binding of Virgil's *Æneid*, by Prof. Frieze, are all that need be desired; while the learned and judicious notes appended, are very valuable indeed."

*From Principal of Piedmont (Va.) Academy.*

"I have to thank you for a copy of Prof. Frieze's edition of the *Æneid*. I have been exceedingly pleased in my examination of it. The size of the type from which the text is printed, and the faultless execution, leave nothing to be desired in these respects. The adherence to a standard text throughout, increases the value of this edition."

*From D. G. MOORE, Principal U. High School, Rutland.*

"The copy of Frieze's 'Virgil' forwarded to me was duly received. It is so evidently superior to any of the other editions, that I shall unhesitatingly adopt it in my classes."

## Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero :

With Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo, 459 pages.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, Madvig, and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor Johnson, of the New York University, have been mostly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

*From THOMAS CHASE, Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.*

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

"It seems to us an improvement upon any edition of these Orations that has been published in this country, and will be found a valuable aid in their studies to the lovers of classical literature."—*Troy Daily Whig*.

## Cicero de Officiis :

With English Notes, mostly translated from ZUMPT and BONNELL. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo, 194 pages.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionary in common use has not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which is to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatises, the thoughts and reasoning of the author, to explain grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

*From M. L. STOEVEY, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Pennsylvania College.*

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Thacher's edition of Cicero de Officiis, and am convinced of its excellence. The Notes have been prepared with great care and good judgment. Practical knowledge of the wants of the student has enabled the Editor to furnish just the kind of assistance required; grammatical difficulties are removed, and the obscurities of the treatise are explained, the interest of the learner is elicited, and his industry directed rather than superseded. There can be but one opinion with regard to the merits of the work, and I trust that Professor Thacher will be disposed to continue his labors so carefully commenced, in this department of classical learning."

## Lincoln's Livy.

Selections from the first Five Books, together with the Twenty-First and Twenty-Second Books entire; with a Plan of Rome, a Map of the passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo, 329 pages.

The publishers believe that in this edition of Livy a want is supplied which has been universally felt; there being previous to this no American edition furnished with the requisite aids for the successful study of this Latin author. The text is chiefly that of Alschefski, which is now generally received by the best critics. The notes have been prepared with special reference to the grammatical study of the language, and the illustration of its forms, constructions, and idioms, as used by Livy. They will not be found to foster habits of dependence in the student, by supplying indiscriminate translation or unnecessary assistance; but come to his help only in such parts as it is fair to suppose he cannot master by his own exertions. They also embrace all necessary information relating to history, geography, and antiquities.

Lincoln's Livy has been highly commended by critics, and is used in nearly all the colleges in the country.

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Waterville College.*

"A careful examination of several portions of your work has convinced me that, for the use of students, it is altogether superior to any edition of Livy with which I am acquainted. Among its excellences you will permit me to name the close attention given to particles, to the subjunctive mood, the constant reference to the grammars, the discrimination of words nearly synonymous, and the care in giving the localities mentioned in the text. The book will be hereafter used in our college."

## Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament.

12mo, 291 pages.

The now-acknowledged propriety of giving students of languages familiar works for translation—thus adopting in the schools the mode by which the child first learns to talk—has induced the publication of this new American edition of Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. Ever since its first appearance, this work has kept its place in the general esteem; while more recent versions have been so strongly tinged with the peculiar views of the translators as to make them acceptable to particular classes only. The editor has exerted himself to render the present edition worthy of patronage by its superior accuracy and neatness; and the publishers flatter themselves that the pains bestowed will insure for it a preference over other editions.



## Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, a Map of Gaul, etc. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 408 pages.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His Notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a Map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

## Quintus Curtius :

Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes. By WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo, 385 pages.

Curtius's History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

*From PROF. OWEN, of the New York Free Academy.*

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm. Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding, being just what a text-book should be, neat, clear, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholar-like, neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean so desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment."

## Arnold's Greek Course.

Revised, Corrected, and Improved, by the Rev. J. A. SPENCER,  
D. D., late Professor of Latin and Oriental Languages in Burling-  
ton College, N. J.

FIRST GREEK BOOK, on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo, 254 pages.

PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. 12mo, 237  
pages.

SECOND PART TO THE ABOVE. 12mo, 248 pages.

GREEK READING BOOK. Containing the substance of the Practical Introduction to  
Greek Construing, and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious selections  
from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon.  
12mo, 618 pages.

A complete, thorough, practical, and easy Greek course is here presented. The be-  
ginner commences with the "First Book," in which the elementary principles of the lan-  
guage are unfolded, not in abstract language, difficult both to comprehend and to re-  
member, but as practically applied in sentences. Throughout the whole, the pupil sees  
just where he stands, and is taught to use and apply what he learns. His progress is,  
therefore, as rapid as it is intelligent and pleasant. There is no unnecessary verbiage,  
nor is the pupil's attention diverted from what is really important by a mass of minor  
details. It is the experience of teachers who use this book, that with it a given amount  
of Greek Grammar can be imparted to a pupil in a shorter time and with far less trouble  
than with any other text-book.

The "First Book" may with advantage be followed by the "Introduction to Greek  
Prose Composition." The object of this work is to enable the student, as soon as he can  
decline and conjugate with tolerable facility, to translate simple sentences after given ex-  
amples and with given words; the principles employed being those of imitation and very  
frequent repetition. It is at once a Syntax, a Vocabulary, and an Exercise-book. The  
"Second Part" carries the subject further, unfolding the most complicated constructions,  
and the nicest points of Latin Syntax. A Key is provided for the teacher's use.

The "Reader," besides extracts judiciously selected from the Greek classics, contains  
valuable instructions to guide the learner in translating and construing, and a complete  
exposition of the particles, their signification and government. It is a fitting sequel to  
the earlier parts of the course, everywhere showing the hand of an acute critic, an ac-  
complished scholar, and an experienced teacher.

*From the REV. DR. COLEMAN, Professor of Greek and Latin, Princeton, N. J.*

"I can, from the most satisfactory experience, bear testimony to the excellence of  
your series of Text-Books for Schools. I am in the daily use of Arnold's Latin and  
Greek Exercises, and consider them decidedly superior to any other Elementary Works  
in those languages."

## Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.

By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo, 208 pages.

In compiling this Grammar, Professor Champlin has drawn upon the best critics and grammarians, and with the results of his research has interwoven much original matter suggested during several years' experience in teaching, and editing Greek authors. His design is to exhibit the essential facts and principles of the language in the clearest, briefest, and most practicable form possible. With this view, all theories and complications belonging to general grammar have been avoided, and only their results used. The amplification and illustration of principles have been carried only so far as is necessary to their comprehension. In this way all the real wants of the Greek student are met, while his attention is not distracted by unnecessary and embarrassing details. Materials for oral exercises are supplied, and a sketch of Greek versification is given in an appendix.

*From the Rev. Mr. ANDERSON, New Orleans.*

"I believe the author has fully accomplished what he proposes in his preface. To those wishing to study Greek, I am satisfied he has presented a book which will much tend to simplify the study to beginners; and at the same time, without being too voluminous, presents as lucid and full an exposition of the principles of the language as can be contained within so small a compass."

## Kühner's Greek Grammar :

Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo, 620 pages.

Kühner's is universally acknowledged to be the most accurate, comprehensive, clear, and practical grammar of the Greek language now extant. It is the work of one who devoted his life to Greek philology, and spent years of patient labor in perfecting this work. Too full and learned for the beginner, it is just what is needed for the college curriculum, containing all that a book of reference should contain. The student will never appeal to its pages in vain. In fulness of illustration, copiousness of reference, and philosophical analysis of the various forms of language, it is unsurpassed, we might say unequalled.

The present translation is made by two distinguished American scholars, who have revised the whole, verified the references, and appended an original treatise of their own on Greek versification. As now presented to the public, it is believed to be as perfect a grammar of the Greek language as enlightened research and profound scholarship can produce.

## Greek Ollendorff;

Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHIEL C. KENDRICK, Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in the University of Rochester. 12mo, 371 pages.

The present work is what its title indicates, strictly an *Ollendorff*, and aims to apply the methods which have proved so successful in the acquisition of the modern languages to the study of Ancient Greek, with such differences as the different genius of the Greek, and the different purposes for which it is studied, suggest. It differs from the modern Ollendorffs in containing Exercises for reciprocal translation, in confining them within a smaller compass, and in a more methodical exposition of the principles of language.

The leading object of the author was to furnish a book which should serve as an *introduction* to the study of Greek, and precede the use of any grammar. It will therefore be found, although not claiming to embrace all the principles of the Grammar, yet complete in itself, and will lead the pupil, by insensible gradations, from the simpler constructions to those which are more complicated and difficult. The exceptions, and the more idiomatic forms, it studiously avoids, aiming only to exhibit the regular and ordinary usages of the language as the proper starting-point for the student's further researches.

In presenting these, the author has aimed to combine the strictest accuracy with the utmost simplicity of statement. His work is therefore adapted to a younger class of pupils than have usually engaged in the study of Greek, and will, it is hoped, win to the acquisition of that noble tongue many in our academies and primary schools who have been repelled by the less simple character of our ordinary text-books.

## Exercises in Greek Composition.

Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo, 185 pages.

These Exercises consist of easy sentences, similar to those in the Anabasis, having the same words and constructions, and are designed by frequent repetition to make the learner familiar with the language of Xenophon. Accordingly, the chapters and sections in both are made to correspond. No exercises can be more improving than those in this volume; obliging the student as they do, by analysis and synthesis, to master the constructions employed by one of the purest of Greek writers, and imbuing him with the spirit of one of the greatest historians of all antiquity.

## Xenophon's Anabasis :

With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges in the United States. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo, 393 pages.

A handsome and convenient edition of this great classic, really adapted to the wants of schools, has long been needed; the want is here met by Prof. Boise in a manner that leaves nothing to be desired. Decidedly the best German editions, whether text or commentary be considered, have appeared within the last few years; and of these Mr. Boise has made free use; while, at the same time, he has not lost sight of the fact that the classical schools of this country are behind those of Germany, and that simpler and more elementary explanations are therefore often necessary in a work prepared for American schools. Nothing has been put in the notes for the sake of a mere display of learning—pedantry is out of place in a school-book; and nothing has been introduced by way of comment except what can be turned to practical use by the reader.

An historical Introduction, which will enable the pupil to enter on his task intelligently, is prefixed. An abundance of geographical information, embodying the latest discoveries of travellers, is supplied; and the whole is illustrated with Kiepert's excellent map, showing the entire route of the ten thousand on their retreat.

## The First Three Books of Anabasis :

With Explanatory Notes and References to Hadley and Kühner's Greek Grammars, and to Goodwin's Greek Moods and Tenses. A copious Greek-English Vocabulary, and Kiepert's Map of the Route of the Ten Thousand. 12mo, 268 pages.

## Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates :

With Notes and an Introduction. By R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Languages in Middlebury College, Vermont. 12mo, 421 pages.

This will be found an exceedingly useful book for College classes. The text is large and distinct, the typography accurate, and the notes judicious and scholarly. Instead of referring the student to a variety of books, few of which are within his reach, the editor has wisely supplied whatever is necessary. An admirable treatise on the Life of Socrates introduces the work, and English and Greek Indexes render it easy to refer to the text and notes.

## Plato's Apology and Crito ;

With Notes. By W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo, 180 pages.

This edition of the Apology and Crito has been prepared to meet the largely-felt want among students of the Dialogues of Plato, now mostly superseded in Academic Courses. It is in the main an exact reprint of Staullbaum's third edition—though the author has had before him, and used, whenever it seemed best, the editions of Bekker, Forster, Ast, Schleiermacher, and others. The Notes are particularly full and clear ; and errors in the text have been guarded against with the very greatest care.

*From J. B. GARRETT, Professor of Greek, Hanover (Ind.) College.*

"I can most heartily say that I am much pleased with the book. Prof. Tyler seems to have hit the happy medium between too profuse and too scanty notes ; and also to have known the *kind* of notes needed in our American institutions, better than the great majority of those who have given us editions of the ancient classics. I have adopted the work this year, in place of the Georgics, and anticipate much pleasure in reading it in connection with the class."

*From JACOB COOPER, PH. D., Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in Centre College, Danville, Ky.*

"I have examined Prof. Tyler's edition of the 'Apology and Crito,' and am highly pleased with its execution. It bears the marks of the editor's well-known scholarship, and is an acceptable addition to our college text-books. The typography is also accurate and very beautiful. I purpose to introduce it into Centre College."

*From ALPHEUS S. PACKARD, Professor of the Greek Language, Bowdoin College.*

"I received, a short time since, Plato's Apology and Crito, edited by Prof. Tyler. I am much pleased with the edition, and shall introduce it into my classes as soon as I have opportunity. I have no doubt it will prove a most acceptable addition to the classics read in our colleges."

*From W. H. YOUNG, Dept. Ant. Languages, Ohio University, Athens.*

"It will meet a pressing want with us, and shall be introduced at once. The type is beautiful indeed, and the earnest teacher of the classics needs no better recommendation of a text-book than the name of Prof. Tyler."

*From the New York Observer.*

"A valuable service to classical learning and letters in general has been rendered by Prof. Tyler, in giving to the American student this edition of Plato's Apology and Crito. Hitherto, the scholars of our country have had no access to this work of Plato, except in foreign editions, or as in fragmentary form they found it in the old and now obsolete Græca Majora. It is now placed within their reach, in a form both convenient and beautiful, and accompanied by such notes and illustrations as to remove all serious difficulties in ascertaining the meaning of the text. One of the most valuable features of this edition is the introduction, which occupies some forty pages, and contains a clear and scholarly analysis of the Defence of the great philosopher before his judges, who had already determined on his death."









C 2 C 1 5 1 1

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book**, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

**Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.** Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.** By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 206 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek;** \* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar,** \* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

— **Elements of the Greek Grammar.** 12mo.

**Herodotus, Selections from;** comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

**Homer's Iliad,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

— **Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

**Kuhner's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.** \* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

**Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis.** A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

— **Homer's Iliad.** 12mo. 750 pages.

— **Greek Reader.** 12mo.

— **Acts of the Apostles,** in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

— **Homer's Odyssey.** Tenth Edition. 12mo.

— **Thucydides.** With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

— **Xenophon's Cyropædia.** Eighth Edition. 12mo.

**Plato's Apology and Crito.** \* With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

*STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.*

---

**Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

**Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates**. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

— **Anabasis**. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 393 pages.

— **Anabasis**. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

— **Cyclopædia**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

**Sophocles's Œdipus Tyrannus**. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 188 pages.

**HEBREW AND SYRIAC.**

**Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar**. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

**Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar**. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.

---

**D. APPLETON & CO., 90, 92 & 94 Grand Street, N. Y.,**

PUBLISHED UPWARD OF

**800 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,**

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

**DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE**

*Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.*

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus \*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any Teacher remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.

